

Oil Spills, Shoreline Response and SCAT



Gulf of Mexico
2013

OCC

Shoreline Response and Shoreline Oiling Assessment (SCAT) Surveys for Oil Spills in the Gulf of Mexico

Training Course Notebook
2013

Prepared by:

Owens Coastal Consultants, Ltd.

755 Winslow Way East, Suite 205
Bainbridge Island, WA 98110-2493

(206) 451-4818

www.owenscoastal.com

*Shoreline Response and Shoreline Oiling
Assessment (SCAT) Surveys for Oil Spills in the
Gulf of Mexico*

Training Course Notebook

Contents

Part 1	Physical Processes and Coastal Character
Part 2	Oil Fate and Behavior
Part 3	Spill Management
Part 4	Resource Protection
Part 5	Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique (SCAT)
Part 6	Shoreline Treatment or Cleanup
Part 7	Waste Management and Operational Considerations
Part 8	References and Bibliography
Attachment A	SCAT Activity Flow Diagram
Attachment B	ICS and the EU
Attachment C	SCAT Management Forms
Attachment D	Establishing a SCAT Program

Introduction

This course is designed for Planning Section, Environmental Unit members and SCAT Program participants to provide a basic grounding on coastal processes and shoreline character, and the fate and behavior of spilled and stranded oil. A core component of the course is the shoreline oiling assessment (SCAT) process whereby field data and information are obtained to support shoreline cleanup or treatment decisions and operations. SCAT teams are involved throughout the response operation from the initial field surveys to inspection and the sign off process. Initially, SCAT data are used by the Environment Unit and Planning Section to develop recommendations. The decisions that are made based on these recommendations in turn are used to create assignment for the Operations Section. The course describes how to set up and manage a SCAT program, create consensus treatment endpoints that enable shoreline cleanup to be completed on a segment by segment basis, and how the inspection and sign-off process enables closure of field operations.

Course Objectives

The course is designed to introduce participants to the issues that are likely to arise in association with shoreline protection and shoreline treatment following a spill. Upon completion of the course the participants will know:

1. the general character of various shoreline types and the processes that act on the shorelines of the Gulf of Mexico;
2. the role of a SCAT Program in a spill response;
3. how to establish and manage a shoreline assessment (SCAT) program;
4. how to document and describe oiled shorelines;
5. how to create data for the decision process;
6. what factors are important to define nearshore and shoreline response priorities and objectives; and
7. which response techniques are practical and effective for the different shoreline types and coastal environments.

Part 1 Physical Coastal Processes and Coastal Character

Table of Contents

1.1. Coastal Processes and Environment	1-3
1.1.1. Climatology	1-4
1.1.2. Waves	1-6
1.1.3. Tides	1-10
1.1.4. Nearshore Currents	1-14
1.1.5. Geomorphology	1-16
1.2. Ecology and Cultural Resources	1-17
1.3. Shoreline Types and Coastal Character	1-18
1.3.1. Shoreline Types for Oil Spill Response	1-19

Part 1 Physical Coastal Processes and Coastal Character

1.1. *Coastal Processes and Environment*

The processes that can operate on the shoreline are:

- ❖ WAVES exposure to waves and wave-energy levels
Including seasonal and storm-related changes
- ❖ WIND including storm surges
- ❖ TIDES tidal range (spring and neap)
- ❖ FLUVIAL rivers and stream flow
- ❖ MASS WASTING cliff falls and slumping

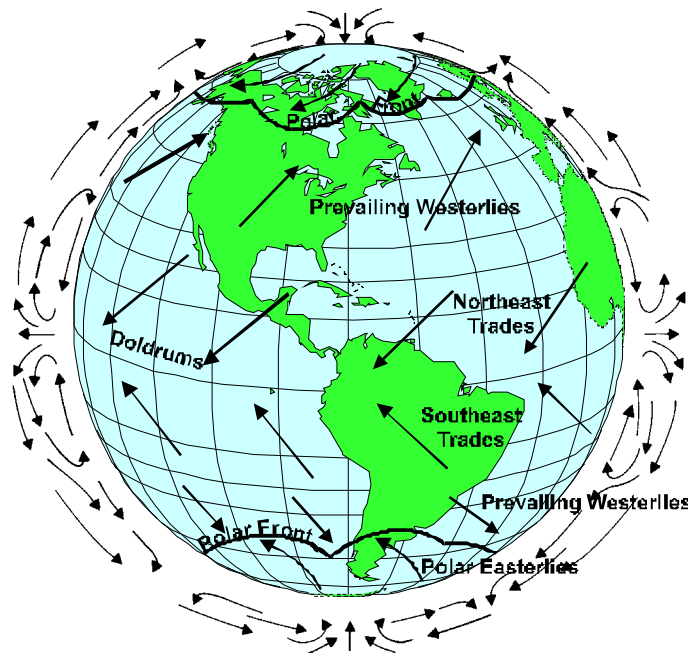
In addition, it is necessary to consider

- Λ *CLIMATIC* and *METEOROLOGIC CONDITIONS* associated with air temperature and visibility (fog), and
- Λ Coastal (nearshore) and oceanic *CURRENTS* that may affect boom deployment and oil movement.

1.1.1. Climatology

The general circulation of the atmosphere is an important factor in determining the variety and timing of weather events that can occur at a location. The comparative stability of the general circulation pattern produces characteristic regional weather patterns that give each region a distinctive climate. The circulation of the atmosphere and the associated pressure and wind patterns over the ocean are a key element of the wave climate (Section 1.1.3). Winds that blow over the water transfer energy from the atmosphere that, in turn, is expended when the waves reach the coast.

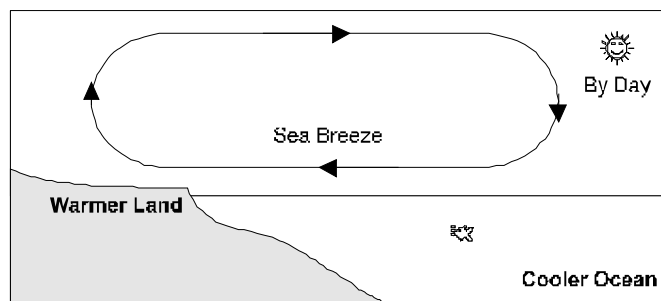
- ❖ The presence of landmasses and temperature differences between oceans and continents cause regions of high and low pressure to be broken into individual pressure cells that are distributed along bands of latitude corresponding to the pressure belts that would form on a uniform rotating earth.



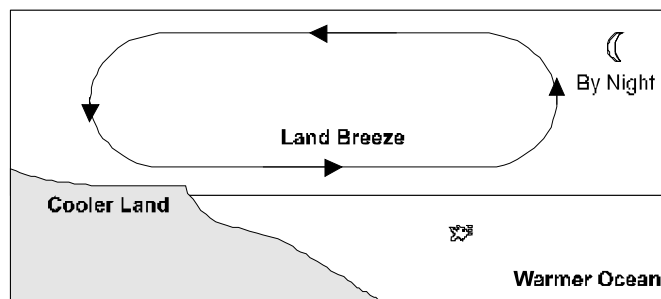
- ❖ The average distribution of surface winds is closely related to surface pressure distribution; winds tend to flow from high-pressure regions toward low-pressure regions, and are modified by friction with the Earth's surface and by the Earth's rotation.
- ❖ The distribution of pressure cells generally shifts to the north in July and to the south in January.
- ❖ The resulting seasonal shift in wind patterns generates a seasonal variation in the weather (temperature, precipitation, winds) of most regions; for example, the winds off the east coast of Africa change from northeast trades in January to southeast trades in July.

Wind Climate

- ❖ Regional and seasonal wind patterns that are generated by the mixing of air masses and by air movement along pressure gradients are modified by local influences; e.g., topographic effects can modify winds by funneling.
- ❖ Locally, land and sea breezes can occur due to temperature and pressure differences between the water surface and the land. These daily breezes can exceed 20 km/hr where the temperature differences are large.
- ❖ This diagram shows a small convective cell generated near the boundary between a warm and cool region.



— In summer, breezes towards the land occur during the day;



— and breezes towards the water occur at night.

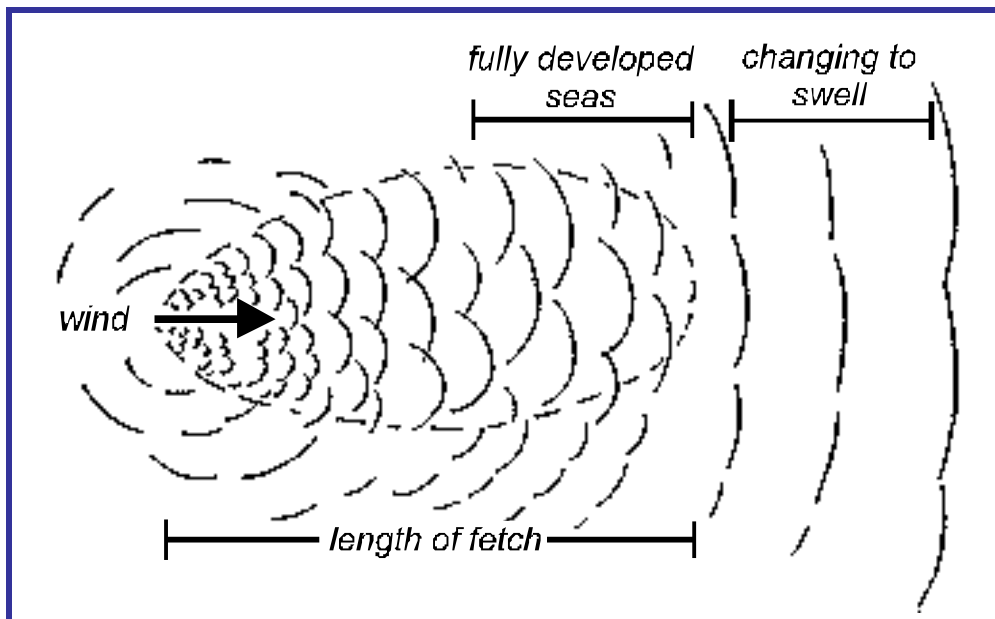
In winter, locally dominated winds are towards the water.

- ❖ Wind shifts can cause a change in the distribution of surface water temperature through upwelling (warm surface water is transported by strong winds and is replaced by cooler subsurface water).
- ❖ Winds can transport material of sand size or smaller; during periods of strong winds, large volumes of sand can be transported and can bury oil or other materials stranded on a beach.
- ❖ Wind can accelerate the weathering of oil and the evaporation of lighter fractions.
- ❖ In all cases, whether associated with air masses, cyclonic storms, a sea breeze, or a hurricane, the wind systems are the controlling factor in wave generation.

1.1.2. Waves

Although there are many processes and factors that may need to be taken into consideration to assess operational safety or the fate of spilled oil, the *dominant process on shorelines is that of wave action*.

- ❖ Waves are generated by winds that blow over the water surface.
- ❖ The character of the wave environment is controlled by the direction, strength, and length of time that winds blow over the *FETCH AREA*.
- ❖ Wave exposure is often used to describe energy-levels at the shoreline; the *FETCH WINDOW* is the angle over which a section of shoreline is open to incoming waves, and the *FETCH DISTANCE* is the length of the open-water area in that fetch window.
- ❖ Waves that leave the generating (fetch) area are called *SWELL*.



(from Bascom, 1964)

Categorization of Wave Energy Levels at the Shoreline

Fetch Distance	Fetch Window — Degrees			
	< 45	45 – 120	121 – 180	> 180
< 5 km	Low	Low	Low	Low
5 – 10 km	Low	Medium	Medium	Medium
10 – 50 km	Medium	Medium	High	High
> 50 km	High	High	High	High

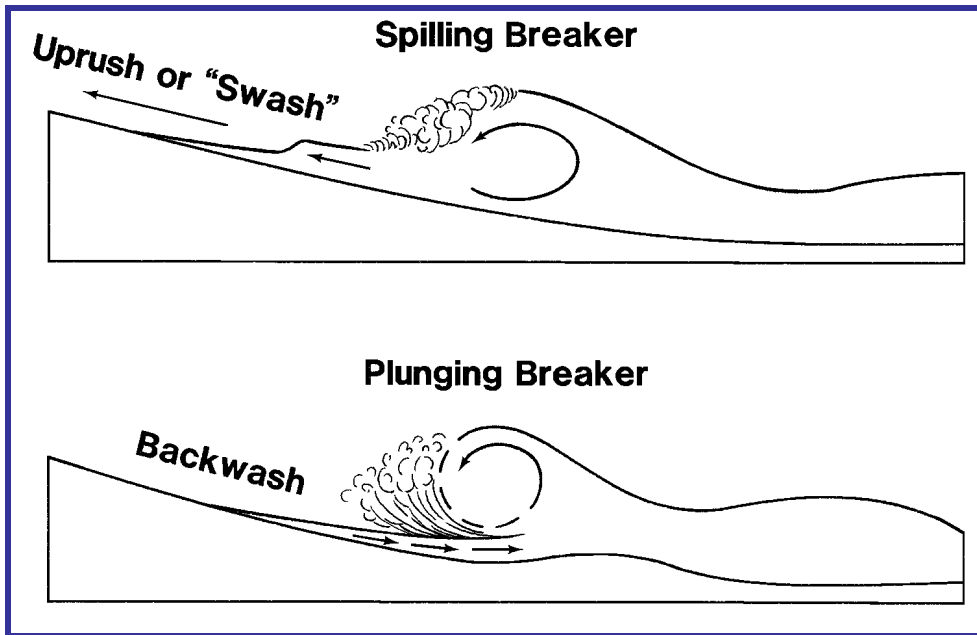
Wave Climate

- ❖ Storm-wave environments are characterized by local wave generation from winds associated with low-pressure, cyclonic systems. These storm belts extend approximately between 30° N and 60 ° N and cause the passage of low pressure systems (“cold fronts”) through the Gulf region in winter.
- ❖ The remaining ocean coasts of the world are characterized primarily by swell waves (e.g., southeast Australia, California, west Africa), or by low-energy conditions (protected or semi-enclosed seas, such as the Gulf of Mexico, the Mediterranean Sea, the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Hudson Bay).
- ❖ The Gulf region is also in the hurricane zone and the “season” extends from June 1st through November 30th. These are extremely high-energy, large-scale (in terms of area) wave events and the effects frequently are compounded by high storm-generated water levels.
- ❖ The level of wave energy at the shore depends not only on the character of the incoming waves, but also on nearshore water depths, the presence of reefs, shoals, or sand bars, and shoreline configuration.
- ❖ Energy levels at the shoreline vary depending on the orientation of the coast with respect to the direction of wave approach. Typically, the west facing coasts of continents have the greatest wave-energy levels (temperate zones).
- ❖ Wave energy levels may vary seasonally with wind velocities.
- ❖ In *rivers and channels*, wind-generated wave action is limited, however, if there is significant boat traffic, wakes can be an important factor in increasing shoreline energy levels.

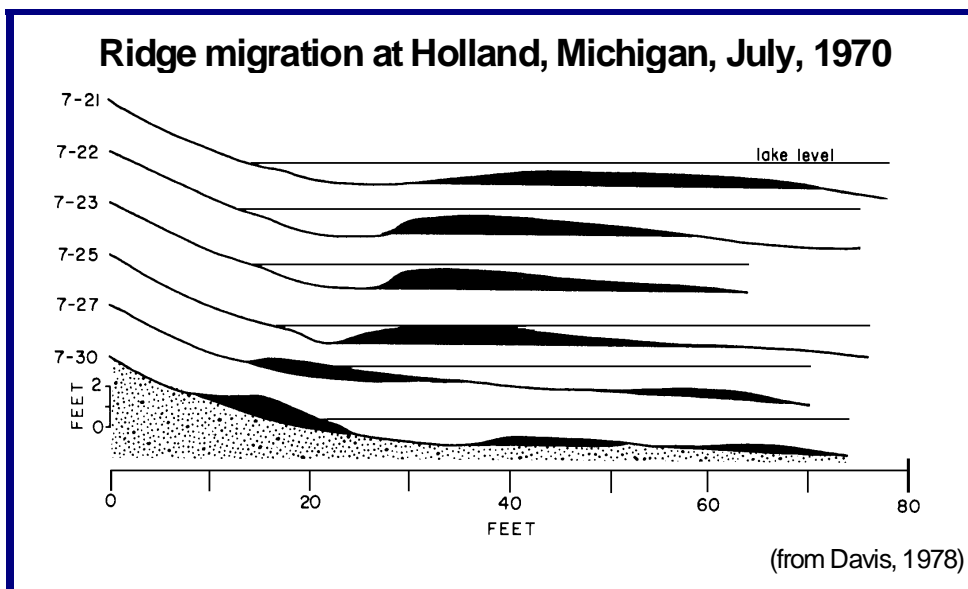
Wave Generated Beach Cycles

When waves reach the shoreline, they dissipate their energy:

- ❖ spilling or surging breakers tend to build up a beach (*ACCRETION*), and
- ❖ plunging breakers move sediments seaward causing *EROSION*.

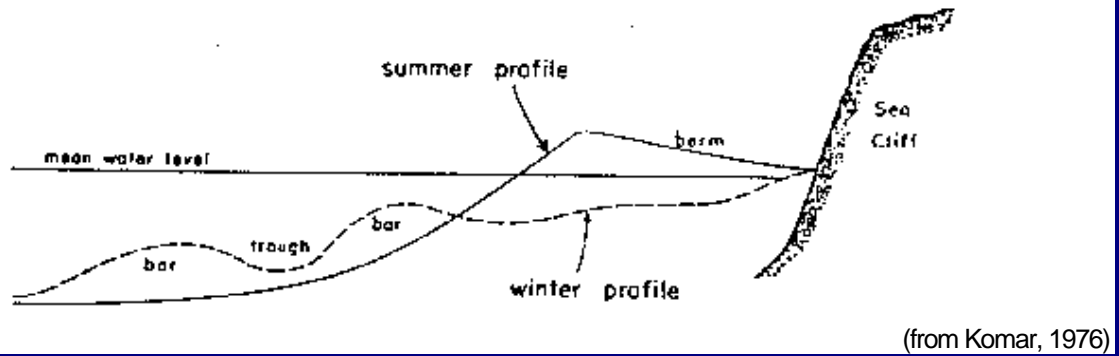


- ❖ Ridges migrate back up a beach after a period of storm wave erosion.



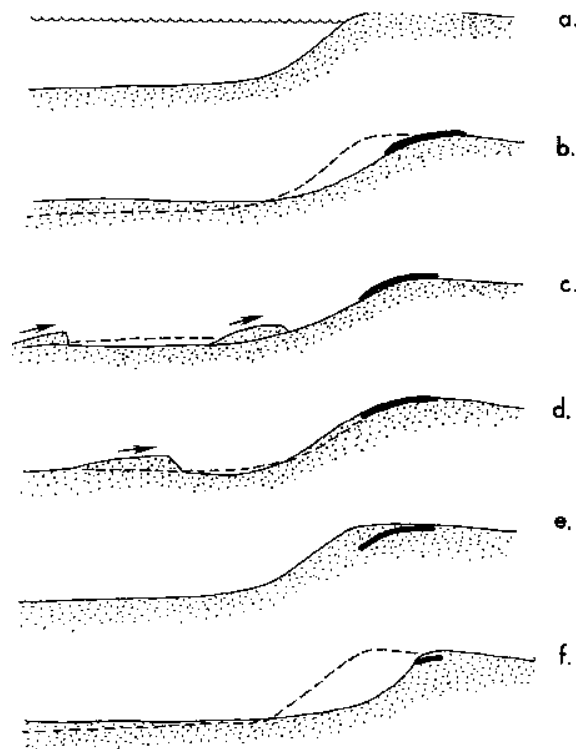
On coasts with a strong seasonal variation in wave energy levels (strong storm/swell conditions in winter with lower energy swell in summer), a long period erosion-deposition cycle is common.

Eroded winter storm beach with nearshore bars and summer berm profiles.



An idealized beach cycle (below) illustrates how oil can be buried during a period of storm erosion that is followed by oil deposition (b) and subsequent recovery (c to e). The buried oil will be exposed during the next phase of erosion (f).

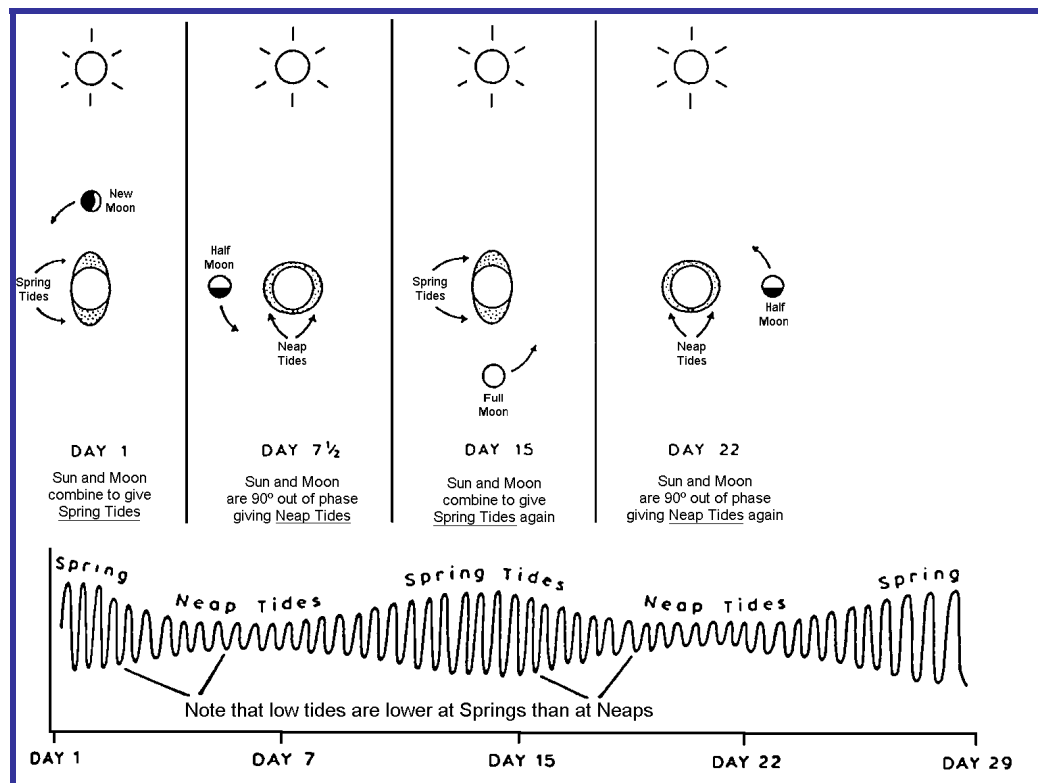
Effect of erosion-deposition cycle on a sand beach after oil is deposited on the upper beach.



(from Owens, 1994)

1.1.3. Tides

- ❖ Changes in water levels (tides) result from the gravitational interaction between (predominantly) the moon and the sun.
- ❖ The *height of the tides* varies constantly, in a predictable manner:
 - ⊃ SPRING TIDES — twice each month when the sun and moon are in alignment (New and Full Moon), the high tides are above the mean high tidal level and the low tides are below the mean low tide level.
 - ⊃ NEAP TIDES — as the relative position of the sun and moon changes to be out of alignment (the First and Last Quarters), the high tides are below the mean high tidal level and the low tides are above the mean low tide level.



- ❖ Tidal cycles vary throughout the year as the sun's position changes relative to the earth.
- ❖ The highest spring tidal ranges occur twice a year at the *EQUINOXES*.

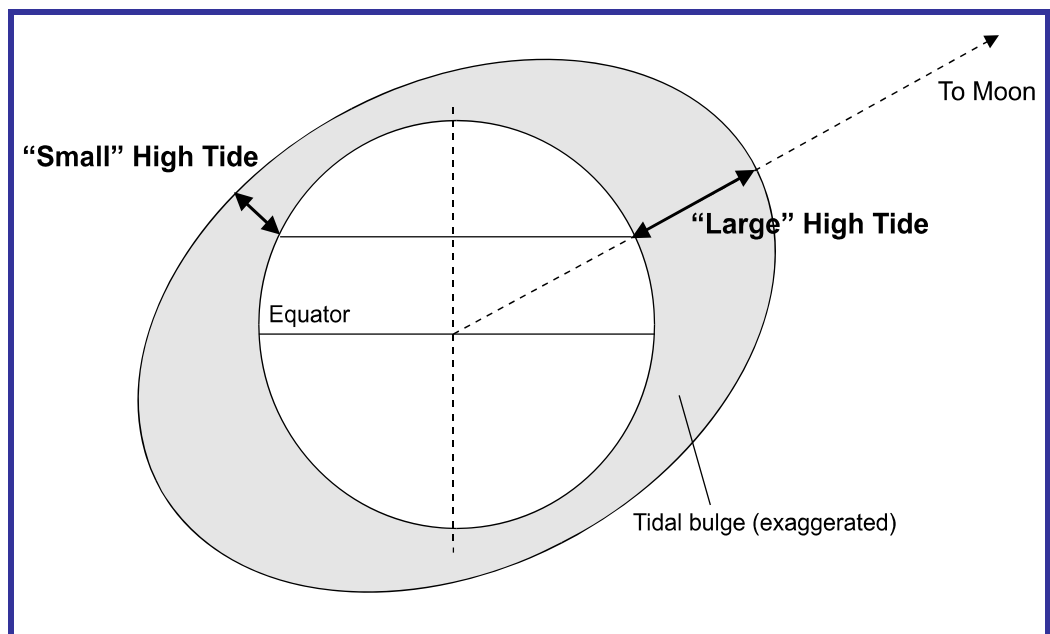
Tropic and Equatorial Tides

These tidal components are due to the moon's orbital plane, which is at an angle of 28° relative to the earth.

Tropic Tides

- ❖ Tropic tides occur when the moon is over one of the Tropics (i.e., 23° North or South of the equator).
- ❖ This creates unequal diurnal tides.

Unequal "Tropic" tides.



Equatorial Tides

- ❖ Equatorial tides occur when the moon is over the equator.
- ❖ There is no diurnal variation in the heights of the tides.

These tidal components have a 27-day cycle also, but this cycle is distinct and separate from the lunar rotation around the earth, which also is a 27-day cycle.

Tidal Zones

The coast can be divided into 3 basic zones, based on the tides:

- 1) **SUPRATIDAL ZONE** (also known as the *backshore*);
 - defined as the area of the shore between the mean high-water level and the landward limit of marine processes.
- 2) **INTERTIDAL ZONE** (also known as the *foreshore*);
 - defined as the area of the shore between the mean low-water level and the mean high-water level. This zone often is divided into the upper-, middle-, and lower-intertidal zones.
- 3) **SUBTIDAL ZONE** (also known as the *nearshore*);
 - this zone is always underwater and is defined as the area of the shore below the mean low-water level and extends seaward to approximately the 20-m water depth.

This tidal zonation is important as

- ❖ the effects of normal wave action are limited to the intertidal and adjacent subtidal zones;
- ❖ wave action and oil deposition occur in the *SUPRATIDAL ZONE* only during high spring tides or wind surges; oil stranded here is above the zone of normal wave action;
- ❖ the *LOWER HALF OF THE INTERTIDAL ZONE*, below the mid-tide level or mean water level, is exposed for less than half of the tidal cycle and usually stays wet; the likelihood of (a) oil being stranded and (b) sticking to the wet substrate is low — also, this is usually the most biologically productive zone;
- ❖ the *UPPER HALF OF THE INTERTIDAL ZONE* is out of the water for most of the tidal cycle and is the zone where oil is most likely to be stranded.

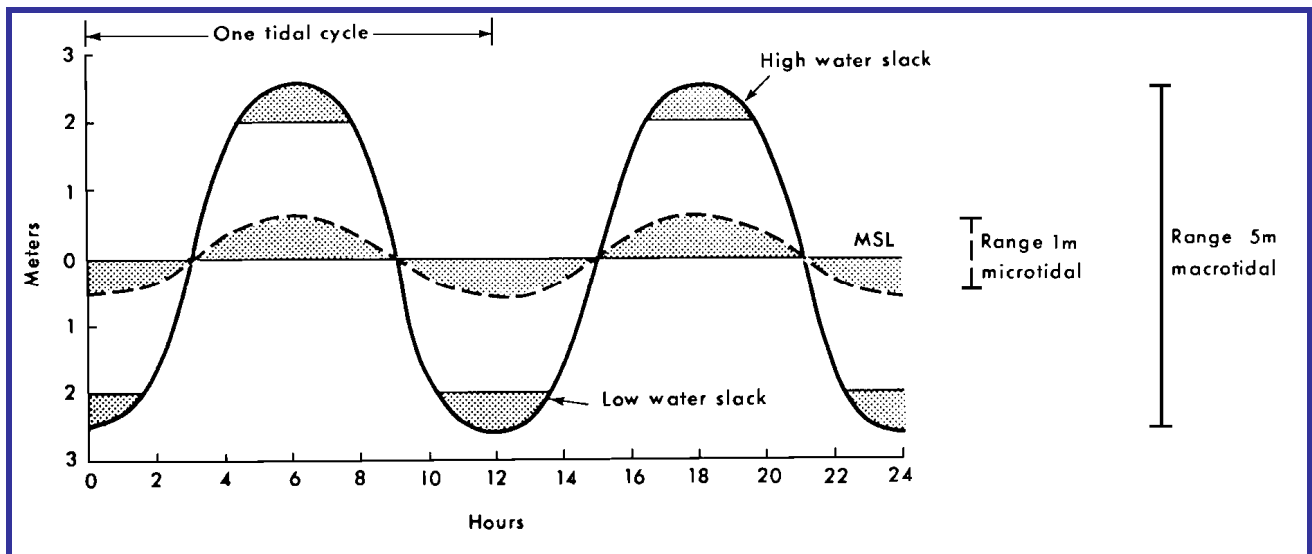
Storm Surges

- ❖ Wind-generated *storm surges*, or meteorological tides, can raise and lower water levels by piling water against or driving water away from a coastline; this can be of equal or greater significance than the astronomical tides, especially in areas with low tidal ranges such as the Gulf of Mexico.

Tidal Environments

Shoreline features strongly influence the pattern of the tides:

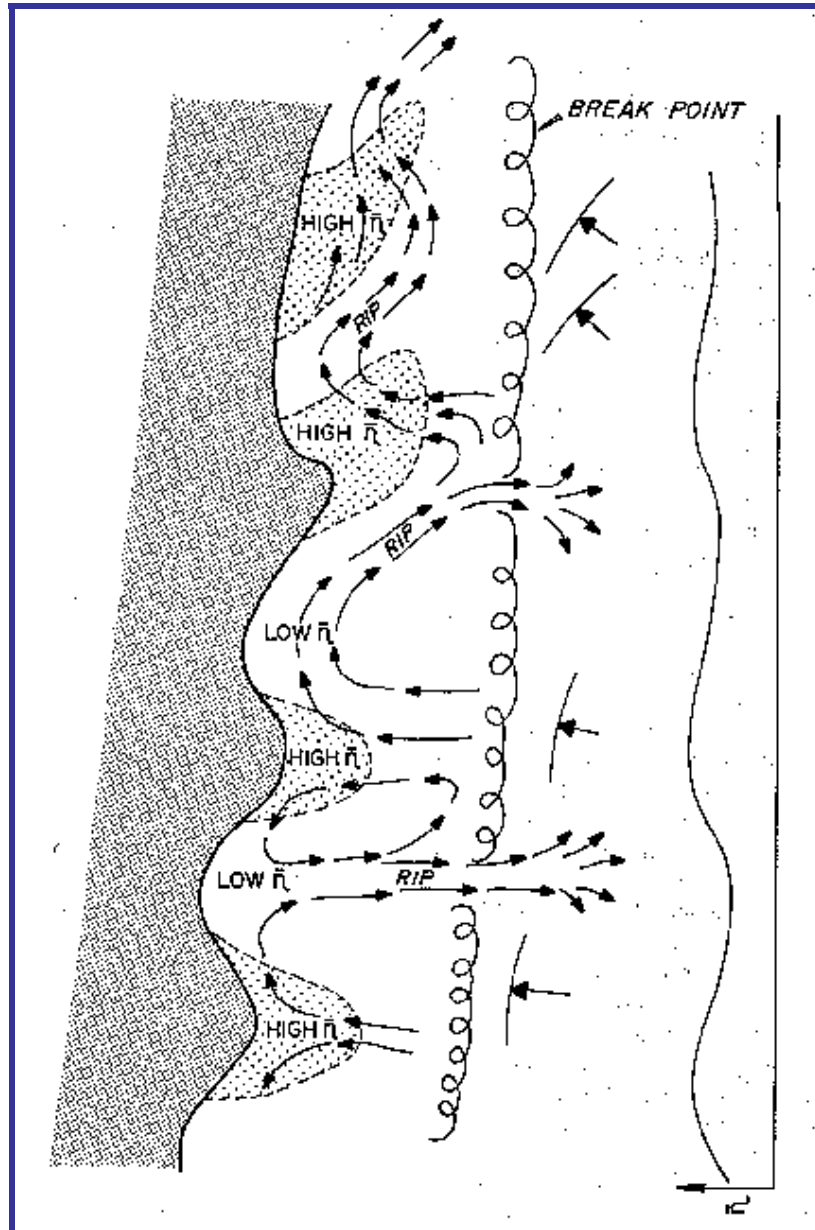
- ❖ Tidal currents are stronger where tidal ebb and flow are constricted by channels or inlets (“passes”). This is important in the transport of nearshore or intertidal sediments, and large volumes of material can be redistributed each tidal cycle.
- ❖ On low-relief coasts, even a low tidal range can expose wide areas at low tide.
- ❖ Tidal periods are generally diurnal or semi-diurnal, but may be a mixture of these two frequencies. The tidal period determines the length of time the intertidal zone is exposed or submerged each day, and wave processes can act at different levels of the shore zone.
- ❖ The effectiveness of wave action increases as tidal range decreases. This is demonstrated in the following figure where, in a micro-tidal environment, such as the Gulf of Mexico, the entire incoming wave energy during the 24-hour period is concentrated in a vertical band that is only 1 m wide. of time.



(from Owens, 1994)

1.1.4. Nearshore Currents

- ❖ Rip currents, caused by the meeting of water currents or the interaction of currents and waves, are common along the shore.



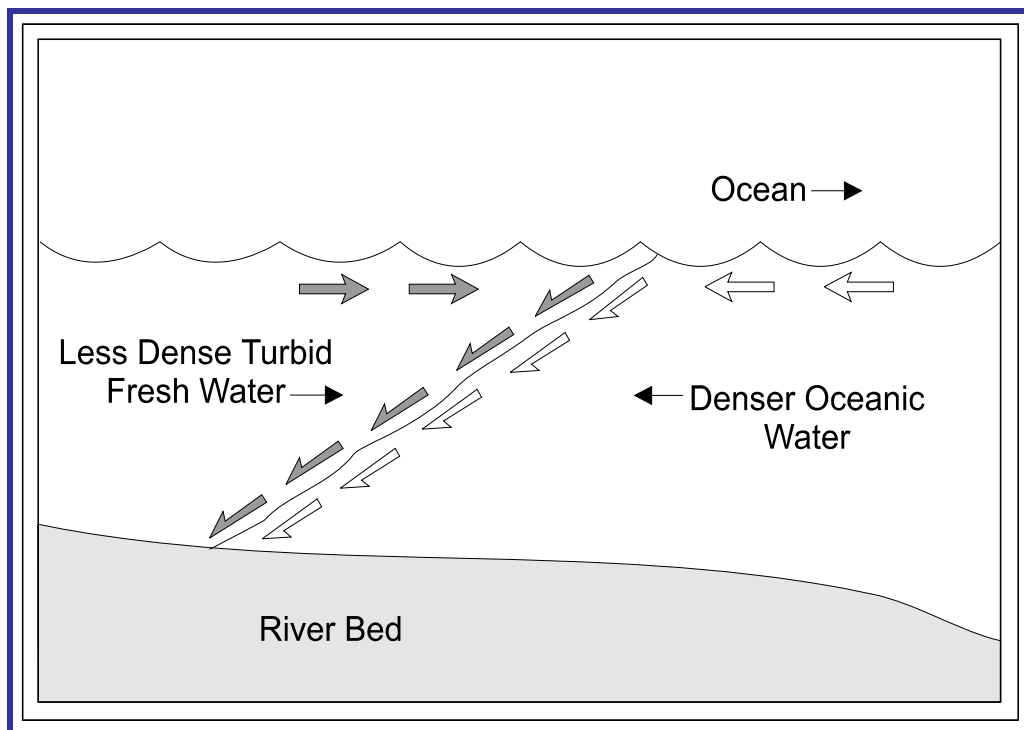
- ❖ Tidal inlets have distinctive ebb-and flood-tidal current patterns.

Density Fronts

- ❖ Where different water waves meet (e.g., fresh water flow from a river meets saline nearshore ocean water), a distinctive density front may be a barrier to the movement of oil on the water surface (Murray, 1982; Murray and Owens, 1988).
- ❖ In estuaries and bays this mixing zone (density front) moves seaward with the ebb tides and landward with the flood tides.
- ❖ These density fronts are very common around the Mississippi Delta and were observed on many occasions on DWH.

“Classic” Salt Wedge Estuary

(CHS, 1983)



1.1.5. Geomorphology

Coastal landforms are not fixed, but continually change by the work of moving water and other agents as material is deposited or eroded. The constant, dynamic conditions of shorelines must be considered in any attempt to predict the fate of stranded oil.

- ❖ Rates of shoreline change are variable and depend on coastal processes and the geology of the region. Characteristics that determine the degree to which the coastal processes affect the shoreline include:
 - < slope,
 - < susceptibility of materials to erosion (resistance),
 - < fluvial input,
 - < sediment availability,
 - < prevailing longshore transport direction,
 - < presence of vegetation,
- ❖ The relief of the interior land mass generally governs the size of river drainage basins and the supply of sediments to the coasts:
 - < river basins on high mountain coasts are generally small and sediment inputs are low;
 - < large drainage basins combined with active terrestrial weathering processes produce high sediment yields to the coasts.
- ❖ The amount of sediment supplied by fluvial input is also dependant upon the precipitation amount and may be seasonal (i.e., spring runoff from snow melt).
- ❖ Where sediments are supplied directly by rivers or by marine erosion of unconsolidated or unresistant cliffs, sedimentary deposits such as beaches, tidal flats, and/or deltas frequently characterize the coastal zone.
- ❖ The longshore transport of sediments may be limited by the presence of headlands or embayments; the transport systems are compartmentalized and the free exchange of sediment from one compartment to another is not possible.
- ❖ On coasts where longshore transport is uninterrupted by bedrock outcrops, movement of material is limited only by the presence of estuaries or inlets; if sufficient sediments are supplied, even these obstacles may be crossed.

1.2. *Ecology and Cultural Resources*

A shoreline or region may be characterized by any number of ecologically or culturally important resources.

- ❖ Wildlife
 - < birds; seabirds and waterfowl for nesting, breeding, and migration, colonial nesting birds, raptors, wading and shorebirds
 - < mammals; manatees,, seals, whales, dolphins, porpoises, sea lions, sea otters
 - < fish; exploited on both commercial and recreational basis; salmon, herring, commercial groundfish
 - < amphibians and reptiles; frogs, turtles, alligators, water snakes (especially in wetland areas)
 - < invertebrates; sea scallop, crab, shrimp, squid, octopus
 - < intertidal organisms; shellfish, seaweed, benthic invertebrates
 - < shore associated mammals; river otters, mink, deer, bears
- ❖ National Parks or regional parks (including underwater parks), nature reserves or wilderness areas.
- ❖ Environmentally Sensitive Areas or areas of ecological significance (e.g., wetlands, dune formations, marine plants)
- ❖ Recreational and tourism areas
- ❖ Marine transportation industry
- ❖ Water Intakes
- ❖ Commercial, sport, or subsistence fisheries and aquaculture sites
- ❖ Significant Cultural Resources
 - relating to aboriginal occupation and land-use practices along the shorelines,
 - many may be undocumented or unknown, such as:
 - < Paleontological sites (archaeological interest)
 - < Historic occupation sites (campsites, villages, fishing stations, trade posts, military and naval establishments)
 - < Pictographs (rock paintings, usually on rocks or cliffs over water)
 - < Stone structures
 - < Underwater shipwrecks
- ❖ Best Management Practices (BMPs) may be defined through Sections 7 and 106

1.3. *Shoreline Types and Coastal Character*

The character of the shore zone and the fate and persistence of stranded oil are primarily a function of the

- ❖ SHORELINE PROCESSES, and the
- ❖ SUBSTRATE MATERIALS.

For oil spill response studies, it is important to distinguish between:

- ❖ the *SHORELINE TYPE* of the intertidal (foreshore) or swash zone;
 - < this is *where the oil becomes stranded* and where the treatment or cleanup activities take place.

and

- ❖ the *COASTAL CHARACTER*, which refers to the form of the shore zone as a whole and includes the area inland and seaward of the intertidal zone;
 - < this is *where operations activities to implement the treatment or cleanup take place*, and defines access constraints to the foreshore (intertidal) and backshore (supratidal) zones.

The coastal character or landform (beach, cliff, marsh, etc.) may be a useful descriptor of the regional setting, but the substrate materials or shoreline type control the behavior and persistence of stranded oil.

Coastal processes
act on the
substrate or material (shoreline type)
that is provided by the
regional geology of the coastal zone
to develop the
form of the shoreline (coastal character).

1.3.1. Shoreline Types for Oil Spill Response

The basic parameter in defining shoreline type is the *MATERIAL* that is present at the shoreline (in the intertidal or foreshore zone); this parameter involves two components:

- 1) the presence or absence of sediments in the shore zone, and
 - 2) the character of the substrate materials.
- ∈ The presence or absence of sediments is a key factor as this will determine whether oil is stranded on the surface of a substrate or can penetrate and/or be buried.
- ❖ **SOLID SHORELINES**, such as bedrock outcrops or man-made sea walls, are stable and impermeable.
 - ❖ **UNCONSOLIDATED SHORELINES**, such as beaches and deltas, are mobile and permeable.
- ∉ Within these two fundamental shoreline types, further subdivision is based on the *character of the substrate materials*.

Solid and Unconsolidated Materials of the Shore Zone

<u>SOLID MATERIALS</u>		<u>UNCONSOLIDATED MATERIALS</u>	
Bedrock:	- resistant - unresistant	Inorganic:*	- silt/clay - mud - sand - pebble - cobble - boulder
Anthropogenic:	- concrete - metal - pilings - wood	Organic:	- wetland - marsh - mangrove - corals - peat - shell hash ** - swamp - vegetated shore
Beach Rock		Anthropogenic:	- concrete forms ** - debris/logs - riprap** - rubble**

* = sediments

** these would have a size component equal to that used for inorganic materials

Solid and Unconsolidated COASTAL CHARACTER Forms

SOLID FORMS

Anthropomorphic:

bulkhead
dolphin
dyke
breakwater
jetty
marina
seawall
revetment
wharf

Cliff:

vertical
steep
inclined
beveled
terraced
sea stack

Platform:

horizontal
terraced

Reef

UNCONSOLIDATED FORMS

Anthropomorphic:

dock/pier
dyke
breakwater
fill
marina
midden
sea wall

Beach:

attached
barrier
spit

Delta:

bird-foot
fan/ single channel
fan/multi-channel
lobate

Dune:

bare
vegetated

Channel:

creek bank
levee
river bank
tidal

Flats:

delta
tidal
boulder barricade

Marsh:

fringing
meadow

Mangrove:

Scree/Talus

Coastal Oil Spill Vulnerability

Feature	Residence Time of Oil	USCG Ranking	NOAA Ranking
Exposed rocky shores	Days to weeks	1	1
Wave-cut platforms	Days to weeks	2	2
Fine sand beaches	Days to weeks	3	4
Coarse-sand beaches	Months	4	No rank given
Exposed sandy tidal flats	Months	5	7
Sand and gravel beaches	Years	6	5
Gravel beaches	Years	7	6
Sheltered rocky shores	Years	8	8
Tidal mud flats	Years	9	9
Marshes and lagoons	10 years	10	10

Part 2 Oil Fate and Behaviour

Table of Contents

2.1. Oil Types _____	2-3
2.2. The Fate of Spilled Oil — Oil Movement _____	2-4
2.2.1. Oil Movement — Simple Trajectory Analysis _____	2-5
2.2.2. River Flow _____	2-6
2.2.3. Nearshore Currents _____	2-7
2.3. The Fate of Spilled Oil — Weathering _____	2-8
2.3.1. Emulsification _____	2-10
2.3.2. Persistence _____	2-11
2.3.3. Natural Degradation (Weathering) by Fine Particle – Oil Interaction _____	2-12
2.4. Where Oil Is Stranded _____	2-14
2.4.1. Rivers _____	2-15
2.5. Oil Burial, Penetration, and Retention _____	2-16
2.6. Oil on Shorelines _____	2-19

Part 2 Oil Fate and Behaviour

2.1. Oil Types

Crude or refined oils vary considerably in their physical and chemical character.

		STICKY OR NON-STICKY					
		Low Pour Point Volatile Oils	Low Viscosity < 15 CST	Medium Viscosity 15 - 50 CST	High Viscosity > 50 CST	Semi-solid or Solid	
		40°	35°	30°	25°	20°	15°
API GRAVITY RANGES		—————		■ ■	—————		■ ■ ■ ■
		■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■	—————		—————		—————
PRODUCTS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Avgas 80/100 ▪ Gasoline ▪ Kerosene ▪ Naptha ▪ No. 1 Fuels ▪ Solvents 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Diesel ▪ No. 2 Fuel ▪ Heating Oils ▪ Gas Turbine Fuel ▪ Marine Diesel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ No. 4 Fuel ▪ Lube Oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Bunker B, C ▪ No. 5, 6 Fuel ▪ Marine Fuel Oil ▪ <i>Weathered Medium Viscosity Fuels</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Asphalt ▪ <i>Weathered High Viscosity Fuels</i> 		
CRUDES	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Sable Is. ▪ Scotian Light 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Alberta ▪ Brent ▪ West Texas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Alaskan North Slope ▪ South Louisiana ▪ <i>Weathered Low Viscosity Crudes</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ San Joaquin Valley ▪ Venezuela ▪ <i>Weathered Medium Viscosity Crudes</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <i>Weathered Medium or High Viscosity Crudes</i> 		

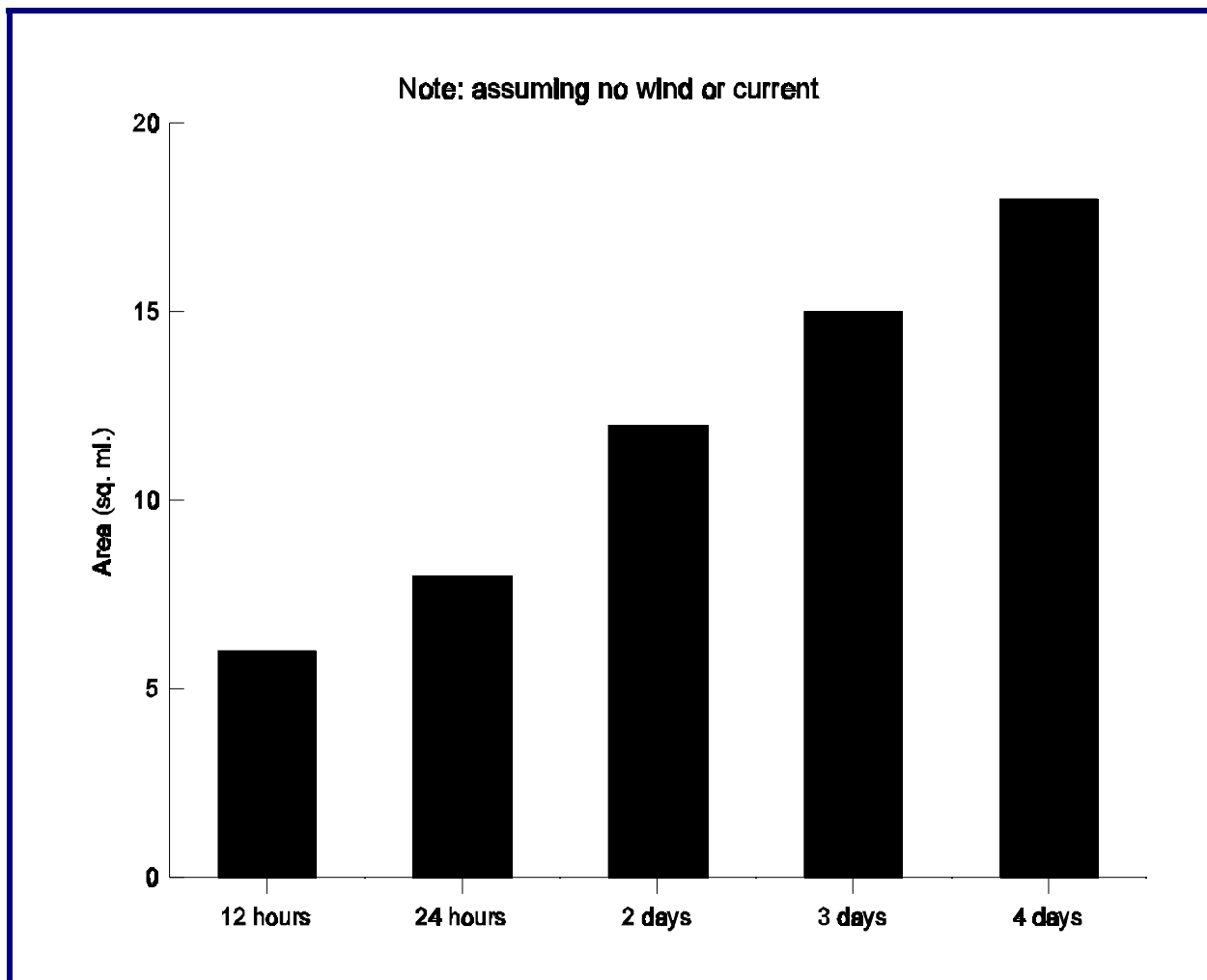
(from Owens and Taylor, 1993)

2.2. The Fate of Spilled Oil — Oil Movement

- ❖ Spilled oil spreads on the water surface due to gravity effects (as illustrated below) and is transported by currents and winds.
- ❖ For large spills, *TRAJECTORY MODELS* may be used to estimate slick movements. A local knowledge of currents may help to estimate general movement patterns.

➤ for an oil slick classification system, see Allen,1997.

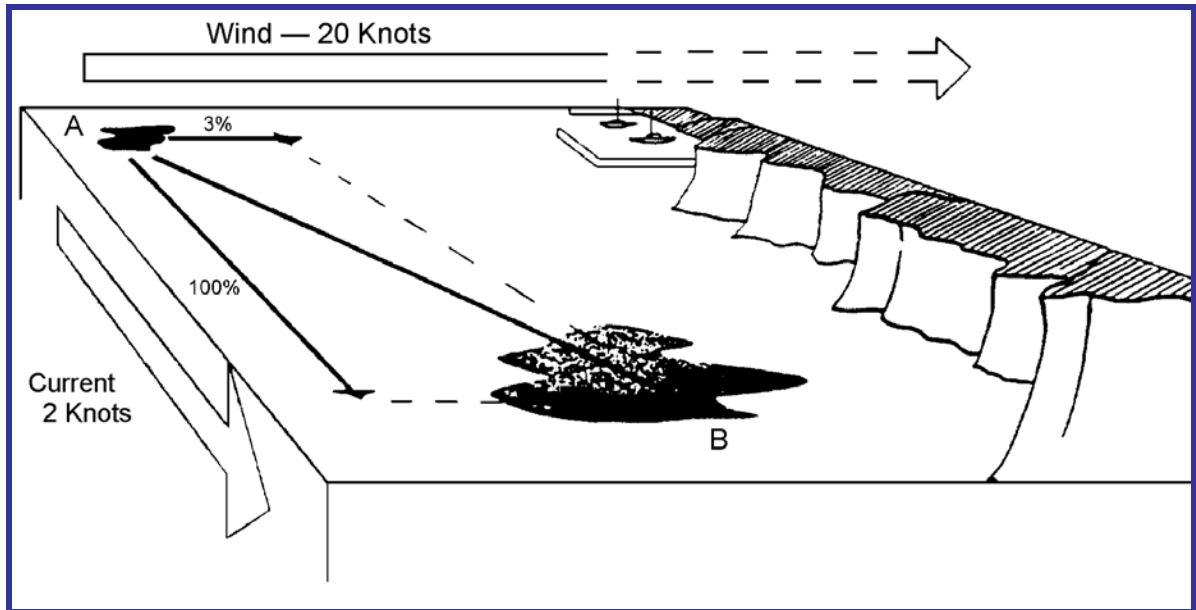
Spread of an “Exxon Valdez”-Sized Oil Spill



2.2.1. Oil Movement — Simple Trajectory Analysis

Surface currents dominate spill movement unless there are no currents or the winds are very strong.

- ❖ An oil slick will move at about the same speed as the surface current and at about 3% of the wind speed (illustrated below).



(adapted from ITOPF, 1987)

Wind Velocity km/hr	3% of Wind Velocity	=	Metres/Second	=	Knots
25	0.75 km/hr	=	0.21 m/s	=	0.41 kts
50	1.5 km/hr	=	0.42 m/s	=	0.82 kts
75	2.25 km/hr	=	0.62 m/s	=	1.215 kts

Trajectory Uncertainty

- ❖ Oil drifts at between 1 to 6 % of the wind speed.
- ❖ Strong winds typically are "gusty."
- ❖ Timing is the most uncertain element of weather forecasting.

2.2.2. River Flow

- ❖ Generally in one direction (downstream), currents usually dominate.
- ❖ Varies locally — back eddies, whirlpools, etc.
- ❖ Spread also variable in time and space.
- ❖ Current speeds are lower at the banks and the bottom (friction), surface and center water moves faster (causes oil to spread rapidly and there may be considerable mixing behind leading edge of oil plume).
- ❖ If river or channel narrows, then surface current speed increases. Currents may be strong (>50 cm/sec) in river sections where flow is constricted.
- ❖ If river widens, then speed decreases.
- ❖ Wakes from both large vessels and small boat traffic *CAN CAUSE STRONG WAVE ACTION* (wave heights >1 m) at the shore.
- ❖ *WINDS* are important in a river or canal as they can drive a slick against one bank, keeping the lee shore oil free.
- ❖ Near the mouth, rivers may be subject to *TIDAL REVERSALS*.
- ❖ 3-D distribution for most oil types in rivers.

Oil Transport in Rivers

- Currents (sheer) usually dominate.
- Wind is generally a minor effect.
- Wind may determine which riverbank is oiled as oil moves downstream.

2.2.3. Nearshore Currents

Coastal currents are very important in controlling the movement of oil near the shoreline.

- ❖ Coastal boundary currents can:
 - (a) trap or contain oil close to a shore (Murray and Owens, 1988):
 - *Ixtoc*, Gulf of Mexico, 1979;
 - *Amoco Cadiz*, Brittany, France, 1978;
 - *Nestucca*, NW USA and Vancouver Island, British Columbia, 1988-1990;
 - *Exxon Valdez*, Alaska, 1989;
 - Kuwait, 1991; or can
 - (b) keep oil away from a shore:
 - *Alvenus*, Gulf of Mexico, 1984;
 - *Kharg V*, Morocco, 1990;
 - *Mega Borg*, Gulf of Mexico, 1990.
- ❖ Fresh or brackish water outflow from a river can deflect oil away from a river mouth or estuary:
 - Chevron, Mississippi River, 1970;
 - DWH, Gulf of Mexico, 2010.
- ❖ Density fronts are associated with coastal boundary currents, fresh water outflow, or other ocean and nearshore currents.

2.3. *The Fate of Spilled Oil — Weathering*

WEATHERING — the set of physical and chemical processes that change the compounds of the spilled oil.

Primary Weathering Processes

- ❖ Processes that are initially important include:
 - spreading
 - dispersion
 - evaporation
 - dissolution⁺
 - emulsification
- ❖ Processes that are more important in the later stages of weathering and usually determine the ultimate fate of the spilled oil include:
 - oxidation⁺
 - biodegradation
 - sinking and/or sedimentation⁺
- ❖ All of the 8 processes are interactive.

(⁺ these processes usually are of lesser importance than the others)

Weathering Rates

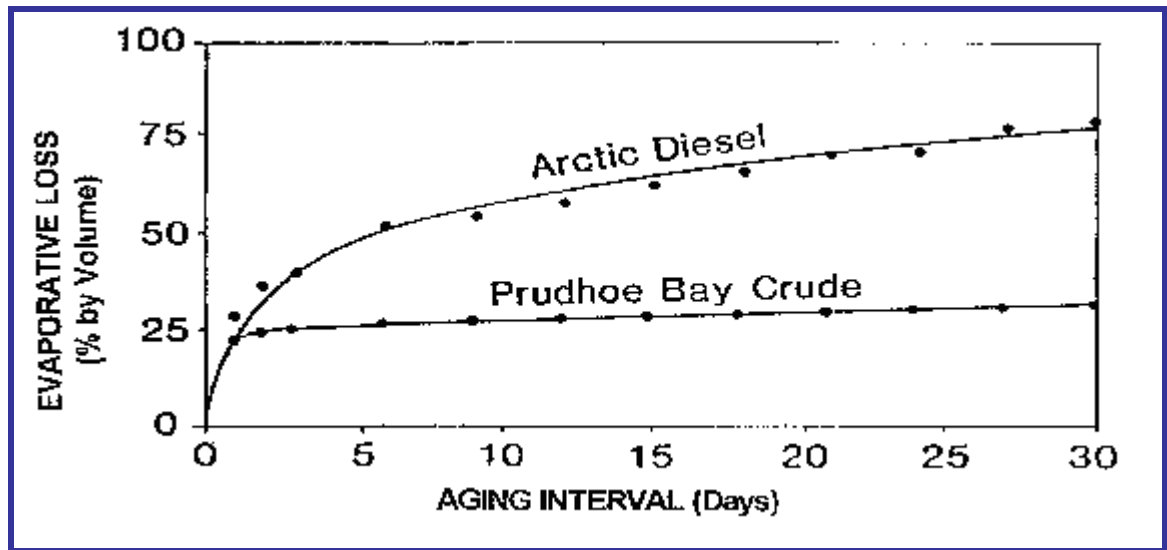
- ❖ Depend on:
 - oil type
 - physical properties such as viscosity and pour point, and
 - chemical properties such as wax content
 - amount of oil spilled
 - weather and sea state conditions
 - location (whether oil stays at sea or is stranded)
- ❖ NON-PERSISTENT OILS
 - weather naturally and rapidly — usually do not involve a cleanup response.
- ❖ PERSISTENT OILS

- break and weather more slowly and often require a cleanup response (includes most crude oils, see table on page 2-3).

Persistence of Stranded Oil

EVAPORATION is usually the most important weathering process in the first days immediately following a spill.

Evaporation of Two Oil Types at 0°C and a Wind Speed of 18 km/hr (from ABSORB, 1981)



Approximate Evaporation for Various Classes of Oil

(ITOPF, 1987)

Oil Type	12-Hour Evaporation*	48-Hour Evaporation	Total Fraction Evaporated
Group 1 (Gasoline)	50 – 100%	100%	100%
Group 2 (Diesel)	10 – 40%	25 – 80%	100%
Group 3 (Medium Crude)	5 – 15%	10 – 25%	35%
Group 4 (Heavy Oils)	1 – 3%	5 – 10%	15%
Group 5 (Low API)	0 – 2%	1 – 5%	10%

(*) Lower limits are for 5°C and the upper limit for 30°C and a moderate wind speed of 5 m/sec.

2.3.1. Emulsification

An emulsion is usually a *WATER-IN-OIL* mixture, but can be an *OIL-IN-WATER* mixture.

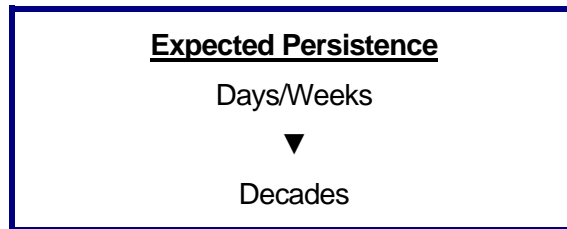
- ❖ Either way, the process of emulsification results in:
 - an increase in the volume of oil, and
 - the alteration of the properties of the spilled oil.
- ❖ The process is a function of the oil type and the available mixing energy (usually wave action at sea for marine spills).
- ❖ Oil is difficult to emulsify if the ambient water temperature is $>10^{\circ}\text{C}$ below the pour point.
- ❖ *EMULSION STABILITY* in crude oils is largely dependent on the oil types:
 - for example, ANSC (Exxon Valdez spill — Alaska 1989) forms a stable emulsion whether fresh or weathered; whereas, unweathered Gulfaks oil (Braer spill — Shetland 1995) formed a temporary oil-in-water emulsion,
 - light crudes (e.g., North Sea Brent) tend to form temporary or unstable emulsions,
 - water-in-oil emulsions often are referred to as “(chocolate) mousse”.
- ❖ Emulsion affects the *ADHESION PROPERTIES* of oil:
 - this dramatically affects the on-water recovery options, and
 - an oil-in-water emulsion likely will not stick to shore zone materials.

2.3.2. Persistence

The persistence of oil stranded on the shoreline is dependent on:

- € the character of the oil,
- € the physical character of the shoreline, and
- ∠ shoreline processes.

The following tables show increasing persistence (top to bottom) for various oil and shoreline characteristics.



OIL CHARACTERISTICS

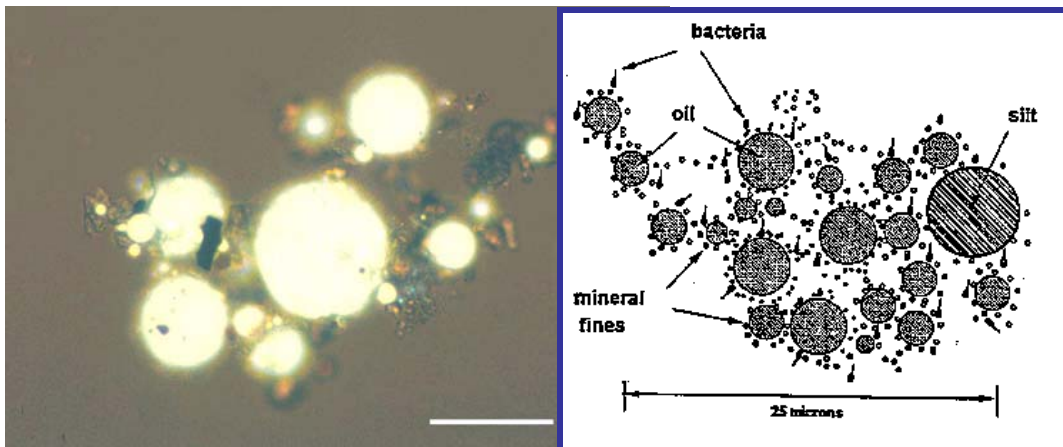
	Types of Oil	Thickness of Oil on Shore Surface	Depth of Oil Penetration
INCREASING PERSISTENCE ▼	Light Volatile ▼	Very Thin (<1.0 cm) ▼	All Oil Exposed on Shore Surface ▼
	Tarry	Thick (>10.0 cm)	All Oil Buried Below Beach Surface

SHORELINE CHARACTERISTICS

Fetch	Prevailing Winds	Coastal Exposure	Offshore Ice	Wave Energy Level at Shoreline
Long (> 200 km) ▼	Onshore ▼	Straight (open) ▼	Absent ▼	High Energy Levels: Exposed Coast ▼
Short (> 50 km)	Offshore	Indented (sheltered)	Present	Low Energy Levels: Totally Sheltered

2.3.3. Natural Degradation (Weathering) by Fine Particle – Oil Interaction

- ❖ Following the 1989 Prince William Sound *Exxon Valdez* spill, researchers found that a key factor in the natural removal of residual stranded oil was fine particle (clay) and oil interaction (Bragg and Yang, 1995; Jahns *et al.*, 1992).
- ❖ This process can be used to explain why and how oil is removed naturally from surface and subsurface sediments in areas where natural wave energy levels are too low to physically or mechanically abrade residual oil.
- ❖ These initial studies were then extended to include oil samples from other sites in arctic, temperate, and tropical coastal environments (Owens, Bragg, and Humphrey, 1994).



The scale of fine particle and oil interaction - 25 microns is equal to 0.001 mm or one-thousandth of an inch (from Bragg and Yang, 1995)

Fine Particle — Oil Interaction

- Oil can be broken down or weathered, in place, into its component parts in the absence of mechanical wave energy.
- This can occur by a number of surface interaction processes, one of which is clay-oil flocculation (Bragg and Owens, 1995; Bragg and Yang, 1995).
- Once small particles have been generated, they are more available for biodegradation (Bragg *et al.*, 1994; Lee *et al.*, 1997).

- Although the scale of the processes and the size of the particles is very small (see diagram on previous page), the process is very evident when watched under the microscope.
- The factors that control or affect the rates of natural oil removal by this process are not well understood. Laboratory tests (Bragg and Owens, 1995) and field observations (Owens *et al.*, 1994) show that, even after many (22+) years, very viscous oils can be continuously weathered by this process, albeit at relatively slow rates. The tests also show that the processes can occur in inland waters (such as the Great Lakes).
- It is believed, but unproven, that these processes will eventually remove and break down all residual stranded oil, except in a few unusual circumstances. This explains why so little oil remains from the thousands of miles of shoreline that have been oiled over the years.
- Oil may remain if it is:
 - (a) *above water level limits* — stranded above the higher high-water mark and so not in contact with water, or
 - (b) *semi-solid* or has a solid/semi-solid (asphalt) "skin" — so that the forces of cohesion are too strong and prevent small particles from breaking away from the oil surface.

Conclusion:

- ❖ We have known for many years that oiled shorelines will clean rapidly in the presence of wave action (high mechanical energy levels).
- ❖ We now know why and how oil can be cleaned in low wave-energy environments in the absence of mechanical wave energy.

2.4. *Where Oil Is Stranded*

- ❖ On sheltered coasts with small waves, most of the oil will be deposited as a thin band in the middle to upper intertidal zone (in the zone of wave action).
- ❖ If washed ashore during periods of storm-wave activity, oil can be carried farther up a beach and deposited in the supratidal zone (above the limit of most wave action); this oil is stranded and will not be affected by waves until the next period of high water levels.
- ❖ On impermeable surfaces (bedrock, solid man-made structures), oil remains on the surface.
- ❖ On permeable shores (i.e., shores with sediments), subsurface oil can be present due to burial and/or penetration.

Factors That Affect Where Oil Is Located

When observing and documenting oil conditions and discussing treatment options, keep the following in mind:

Type of Shoreline + Tidal Stage or Water Level + Wave Conditions

Control

Where the Oil is Deposited on the Shoreline

- Example** ♦ On sheltered shorelines, oil is usually deposited as a band in the mid- to upper-intertidal zone with a sharply defined upper limit at the high tide line.

Wave Energy + Sediment Transport Cycle

Control

Whether Oil is Buried or

Naturally Washed from the Beach

- Example** ♦ The potential for rapid burial or erosion is greater on fine-grained beaches as less energy is required for sediment transport.

Sediment Type + Degree of Sorting + Viscosity of the Oil

Control

Rate and Depth of Oil Penetration

Example ♦ Weathered or emulsified high viscosity oil tends to remain on the surface of fine-grained beaches and of poorly sorted substrates.

2.4.1. Rivers

❖ Key factor is river stage (rising or falling water level) — this controls whether stream banks are oiled or if can expect over-bank flooding and oiling.

Changes in river stage result from:

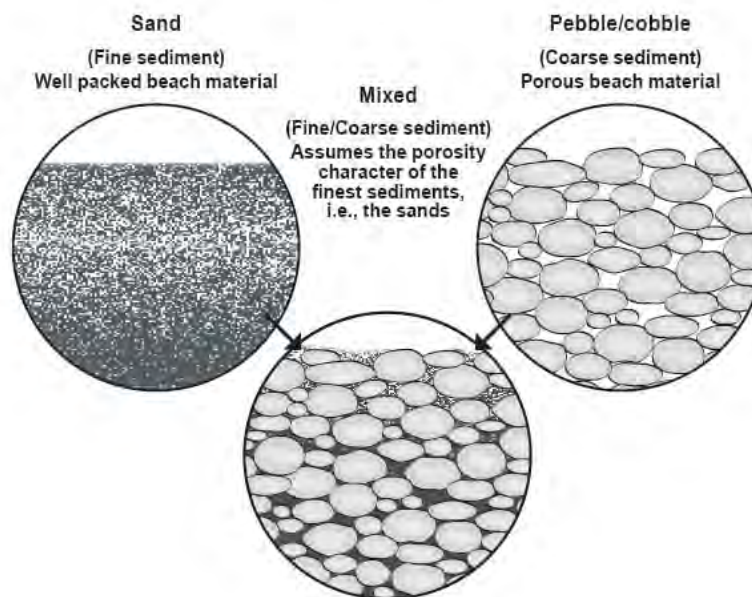
- the interplay between inputs (precipitation, run-off, groundwater) and outputs (evaporation, transpiration, consumptive uses, and outflow),
 - the regulation of the flow by man (dams),
 - the effects of wind-generated storm surges and seiches (wind set-up and set-down),
 - In winter, ice retardation and ice jams in rivers may affect water levels by reducing flow; aquatic growth during summer may have a similar effect.
- ❖ These runoff variations change the water level and may strand oil on the shoreline at different levels.
- For example, falling water levels may strand oil so that it will not refloat, which removes it as a secondary source for remobilization but may leave a persistent shoreline cleanup problem.
 - Rising water levels may wash off beached oil and reintroduce floating oil or may cover up or bury oil that is adhered to sediment or vegetation.
 - High water levels may lead to greater oil contact with shore bank vegetation and may strand oil in small pools and eddies along the bank.
 - Oil may be carried into flood plains during overbank flood stages, leaving potentially extensive areas of oiled vegetation and soils.
- ❖ In general, oil will tend to accumulate in areas of quiet water or eddies at the inside of river bends on a meandering river or stream, or in other pools where velocities are slower.
- ❖ Pools of oil may also accumulate behind log or debris jams.
- ❖ For any oil that enters a river, irrespective of flow velocities or water levels, some of the oil will end up on the riverbanks.
- ❖ In faster flowing conditions, the geographic spread and the affected area would be greater than under slower flow conditions, although local concentrations of oil may be greater for slower streams.

2.5. Oil Burial, Penetration, and Retention

Stranded oil can be *BURIED* or *ERODED* by the normal movement of beach sediments as they are redistributed by the action of waves and winds.

Oil may penetrate below the surface of a beach, depending on the size of the sediment and the viscosity of the oil. Only light oils (e.g., a diesel) can penetrate a sand or mixed sand-gravel beach, whereas, all but the more viscous oils can easily penetrate into a pebble-cobble beach.

- ❖ In principle, oil more easily penetrates coarse sediments (pebbles/ cobbles) than fine sediments (sands/granules) due to:
 - fewer grain-grain contacts/m³ (see table on following page), and
 - larger void spaces between grains.
- ❖ Beaches composed of *mixed sands, pebbles, and cobbles* are sometimes referred to as “gravel beaches”. The surface layer often has predominantly coarse sediments with increasing amounts of sand in the subsurface.
- ❖ On the mixed-sediment beaches, the coarser fractions (pebbles and cobbles) are infilled with the finer sands so that these beaches are *permeable only for some medium oils and all light oils*, and they have a *dynamic, mobile* surface layer.



(from Owens, 1996)

- ❖ From an oil fate and persistence perspective (for example, in terms of penetration of oils), this mixed-sediment beach type is similar to a sand beach, but, for

response operations (in terms of bearing capacity and cleanup techniques (Section 6)), this beach type is more like a pebble-cobble beach.

Oil Penetration — Retention

- ❖ *PENETRATION* is the amount of oil that enters sediment and the depth of oiling. *RETENTION* is the amount of oil that remains in the substrate after remobilization (natural flushing).
- ❖ Oil is more easily removed by water flushing from coarse sediments due to:
 - fewer grain-grain contacts/m³, and
 - the larger surface area per unit volume of finer sediments.
- ❖ More oil can penetrate coarse sediments, but if the oil can penetrate the finer sediments then it is likely that more oil will be retained in those finer sediments.
- ❖ No single parameter controls oil penetration or retention. A combination of oil properties, such as adhesion and viscosity, and sediment properties, in particular grain size and sorting, affect penetration and retention of oil in sediment.
- ❖ The long-term retention of subsurface oil in sediments is strongly determined by the initial oiling.

	SEDIMENT CHARACTERISTICS					OIL RETENTION (l/m ³)			
	Mean Grain Size (mm)	Minimum Porosity (%)	Clasts per m ³	Surface Area (m ² /m ³)	Grain-to-Grain Contacts (#/m ³)	Bunker C		ANSC	
						Unweathered		22% Weathered	
						2°C	15°C	2°C	15°C
Coarse Sand	0.75	36	10 ⁸	2000	6 ⁹	*	*	*	*
Very Coarse Sand	1.7	36	2 ⁸	1700	10 ⁸	*	*	*	115
Granules	3.4	37	3 ⁷	1500	2 ⁸	*	*	*	65
Small Pebble	6.7	35	10 ⁵	400	8 ⁶	*	*	75	5
Medium Pebble	14.5	36	2 ⁵	200	10 ⁵	*	50	30	5
Large Pebble	22	39	7 ⁴	150	3 ⁵	100	70	15	0
Very Large Pebble	43	40.5	10 ³	100	6 ⁴	80	5	10	0

* = limited penetration

(after Harper *et al.*, 1995)

Relative Values of Oil Penetration and Retention Potential for Various Shoreline Types

Shoreline	Wave Energy*	Oil Penetration*	Oil Retention*
Beaches			
Gravel/Cobble	M – H	M – H	L – M
Sand/Gravel	L – H	L – H	L – M
Sand/Silt	L – M	L – M	L – M
Peat	L – M	L	L – H
Tidal Flats			
Mud	L	L	H
Sand/Silt	L	H	L
Vegetated Shores	L – M	L	M – H
Slumping Tundra Scarps	L – M	L	M – H

2.6. Oil on Shorelines

1) **Beaches**

- Mobile sediments
- Biota either mobile or deep burrowing
- Relatively few organisms
- Recovery usually rapid (<1 yr) if beach is open to wave action

2) **Marshes**

- Very productive environments
- Impact depends on degree of oiling: less damage if only fringes are oiled
- Recovery slower if interior areas are oiled
- Cleanup can delay recovery

3) **Tidal Flats**

- Rich communities of burrowing invertebrates and shore birds
- Oil not easily stranded
- BUT can fill burrows quickly
- Recovery can be slow (several years)

Part 3 Spill Management

Table of Contents

3.1. Decision Process _____	3-3
3.1.1. Major Players in the Decision Process _____	3-6
3.2. Sensitivity Analysis _____	3-6
3.3. Response Priorities _____	3-11
3.4. Feasibility and Net Environmental Benefit _____	3-14
3.5. When is Cleanup Completed ? _____	3-18
3.5.1. METHODS for Assessing Completion of Shoreline Treatment or Cleanup _____	3-19
3.5.2. Example of "Sign-Off" Procedure _____	3-23
3.6. Guidelines for the Selection of Treatment Standards and Cleanup Endpoints for Oiled Shorelines _____	3-25

Part 3 Spill Management

3.1. *Decision Process*

Spill Response Management

- Base Concept:
 - Management by Objectives**
- Integral part of the Incident Command System (ICS) for Emergency Response Management

Decision Concept

- Define: Objectives
- Develop: Strategy
- Select: Methods
- Evaluate: Feasibility

Spill Response

Concept	▶	Application
A <u>Management</u>		Operational
Decision		<u>Response</u>
Process		Action(s)

Key Points:

- Response is one of the management functions
- Field actions (operations) are part of a managed response
- Appropriate and effective field actions are implemented in the context of the response objectives

Decision Process

1. Gather *INFORMATION* and assess the situation.
2. Define response *OBJECTIVE(S)*.
3. Develop *STRATEGIES* to meet the objectives.
4. Select appropriate *TECHNIQUE(S)* or method(s) to implement the strategy.
5. Evaluate the *FEASIBILITY* of the strategies and methods in view of the environmental conditions and the nature of the spill.
6. Prepare an action or response *PLAN*.
7. Obtain appropriate *APPROVALS, PERMISSION, or PERMITS*.
8. Implement the field *RESPONSE OPERATION*.

The decision process for Shoreline Response is described in detail in Sections 4 and 6. Examples of activities within each decision step for Shoreline Protection and Treatment/Cleanup are provided in those sections, respectively.

Minimum Regret

- ❖ NOAA uses this concept in trajectory modeling to place confidence limits around their spill path estimates (e.g., most likely affected area — potentially affected area).
 - ❖ Also applies to any goals and objectives set by management.
 - ❖ Focus on realistic objectives, both at regional and site-specific scales.
 - ❖ Avoid promising things that are unlikely to be achieved or cannot be accomplished (i.e., containment and recovery of submerged oil; or, recovering at sea all of the oil that has been spilled).
 - ❖ A “minimum regret strategy” is one that reduces the possibility of:
 - a) having to say “sorry”, or
 - b) explaining why a goal was not achieved.
- See Galt 1995 and Lehr *et al.*, 1995.

NOAA MASS Trajectory Analysis

Printed by: Christopherson, Sharon
 Title: Portland.Traj 9/29-1830

Wednesday, March 5, 1997 9:02:45 AM
 Page 1 of 2



T/U Julie H Trajectory MASS Trajectory Analysis

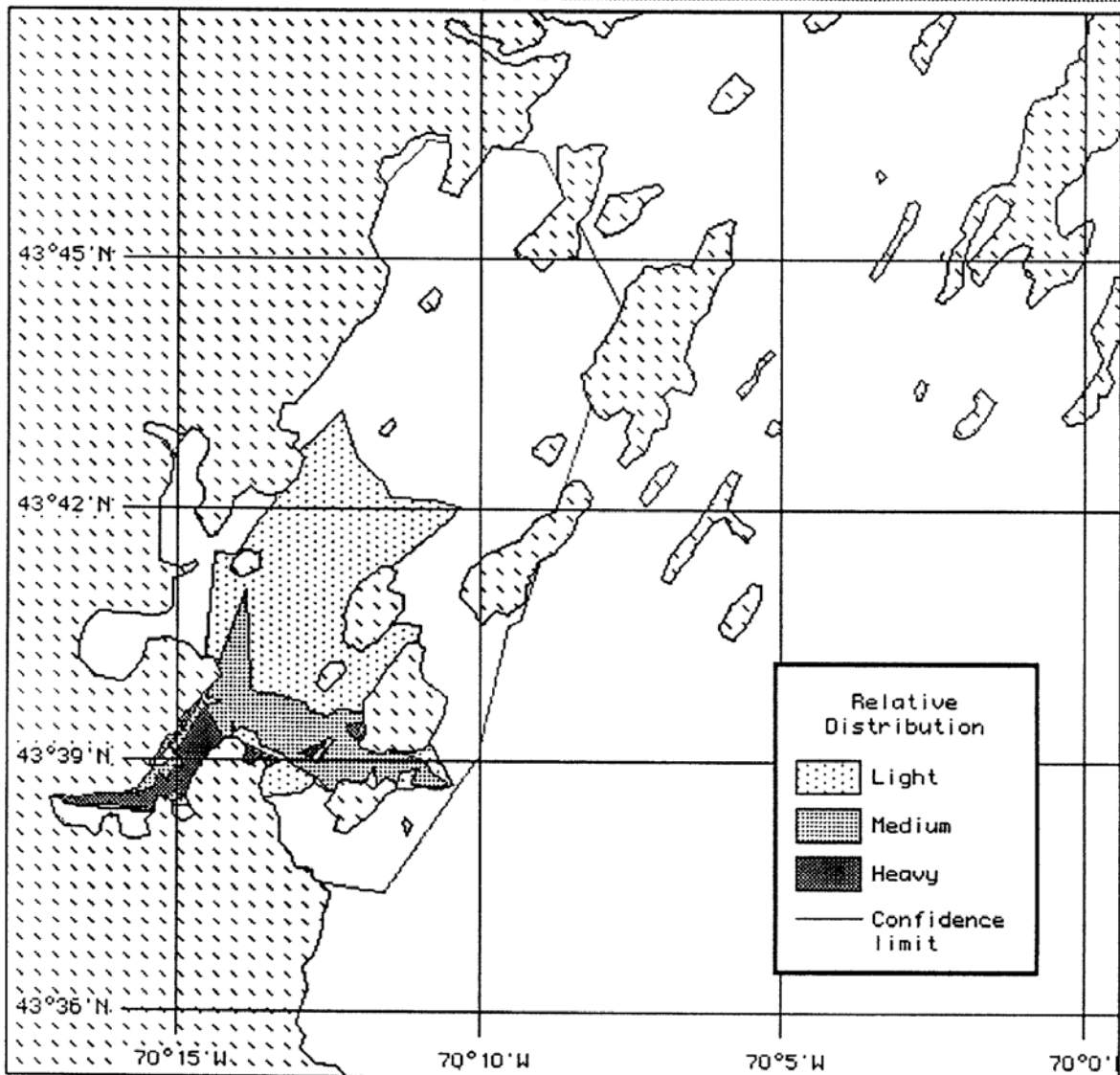
Estimate for: 1830, 9/29/96

Prepared: 0911, 9/28/96

NOAA/HAZMAT/MASS (206) 526-6317



These estimates are based on the latest available information. Please refer to the trajectory analysis briefing and your Scientific Support Coordinator (SSC) for more complete information. This output shows estimated distributions of heavy, light, and medium concentrations as well as an outer confidence line. The confidence line is based on potential errors in the pollutant transport processes.



3.1.1. Major Players in the Decision Process

❖ The Responsible Party (RP)

- /// Usually a private sector organization
- /// Can be represented by lawyers or (for marine spills) ITOFF
- /// Have a moral and legal responsibility
- /// Typically focus on **practicality** and **cost effectiveness**

❖ The Regulators (“Trustees”)

- /// Federal and state agencies
- /// Set the environmental standards for treatment or cleanup
- /// Often quite practical and realistic and often take NEBA philosophy
- /// Sometimes have conflicts of interest between responsible agencies
- /// Typically an objective or scientific approach to treatment standards

❖ Local Governments and Residents

- /// Represent the people who live in the affected area
- /// May have zero tolerance treatment standards
- /// Consider socioeconomic damages as well as amenity and aesthetic values
- /// Often very subjective standards

❖ The Public

- /// Politicians, the Media, NGO’s
- /// Not local people or organizations
- /// Not part of the “team” and typically take a critical attitude rather than a supporting position
- /// Usually take an emotional attitude
- /// Often very non-technical standards

3.2. Sensitivity Analysis

The decision process requires input on:

- a) where the oil will go, and

- b) what is in the spill path, plus
- c) an estimate of the effects of the oil on resources/activities at risk at the time of the spill (vulnerability) is required.
- ❖ "SENSITIVITY" is the response or reaction of a resource to the presence of oil.
- ❖ "VULNERABILITY" refers to the probability that a resource will be affected by an oil spill.

Shoreline Sensitivity

- One step in developing a response strategy (planning)
- Indices and maps generally simplistic and localized
- Often little consistency between sensitivity mapping systems
- Sensitive habitats may not be "Vulnerable" to oil (e.g., coral reefs, sea grass beds)

Perception is Reality!

- ❖ How an individual or group perceives a situation is their "reality".
- ❖ The general public uses emotional and media input in developing a perception of an oil spill and of its impact.
- ❖ Spill management must use technical support (science and technology) to develop accurate internal and external perceptions; those perceptions likely will be used to evaluate the "success" of the response operation.

Seasonality

Timing or seasonality is an important aspect of sensitivity and can affect the planning of cleanup operations.

- ❖ Timing of ecological/resource activities can —
 - /// cause an area to be assessed or treated before other areas (i.e., have a higher response priority), or
 - /// preclude operations in an area during a sensitive time period.

Environmental and Cultural Sensitive Resource Usage Periods — Prince William Sound and Gulf of Alaska

(Owens, 1994)

Sensitive Resource	April	May	June	July	August	Sept.
SALMON						
— Stream — Out migration	■	■				
— Stream — Spawning				■	■	■
— Fry Rearing Areas		■	■	■	■	
— Hatchery Releases	■	■	■			
— Commercial Fishing			■	■	■	■
HERRING						
— Spawning and Fishing	■	■				
PINNIPEDS						
— Pupping	■	■				
— Molting					■	■
BIRDS						
— Seabird Colonies		■	■	■	■	
— Bald Eagle Nests	■	■	■			
— Waterfowl/Shorebird Concentrations	■	■				
RECREATION						
— Campsites, Anchorages, Cabins, etc.			■	■	■	■
MARICULTURE						
— Oyster Farms	■	■	■	■	■	■
SUBSISTENCE AREAS	■	■	■	■	■	■
ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITES	■	■	■	■	■	■

Shaded area = times when intrusion should be limited or not occur

Summary of Shoreline Sensitivities

(adapted from Owens, Cramer, and Howes, 1992)

Shoreline Type/ Sensitive Feature	Relative Sensitivity by Oil Class*				Comments
	Light, Volatile Oils	Low Viscosity Oils	Medium Viscosity Oils	Very Viscous or Semi-solid	
SHORE TYPE					
Exposed Bedrock	High	Moderate	Low	Low	Probability of persistence low; high biological value.
Sheltered Bedrock	High	Moderate	Low	Low	Probability of persistence high; high biological value.
Bedrock Platform	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Probability of persistence low; high biological value.
Sand Beach	Moderate	Low	Low	Low	Low permeability except for light oils: low biological value.
Pebble/Cobble Beach	Low	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Probability of persistence generally high but varies depending upon oil class; low biological value, except in lower tidal zone (which usually has little oil deposition).
Mixed Sediment Beach	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Low	Low permeability except for light oils: low to moderate biological value.
Boulder/Cobble Beach	Moderate	High	High	Moderate	Probability of persistence high; low to moderate biological value.
Sand Flat	High	Moderate	Low	Low	Typically fine-grained sand tidal flats with migrating sand waves: exposed to winds, waves, and currents; probability of persistence generally low but varies depending upon oil class; moderate biological value.
Mud Flat	High	High	High	Moderate	Probability of persistence high; high biological value.
Marsh	High	High	High	Moderate	Probability of persistence high; high biological value.

Summary of Shoreline Sensitivities (continued)

Shoreline Type/ Sensitive Feature	Relative Sensitivity by Oil Class*				Comments
	Light, Volatile Oils	Low Viscosity Oils	Medium Viscosity Oils	Very Viscous or Semi-solid	
ECOLOGICAL FEATURE					
Mariculture Site	High	High	High	Moderate	Typically consist of clam-, oyster-, abalone-, and fish-rearing areas; sensitive all year long.
Anadromous Fish Stream	High	High	Moderate	Low	Typically sensitive during fry outmigration and spawning periods.
Pinniped/Mustelid Area	High	High	High	Low	Sea otters are particularly sensitive year-round, whereas others are less sensitive except during pupping and molting.
Spawning Ground	High	High	Moderate	Low	Sensitive during spawning periods.
Bird Rookeries or Colony	High	High	High	Low	If birds are migratory, the areas could be sensitive primarily during periods of occupation. If not, then the area would be sensitive year-round.
Wetland	High	High	High	Moderate	Sensitive year-round and especially during periods of migratory bird use.
Rare and Endangered Species	High	High	High	Moderate	Eagles, otters, whales, and other species: habitats are typically sensitive all year.
CULTURAL FEATURE					
Archaeological Site	Moderate	High	High	Moderate	Primarily sensitive to disruption or destruction by cleanup activities.
Historical Site	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	Primarily sensitive to disruption or destruction by cleanup activities.
Subsistence Use Area	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Mainly sensitive only during periods of use, although food source may be affected for a longer time period.
HUMAN USE FEATURE					
Commercial Fishing Area	High	High	High	Moderate	Typically sensitive only during times of use; losses due to closure can be significant.
Sport Fishing Area	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Typically sensitive only during times of use; very localized effect usually.
Boat Harbor/ Marina	Moderate	High	High	Low	Sensitive all year.
Recreation Area	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Greatest sensitivity during periods of high use.
Residential Area	High	High	Moderate	Low	Sensitive all year, especially for the lighter, aromatic oils.
Commercial Waterfront	High	High	Moderate	Low	Sensitive all year, especially for the lighter, aromatic oils.

3.3. Response Priorities

Inputs to Decision(s) for Priorities

- Resources / activities at risk or oiled
- Access to affected areas / sites
- Availability of equipment / manpower
- Assessment of likely treatment effectiveness

Decision Trade-offs

A very vulnerable resource/activity may be at risk,

BUT...

If response operations are unlikely to be successful at protecting that resource/ activity,

THEN...

Consider deployment of resources to protect another (lower priority) resource/ activity where success IS likely.

Response/Priority Decision Constraints

- Availability of suitable resources
- Accessibility and trafficability
- Weather-marine conditions
- Timing of ecological / resource activities *

* these may control windows of opportunity

Response Priority Matrix

		RESPONSE EFFECTIVENESS		
		Good	Average	Poor
RESOURCE / ACTIVITY VALUE	Very High	1	4	7
	High	2	5	9
	Moderate	3	6	11
	Low	8	10	14
	Very Low	12	13	15

Response/Priority Planning

Levels of Concern for Regional Strategic Response Planning

- **Absolute Concern:**
threat to human health and/or safety.
- **Primary Concern:**
countermeasure response necessary for all types of spills at any time of the year.
- **Primary Concern (seasonal):**
countermeasure response necessary at certain times of the year only.
- **Secondary Concern:**
countermeasure response likely to be necessary at certain times of the year.
- **Tertiary Concern:**
no known potentially serious biological or human activity disruptions:
 - countermeasure response probably not required.

3.4. *Feasibility and Net Environmental Benefit*

- ❖ Feasibility includes an evaluation of (1) the safety factors and (2) the practicality of achieving the objectives.
- ❖ Part of this *DECISION PROCESS* is to consider the proposed action(s) in terms of (3) the effects these activities will have on the area to be cleaned or treated.
- ❖ Any response action will have an effect either directly, by the protection or treatment actions themselves, or indirectly, by the associated support activities, on the shore zone or the adjacent backshore.
- ❖ The aim of a response is to mitigate the impact of the spilled oil and to accelerate natural recovery.

Recovery:

- ❖ The ecosystem is never static.
- ❖ After a damaging event, recovery has occurred when —
 - < approx. the same types of species —
 - < in the same relative numbers —
 - < use the habitat in a similar manner —
 - < when compared to the pre-spill conditions.
- ❖ Unlikely to return to the exact pre-spill status.

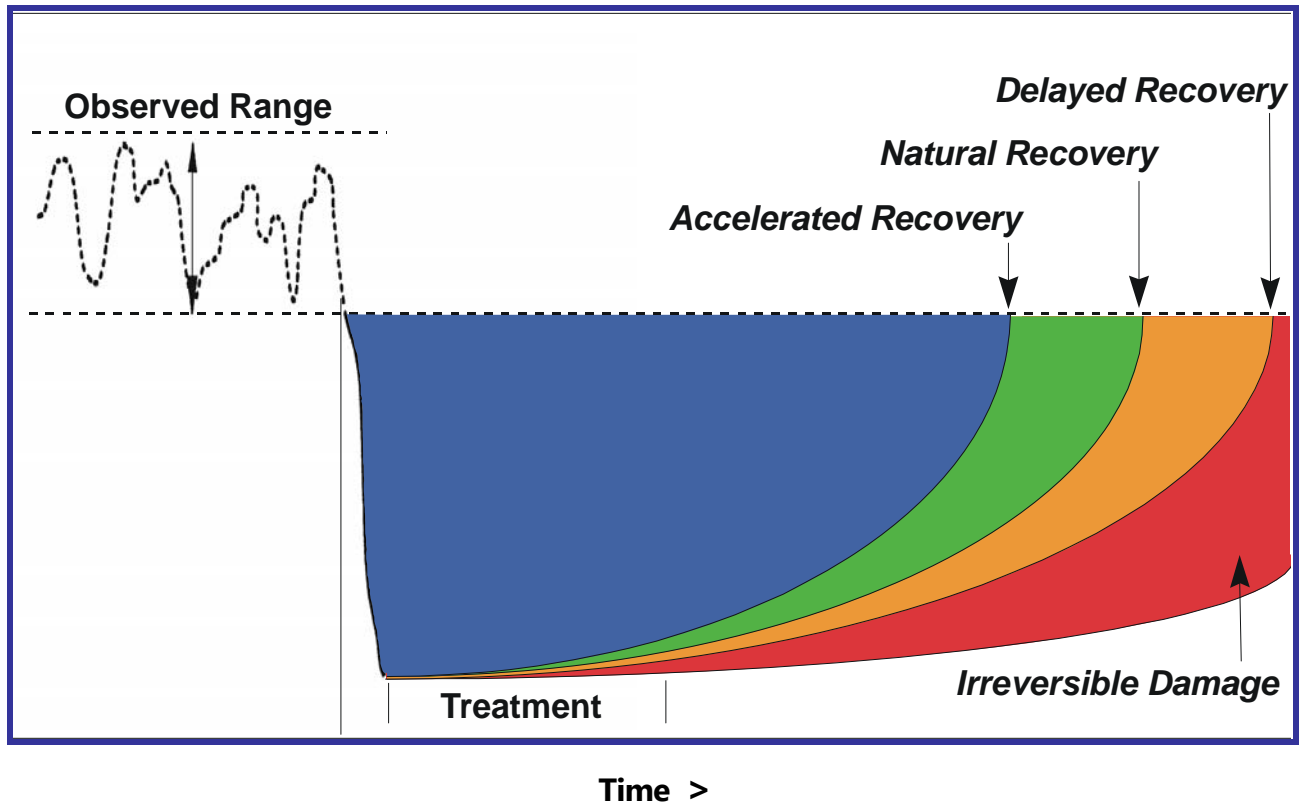
A study (Sell *et al.*, 1995) found that, in most cases, on *ROCKY SHORES* and *SALT MARSHES*, cleanup did not promote ecological recovery — the exception being with large amounts of viscous oil.

- ❖ If the proposed actions likely would delay, rather than accelerate, that rate of recovery at a location, then the objective would not be met and alternate objectives and strategies would be considered (Baker, 1995, 1997).

The concept is called ***NET ENVIRONMENTAL BENEFIT (N.E.B.)*** and was first used to evaluate a rock-washing proposal in 1990 after the *Exxon Valdez* spill in Alaska.

Net Environmental Benefit and Recovery

Net Environmental Benefit attempts to forecast accelerated, delayed, or irreversible damage.



Recovery

- **Accelerated Recovery**
conditions return to the same range in a shorter time span as a result of treatment
- **Delayed Recovery**
conditions take longer to return to the same range as a result of treatment
- **Irreversible Damage**
conditions will not return to the same range due to treatment or cleanup actions

Net Environmental Benefit and Recovery

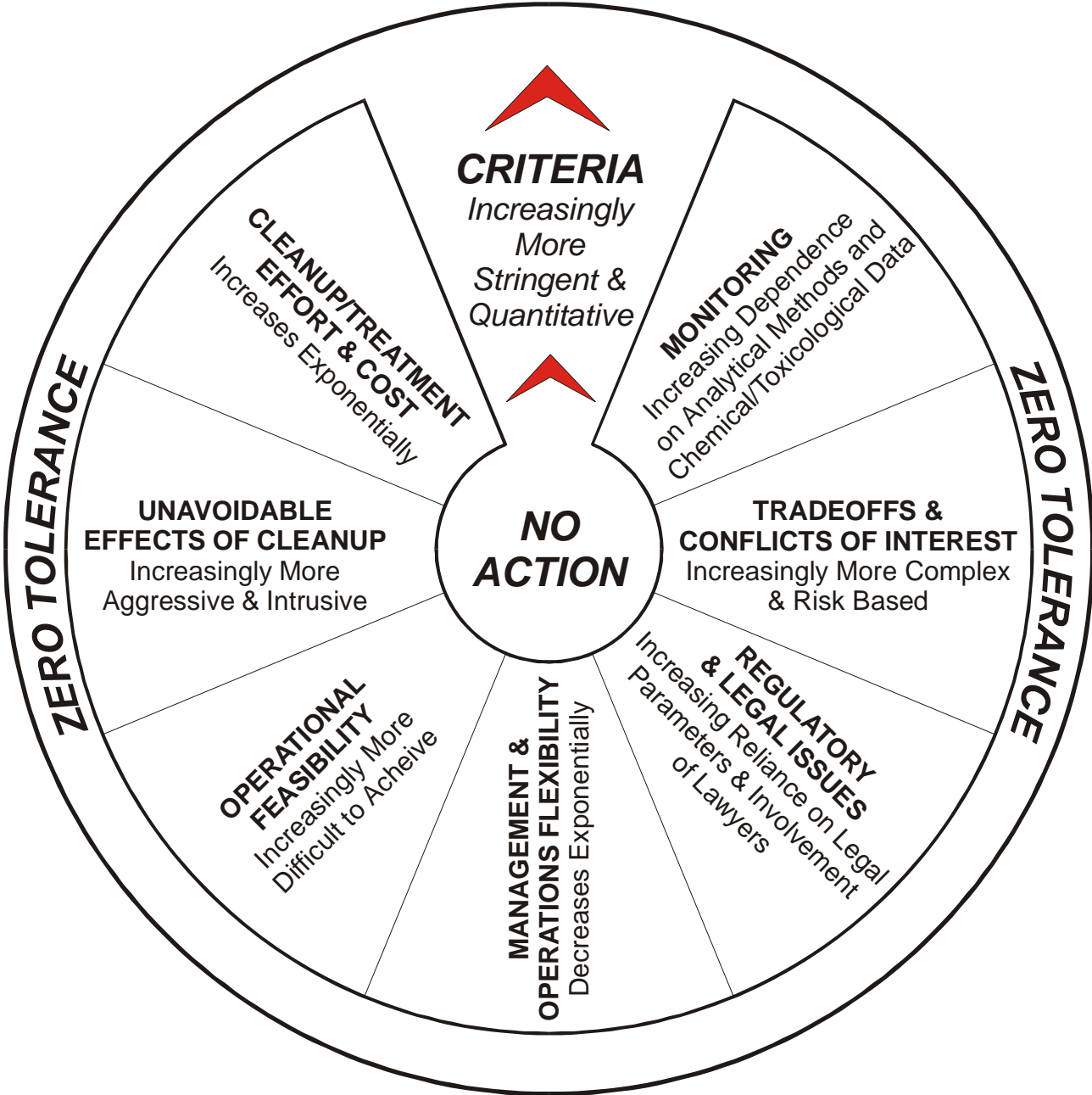
- ❖ The concept of net benefit also can be taken farther:
 - < a level of treatment may accelerate recovery up to a point — beyond that point, further actions or attempts to remove more oil may begin to delay recovery.

Recovery “Rules of Thumb”

- As treatment level of effort increases:
 - oil removal efficiency DECREASES
 - damage to biota INCREASES
- i.e., the more energy it takes to remove the oil, the greater the degree of environmental intrusion
- Both diminishing economic and environmental returns

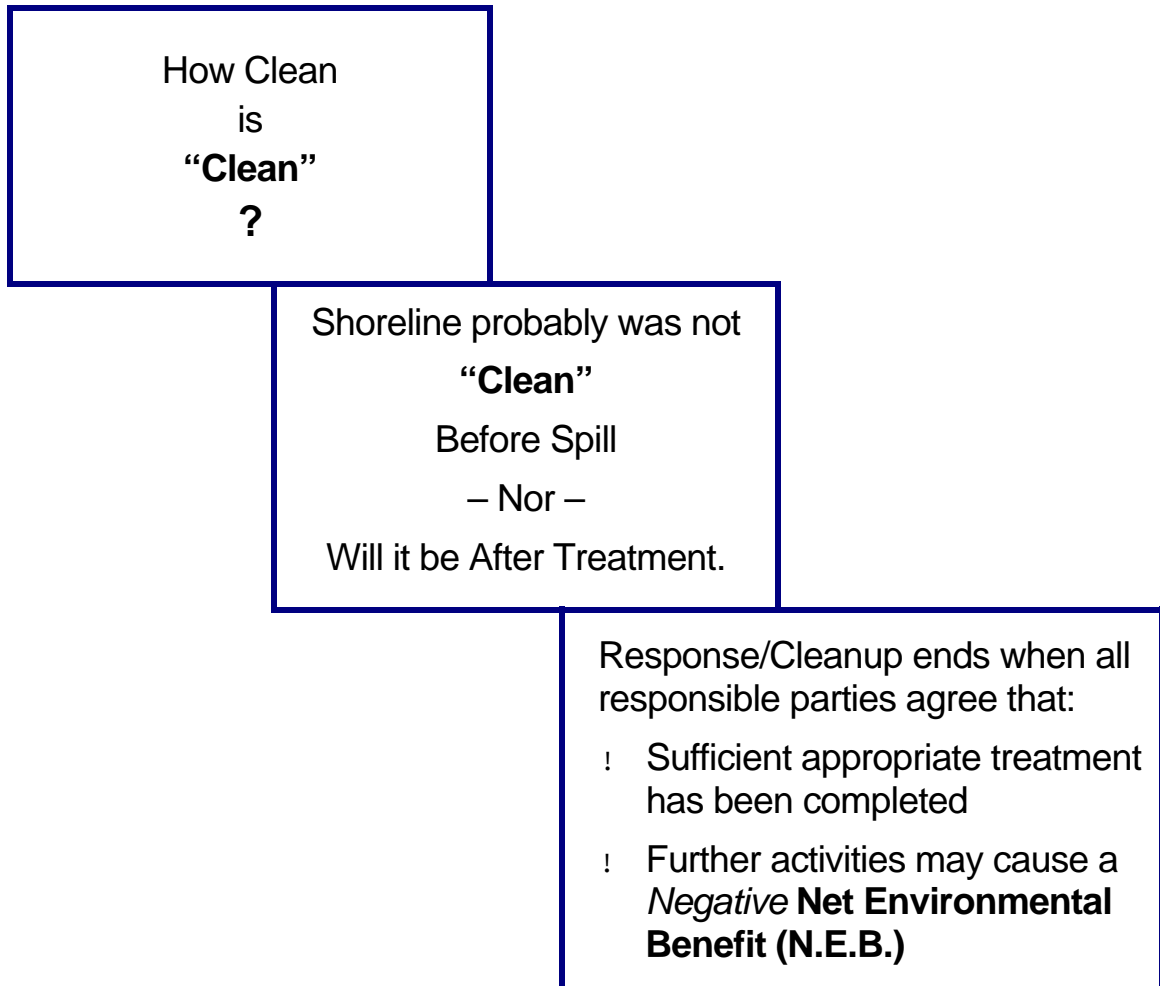
- Knowing at what point a positive benefit turns to a negative one is a key aspect of the feasibility evaluation.

Cleanup Standards Summary



3.5. When is Cleanup Completed ?

“**Clean**” is not a physical description, but an economic, legal, ethical *and* physical description.



For a discussion of treatment criteria and standards, see:

Michel, J., and Benggio, B., 1999. Guidelines for selecting appropriate cleanup endpoints at oil spills. *Proc. 1999 Oil Spill Conference*, Seattle, WA.

— and —

Owens, E.H., and Sergy, G.A., 2003. Treatment Criteria and End-Point Standards for Oiled Shorelines and Riverbanks. Environment Canada Technical Report EE-171, Ottawa Ontario. 45 pp. and 2008 IOSC Proceedings.

3.5.1. METHODS for Assessing Completion of Shoreline Treatment or Cleanup

- **Qualitative Field Observation**
- **Quantitative Field Measurements**
- **Analytical Measurements**
- **Interpretive Assessments**

1) Qualitative Field Observation — Methods

- Describes oil presence, character or behavior on the shoreline
- Visual observations
- Ground-level camera / videotape images
- Aerial observations, photography or videotape images

1) Qualitative Field Observation — Examples

- Presence of oil (tar balls, tar patties)
- Presence of oiled debris or vegetation stranded on a shore that could affect wildlife
- Presence of oiled sand that produces rainbow sheen
- Presence of mobile or liquid oil
- Presence of oil that could be remobilized
- Presence of recoverable floating oil

2) Quantitative Field Measurements — Methods

- Based on visual observations and measurements on the quantity of oil, e.g. %, distribution, size, thickness
- Mapping or surveying with standard terminology to obtain a systematic database (SCAT)

2) Quantitative Field Measurements — Examples

- Presence of 100% surface oil patches >3-mm thick, and 50x50 cm across
- Presence of >20% surface oil cover >10-m long, >1-m wide, and >3-mm thick
- Presence of liquid oil patches >1-m diameter that could be remobilized
- Presence of 30% coat
- Presence of 5% stain
- Presence of 30% of vegetation stems with weathered oil or stains
- Presence of 10% of vegetation stems with unweathered (fresh or sticky) oil

3) Analytical Measurements — Methods

- 1) Chemical
- 2) Toxicological
- 3) Organoleptic

3) Analytical Measurements — Chemical Examples

- Specific pre-defined concentration of individual constituents or compounds (e.g., 0.002 mg/l of benzene in water sample: 500 ppm hydrocarbons in a water or sediment sample: <100 ppm TPH at a 500-foot interval on a sand beach)
- US EPA and state primary maximum contaminant levels (pMCL) for BTEX

3) Analytical Measurements — Toxicological Examples

- 96-hour LC50, LL50 and TLM's for local fish species
- Chronic EC 20 value for BTEX, naphthalene and gasoline range hydrocarbons
- Acute to Chronic toxicity ratios for local fish species spawning habitat
- Acute to Chronic toxicity ratios for non-critical habitats
- US EPA limits for toxicity characteristic leaching procedure for benzene (TCLP-benzene) and metals

3) Analytical Measurements — Organoleptic Examples

- "Oil odor" in beach sediments
- Shellfish taint test

4) Interpretive Assessment — Methods

- Evaluation of the broader system – including environmental, social, economic and/or cultural factors
- Multi-factor synthesis using qualitative, quantitative and/or descriptive indicators

4) Interpretive Assessment — Examples

- Is the remaining oil likely to have an unacceptable ecological, aesthetic, recreational, or economic impact ?
- Will further oil removal cause environmental damage (NEB approach)?
- Are the costs of further cleanup or treatment excessive with respect to the threat or benefit ?

3.5.2. Example of "Sign-Off" Procedure

(from M/V Kure Spill, Humboldt Bay, CA, November, 1997)

Procedures for Completion of Unified Command Shoreline Treatment Operations

Shoreline Inspection

All oiled shorelines will be inspected using agreed upon cleanup guidelines. The Unified Command inspection team will be comprised of representatives of the Federal On-Scene Coordinator (FOSC), the California Dept. of Fish and Game, the appropriate landowner trustees, and the Responsible Party. The representatives assigned to the inspection team must have authority to either continue or discontinue shoreline treatment. Inspection team members should also be SCAT qualified and preferable have participated in SCAT for this incident. Continuity of team members is to be maintained to the extent possible in order to facilitate consistency and efficiency.

Inspection Phase I

Following notification by the Operations Chief that shoreline segments have been cleaned to the degree recommended by the Unified Command, the inspection team will evaluate segments to determine whether they satisfy agreed upon cleanup guidelines. The inspection team must reach consensus that no further cleanup is necessary.

Inspection Phase II

After a period of approximately six weeks (first week of January, 1998), the inspection team will re-inspect the shoreline to determine if there is agreement that the segments require no further treatment. If consensus is not reached, additional cleanup operations and a schedule for subsequent inspection will be specified.

Cleanup Re-initiation

If additional oil is discovered or if future conditions change such that further cleanup actions are necessary, cleanup operations will be re-initiated as recommended to the Responsible Party by the U.C. Coast Guard or California Dept. of Fish and Game.

Criteria for Completion of Shoreline Treatment

Shoreline Inspection Guidelines (Humboldt Bay Oil Spill, November 1997)

The shoreline inspection team will determine when each shoreline segment has been cleaned to a reasonable* degree, based on minimizing risk of impact to the environment and preventing human contact with the spilled oil. The following guidelines provide criteria for assessing shoreline status.

Water Surface

No recoverable floating oil should remain on the water surface.

Sand Beaches

The shoreline should be free of liquid oil. Tarballs, tar patties, oiled stranded eelgrass wrack, and oiled debris that could contaminate wildlife should be removed — to the extent removal using reasonable cleanup techniques is feasible. Oil stain on sand that does not produce rainbow sheen may be allowed to weather and degrade naturally.

Marshes

Marsh vegetation should be free of oil that could contact and contaminate wildlife. Oil that is not likely to affect wildlife may be allowed to weather and degrade naturally.

Riprap and Seawalls

Oil riprap and seawalls should be free of bulk oil except for oil stain (defined as a thin layer that cannot be scraped off using a fingernail), which may be allowed to weather and degrade naturally.

* *Reasonable*, for the purposes of these shoreline inspections, is defined as when further shoreline treatment would not yield a net environmental benefit.

3.6. Guidelines for the Selection of Treatment Standards and Cleanup Endpoints for Oiled Shorelines

These guidelines are intended to provide direction and assistance in the selection of treatment criteria and end-point standards for oiled shorelines and riverbanks (Owens and Sergy, 2003b). The guidelines provide an overview of some basic concepts, principles, rules of thumb, and examples that may be of assistance in the decision process.

Purpose of End-Point Standards

Primary Reasons

1. Assist the spill management team in the selection of the treatment objectives and treatment techniques for a specified area before the response operation begins;
2. Provide operations with a clear objective or target so that they can tailor their activities towards a known point of completion; and
3. Provide an inspection team with treatment criteria and standards upon which to evaluate the results of the treatment activities and to reach closure.

Secondary Reasons or Benefits

1. Facilitate a recognition and assessment of all of the various environmental, social, and economic factors that are important and that should be considered in the shoreline treatment or cleanup decision process and in the selection of response options that are appropriate and practical.
2. Facilitate recognition of concerns within, and attempt to create a consensus between, various responsible parties and stakeholders.

The Basic Decision Process

The process begins before the shoreline or riverbank treatment operation plans are developed, as the level of operational effort cannot be calculated without knowledge of the completion standard(s).

- STEP 1.** Divide the impacted shoreline or river into segments^a based on information on the physical and ecological character of the area and on the oiling conditions.
- STEP 2.** Define the issues and objectives that will drive the selection of treatment criteria and treatment end-point standards for each segment.
- STEP 3.** Select the treatment standards for each segment.
- STEP 4.** Ensure that Operations understand the issue(s), the treatment objectives, and the end point standard for each segment.
- STEP 5.** Ensure that Operations agree that the criteria or standard are appropriate and practical and that they can be achieved
- STEP 6.** Consider that more than one set of standards or end points may be appropriate within one segment based on the use of a number of sequential treatment actions or methods.
- STEP 7.** Consider a phased completion approach with a first inspection and a later revisit to ensure that the required or expected conditions are achieved and/or maintained.

End-Point Guidelines

- ❖ Assume that different criteria and standards will apply to different segments.
- ❖ There may be more than one set of treatment criteria and standards within one shoreline segment, or during different response phases for a segment.
- ❖ Individual standards and endpoints, even the same ones, can be applied to different environmental components, e.g., to water, vegetation, sediments, surface and subsurface, intertidal and subtidal.
- ❖ There is no uniform or standard approach that can be applied universally. Treatment criteria or standards typically vary from one spill to another, depending on the unique features of the incident, and typically also vary within a single response operation as impacts and risks often are not uniform within the affected area.
- ❖ One end point or standard may be the trigger for further treatment in one segment and the standard for completion in another.
- ❖ Even with a clearly defined standard, a judgment call may be required from the spill management team.

^a Segment: A distinct alongshore section of shoreline or river that can be used as operational unit. Segments are relatively homogeneous in terms of physical features and sediment type and are bounded by prominent geological or operational features, or by changes in shoreline type, substrate type, or oiling condition. See Owens and Sergy (2000a) for more information.

Part 4 Resource Protection

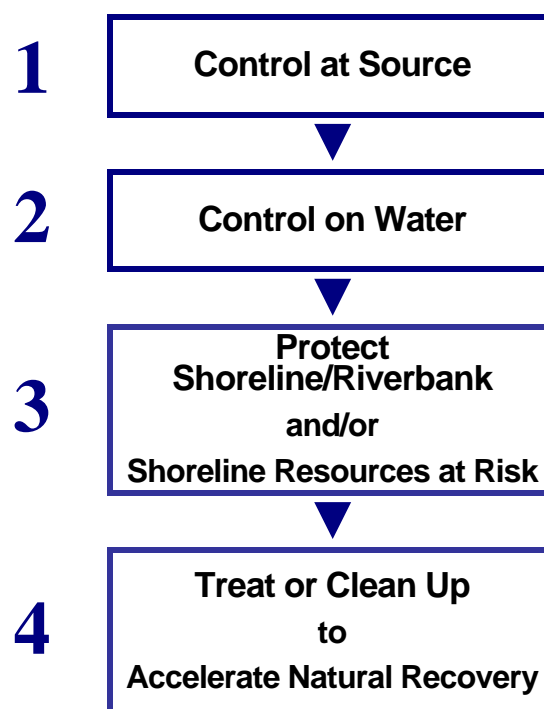
Table of Contents

4.1. Introduction _____	4-3
4.2. Protection Decision Process _____	4-4
4.3. Protection Options _____	4-8
4.4. Protection Expectations _____	4-24
4.5. On-Water Response Guidelines _____	4-26
4.6. Submerged or Sunken Oil _____	4-30

Part 4 Resource Protection

4.1. Introduction

Protection or Treatment operations are the fallback positions during a spill response after source control and/or control on water.

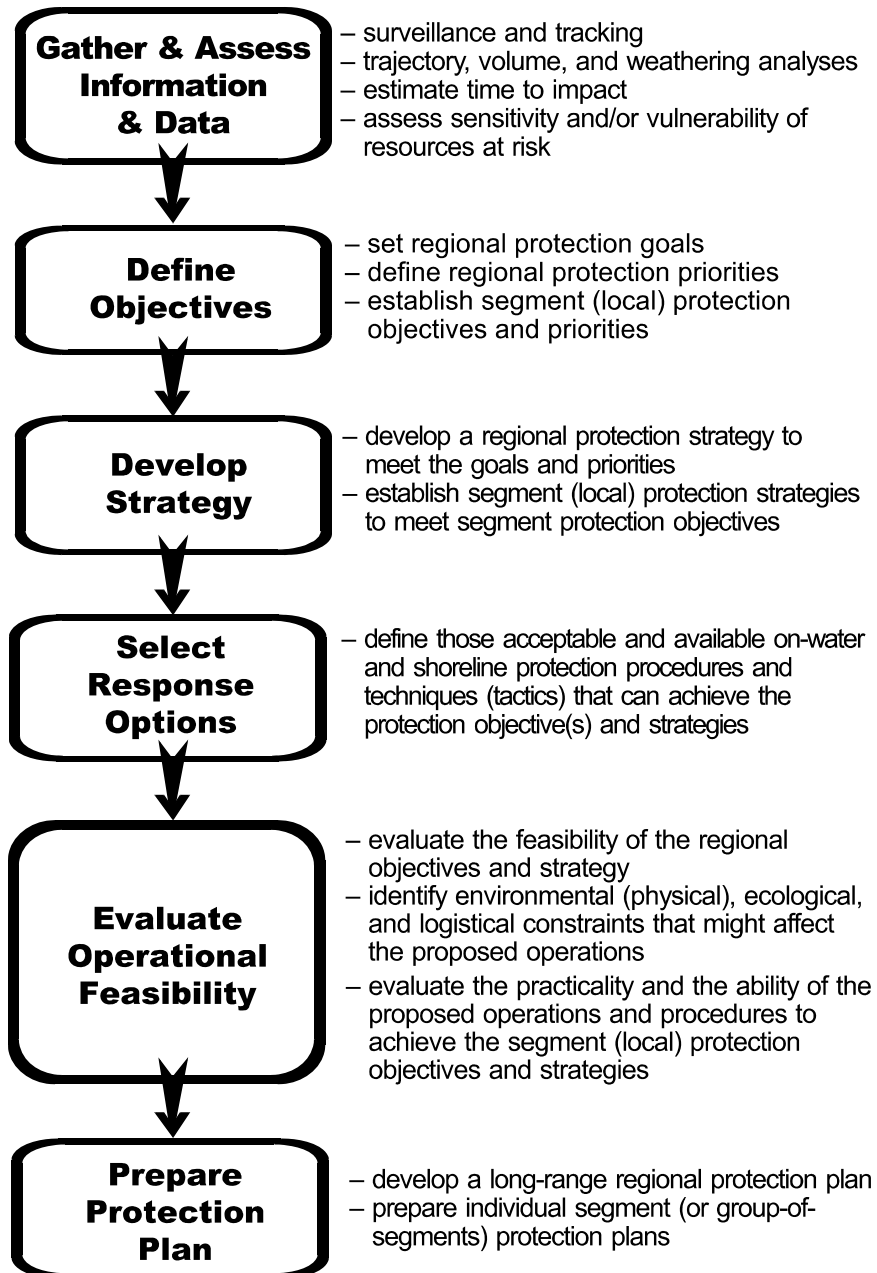


(Owens, 1996)

- ❖ The *OBJECTIVE* of a *spill response* is to **minimize further impacts to the environment and public health.**
- ❖ The *OBJECTIVES* of *on-water containment and recovery* (either control at source or control on water) are to **minimize the spreading of the oil and to minimize the affected area.**
- ❖ The *OBJECTIVE* of *protection actions* is to **prevent or minimize the contact between the oil and a resource or resources at risk in the spill path.**
- ❖ The *OBJECTIVE* of *shoreline treatment* is to **accelerate the recovery of oiled shorelines and riverbanks.**

4.2. Protection Decision Process

Management by objectives is achieved by a decision process that follows a sequence of steps (from Owens, 1996):



Objectives

Protection is defined as those response activities that take place at or near the shoreline or riverbank, rather than on open water.

The *OBJECTIVES* of response actions for the protection of a shoreline or riverbank can include:

- prevent contact between oil and the shore/riverbank or a resource at risk in the shore/riverbank,
- minimize the degree of contact between oil and the shore/riverbank or a resource at risk at the shore/riverbank,
- ? prevent the movement of oil alongshore, or downstream into adjacent shore-zone areas or adjacent resources at risk,
- ? contain stranded oil at the shoreline or riverbank,
- ? prevent the movement of oil downstream or into an inlet or channel
 - avoid causing more damage in responding to the spill than the oil would cause alone,
 - use available resources in a safe, efficient, and effective manner,
 - minimize the generation and handling of waste materials.

SELECT ONE OF THE FIRST TWO OBJECTIVES () to define the urgency or importance of a protection operation for the segment. Then identify which of the next three (?) also might apply to the segment.

- The last three objectives (•) are generic and apply to *all* response operations.

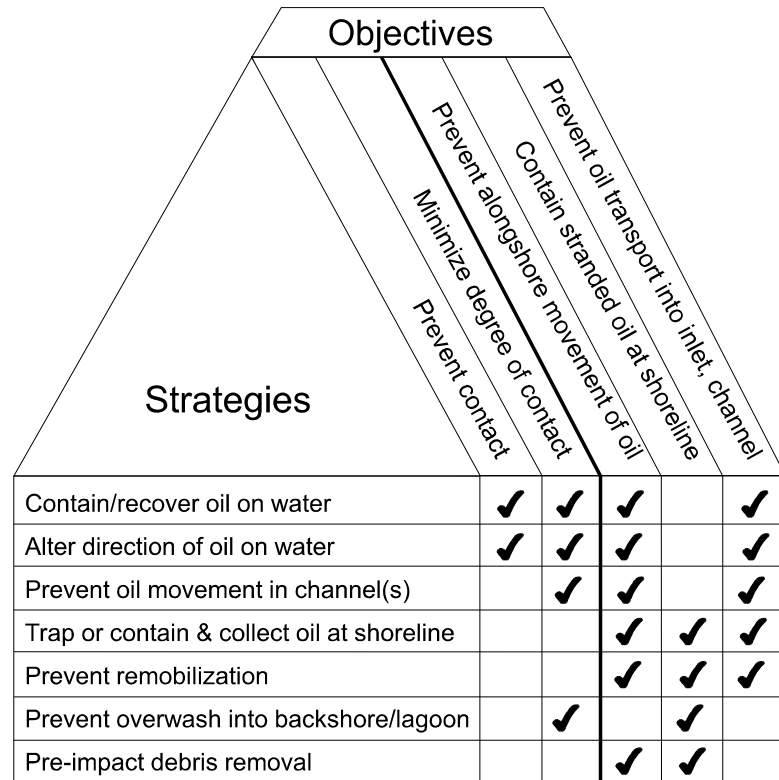
Strategies

The protection objectives can be achieved by the development of a number of specific *OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES*, which include:

- ❖ altering the direction of movement of the oil on the water,
- ❖ containing and recovering oil on the water prior to shoreline or sensitive area impact,
- ❖ preventing the movement of oil landward in a channel during a flooding tide,
- ❖ trapping or containing and collecting oil at the shoreline,
- ❖ preventing oil being washed over a beach into a lagoon or backshore area,
- ❖ preventing stranded oil from remobilizing to affect adjacent shoreline areas,
- ❖ removing shoreline debris before the oil is washed ashore.

Strategies for Rivers

- ❖ always thinking ahead — downstream!
- ❖ factoring time and distance to identify defensive positions (ahead of the oil),
- ❖ containing and recovering oil prior to sensitive area impact,
- ❖ altering the direction of movement of the oil on the water (diverting toward the opposite bank or towards the center of the river, etc.),
- ❖ diverting or deflecting oil into low-flow sections for entrapment and collection,
- ❖ considering rising or falling water level,
- ❖ preventing oil being washed over the riverbank (overbank flooding),
- ❖ preventing stranded oil from remobilizing to affect adjacent downstream areas,
- ❖ removing shoreline debris and vegetation before the oil reaches the area.



(Owens, 1996)

Feasibility

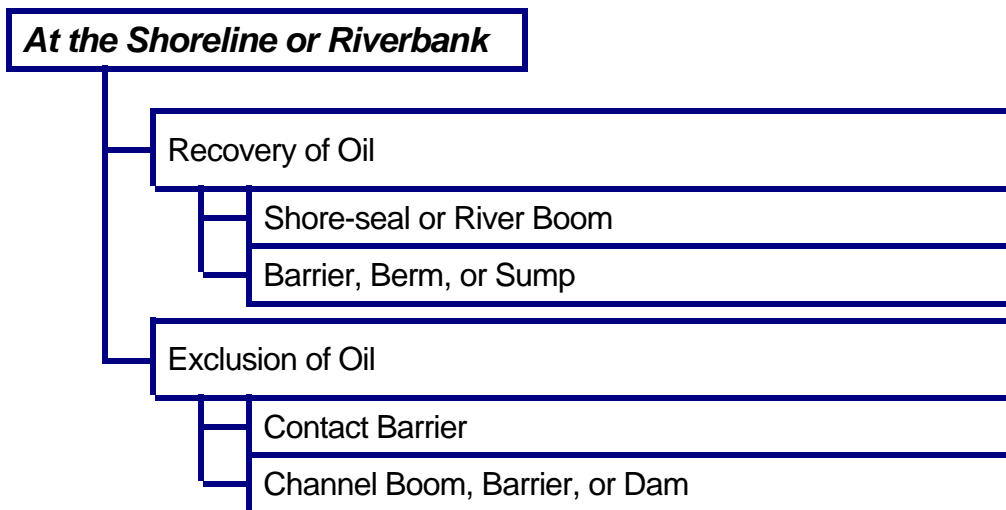
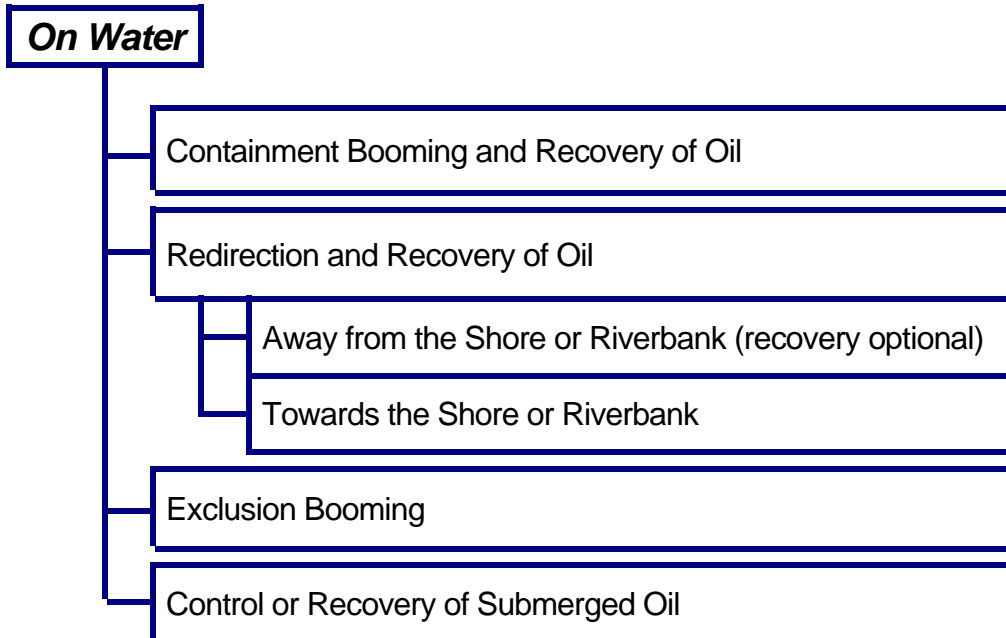
The *FEASIBILITY* of a selected shoreline protection strategy is considered in the context of environmental constraints, both physical and ecological, that may affect the likely success of a proposed activity.

Examples of constraints to be evaluated include:

- ❓ is access by water affected by rocks, debris, vegetation, man-made structures, etc.,
- ❓ is there direct backshore access to the shore/riverbank,
- ❓ what is the channel width (widths greater than 150 to 300 meters will generally preclude using booms to completely contain oil floating in the waterway, particularly if strong currents are present),
- ❓ is the shoreline exposed to storm or wave or high boat wake action,
- ❓ are strong currents (>0.5 m/s) usually present in the area,
- ❓ is winter ice likely to be a factor on the water or the shore.

4.3. Protection Options

The *PROTECTION METHODS* or response actions that can be used to implement these strategies include:



(Owens, 1995)

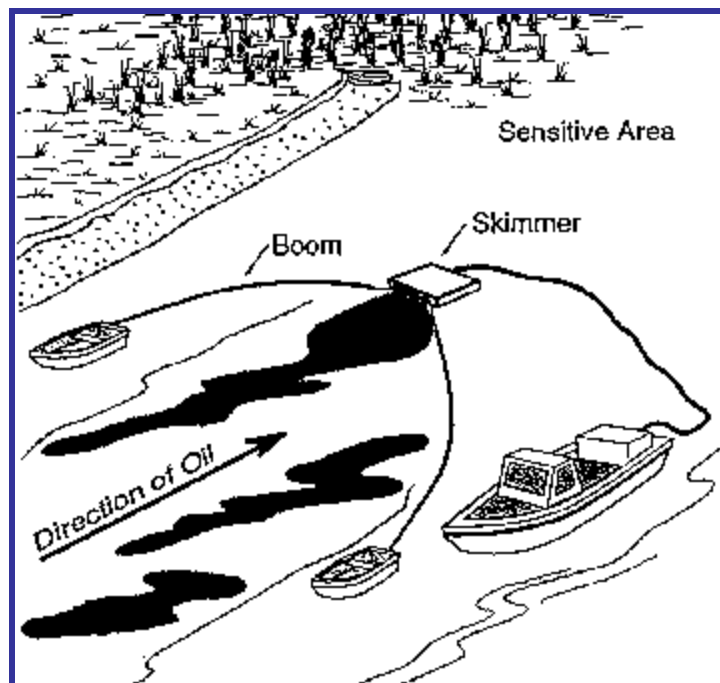
Protection usually involves a combination of two or more strategies and methods. Booms are rarely used singly, and two or multiple booms usually are necessary to contain, redirect, or exclude oil.

Strategies	Methods							
	On-Water				On Land			
	Nearshore redirection away from shore/recovery	Nearshore redirection towards shore/recovery	Nearshore boom containment/recovery	Exclusion shoreline boom or barrier/recovery	Shoreline barriers or berms/sumps & recovery	Contact barriers	Shoreline boom or barrier/recovery	Exclusion shoreline boom or barrier/recovery
Contain/recover oil on water	✓	✓		✓				
Alter direction of oil on water	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Prevent oil movement in channel(s)	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓
Trap or contain & collect oil at shoreline			✓		✓	✓		
Prevent remobilization						✓		
Prevent overwash into backshore/lagoon		✓			✓	✓		✓
Pre-impact debris removal			✓		✓	✓		✓

(Owens, 1996)

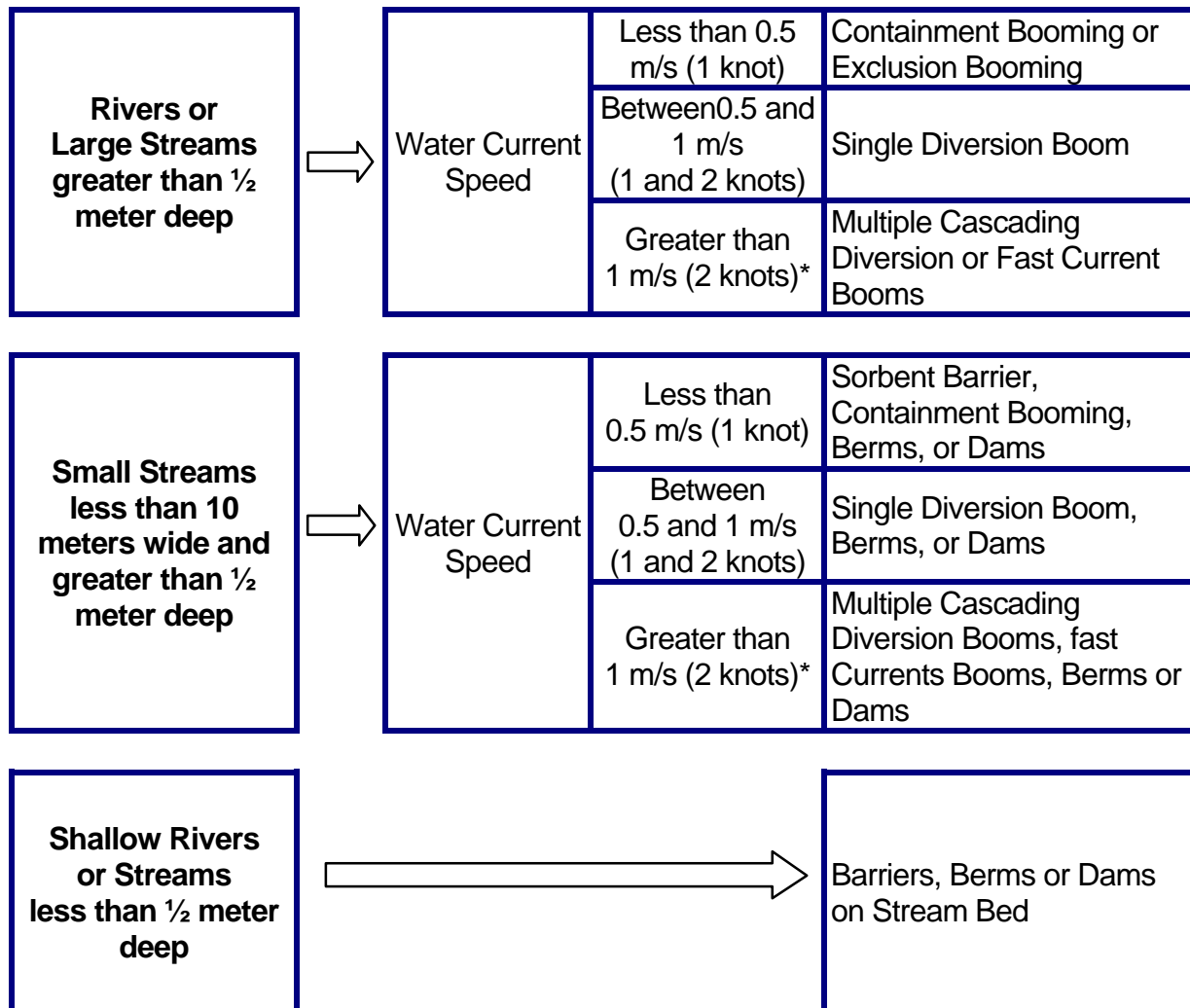
Nearshore (on-water) containment of oil.

(from Owens, 1995)



Decision Guide for Inland Water Containment Techniques

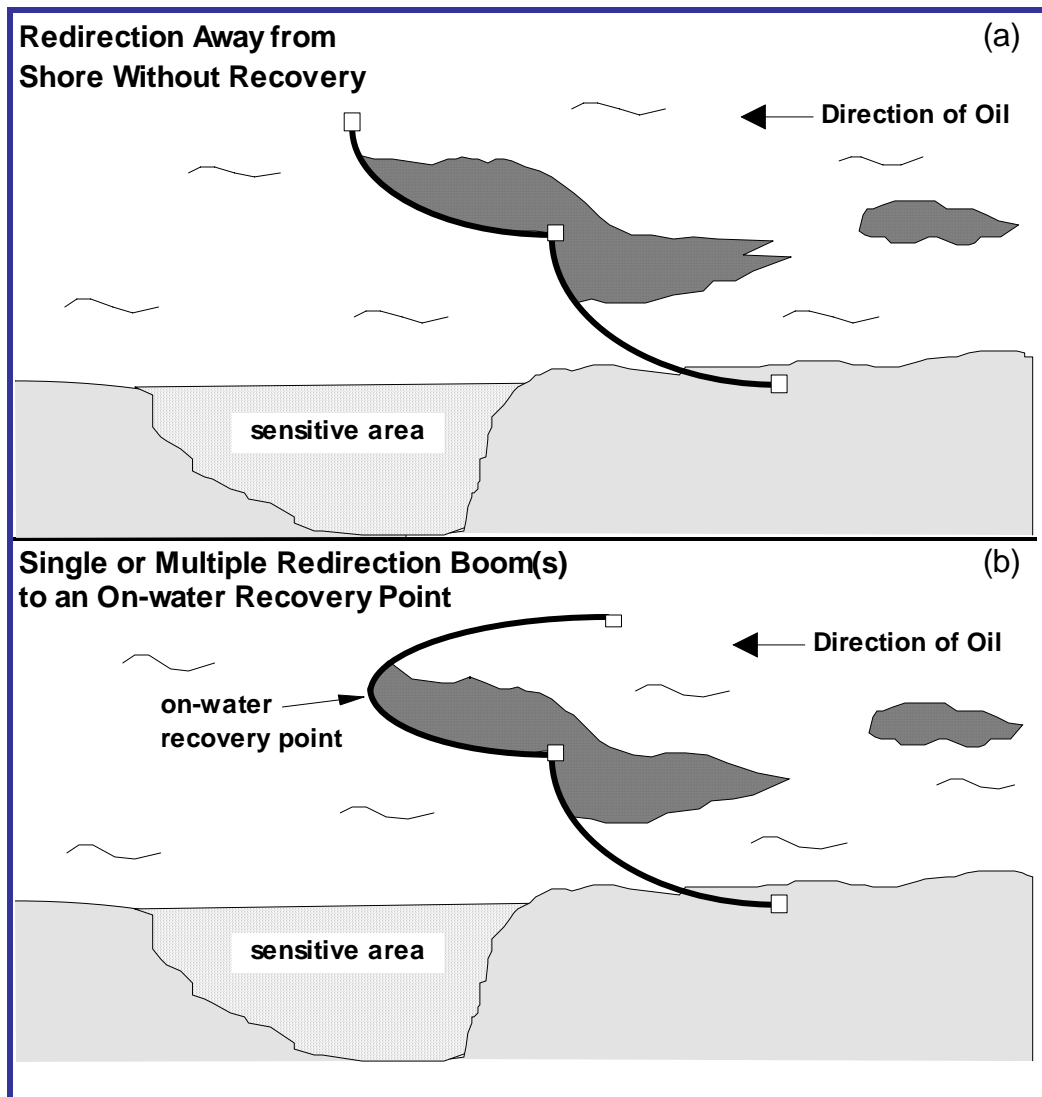
(modified from Exxon, 2002)



* If current speed exceeds 3 knots, booming should be attempted at an alternate location where currents are slower.

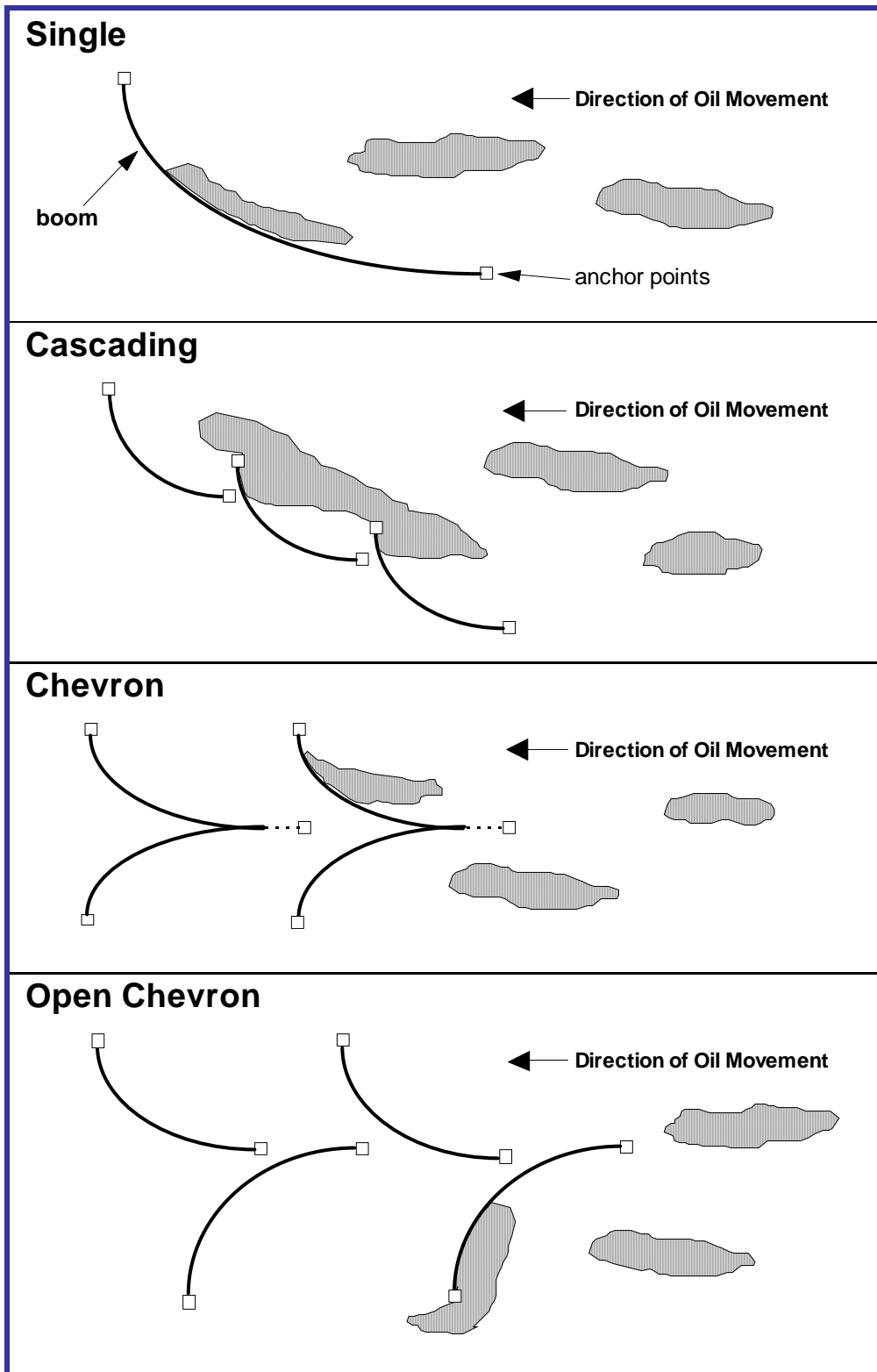
Redirection Booms

(from Owens, 1996)



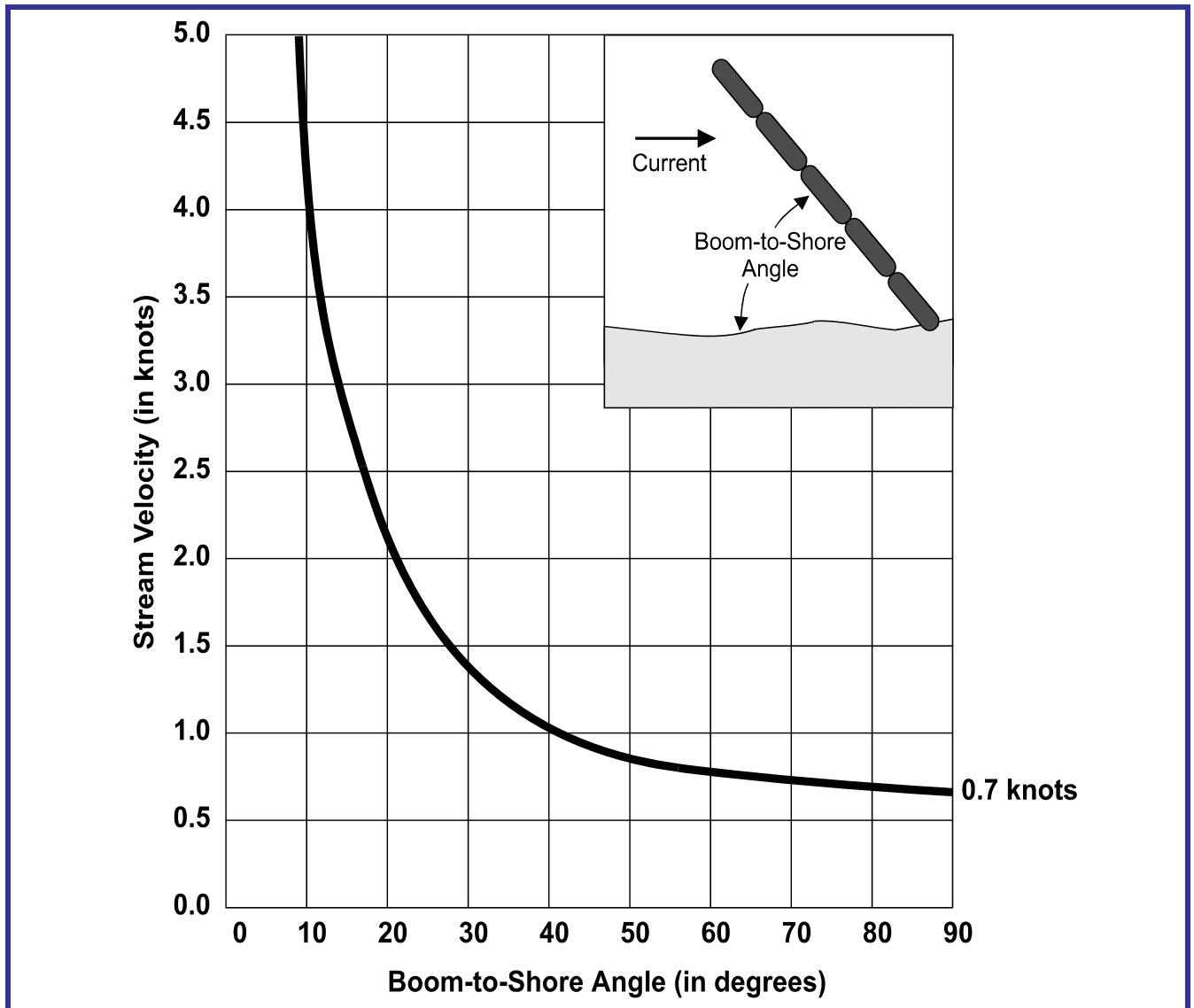
On-water redirection boom configurations.

(from Owens, 1996)

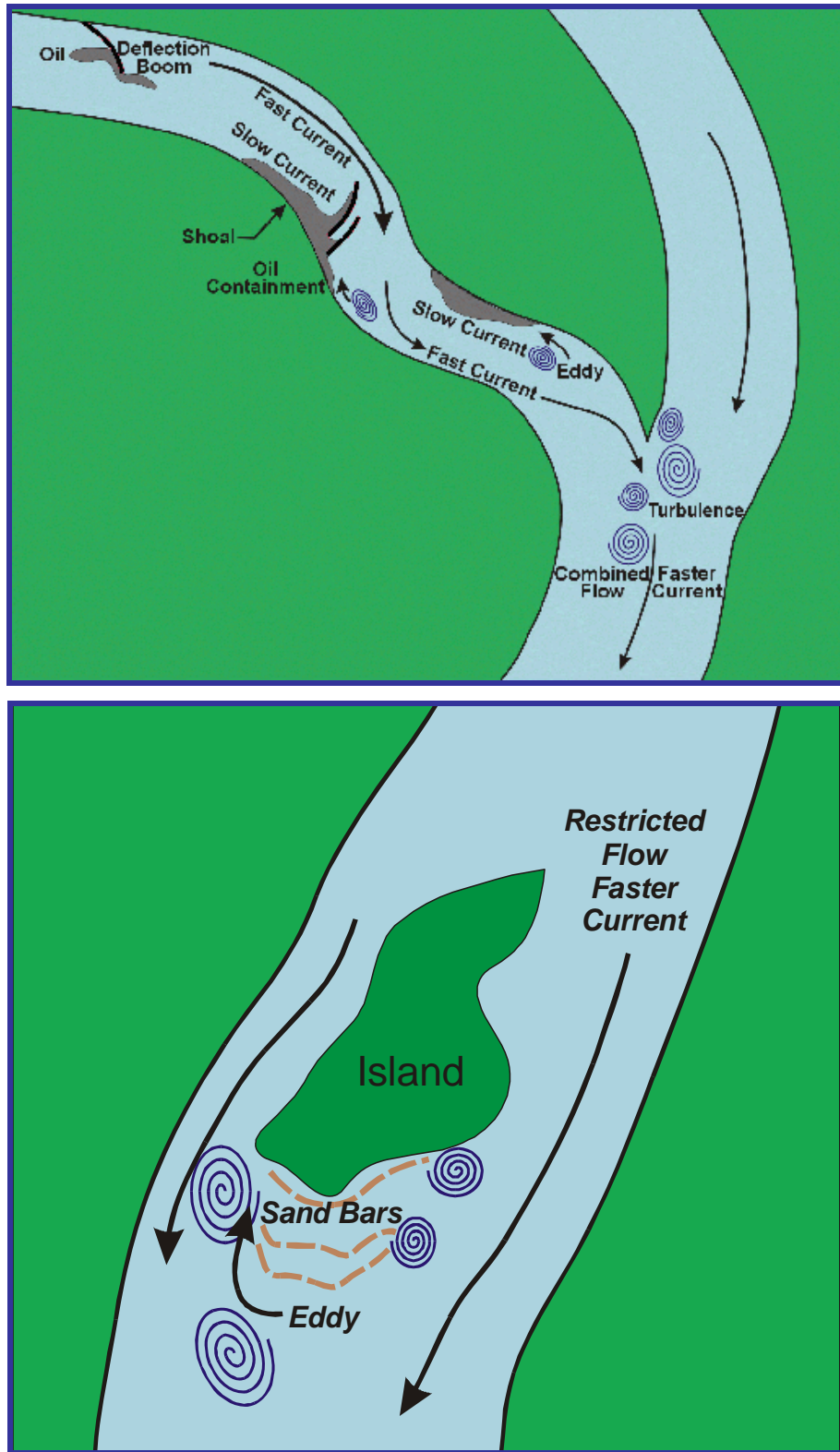


Shoreline boom deployment angles for on-water redirection booming.

(after CCG, 1995)

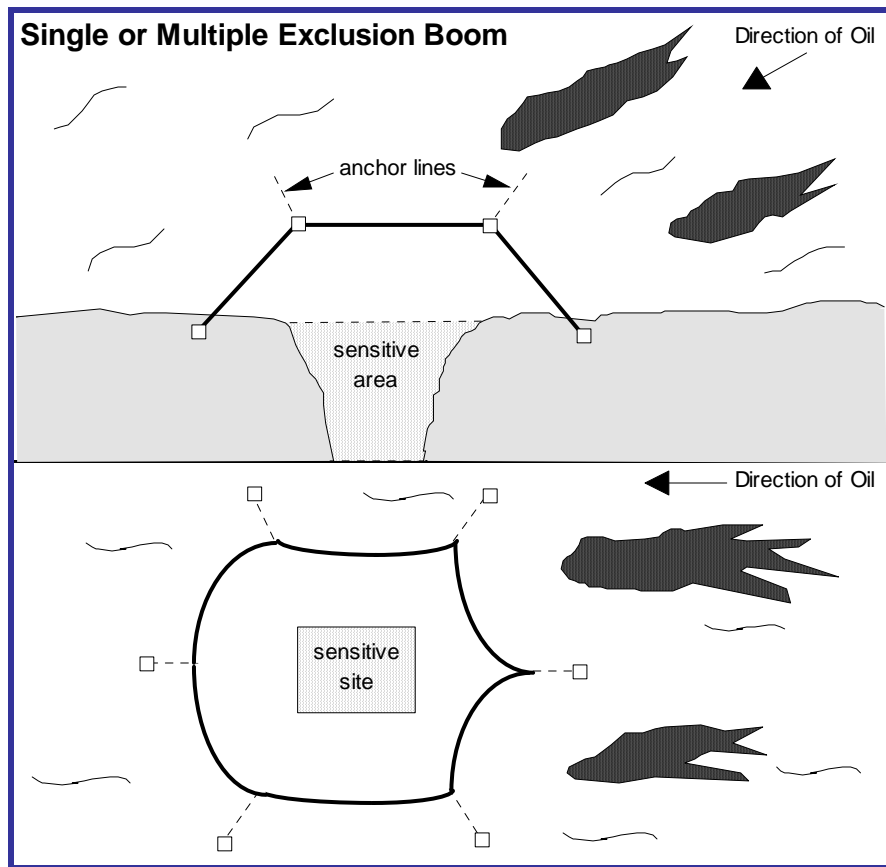


Typical river flow patterns and boom deployments. (after Hansen and Coe, 2001)



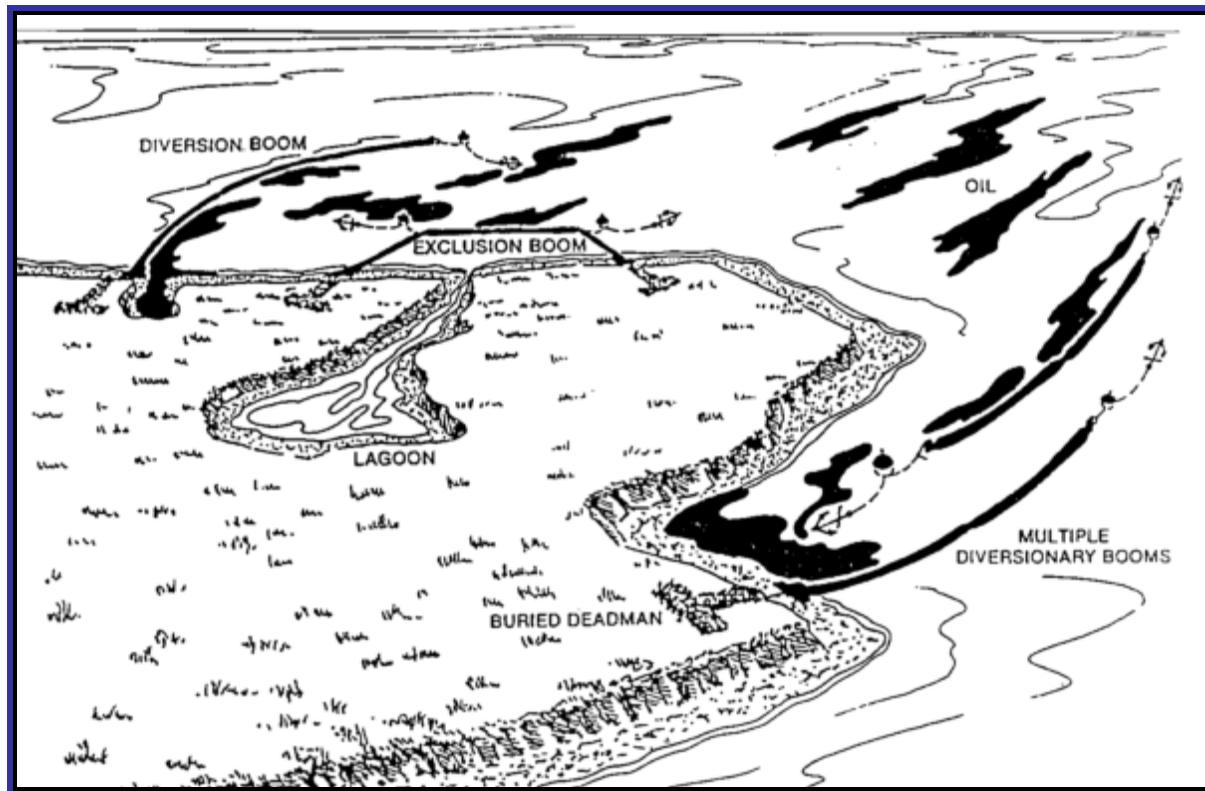
Exclusion Booms

(from Owens, 1996)



Examples of redirection and exclusion boom deployment.

(from Oil Industry Task Group, 1984)

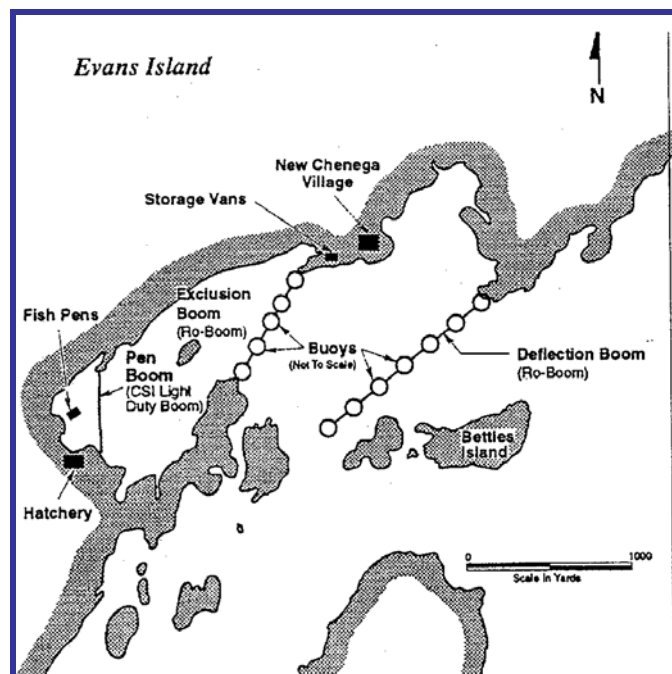


Sawmill Bay deployment plan.

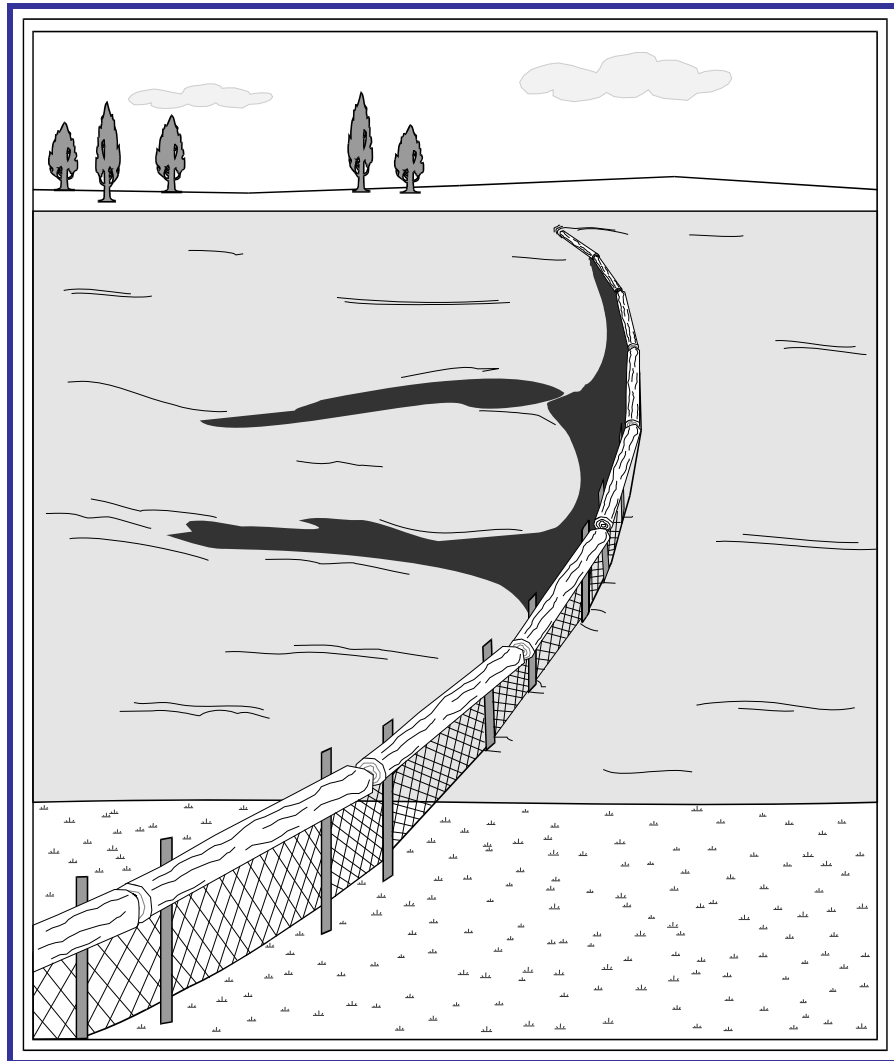
Three lines of protection against oil spills:

- (1) deflection boom (1st line of protection),
- (2) exclusion boom (2nd line of protection), and
- (3) pen boom (3rd line of protection)

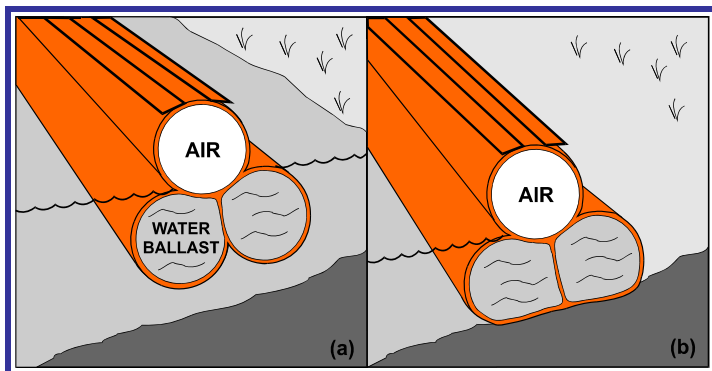
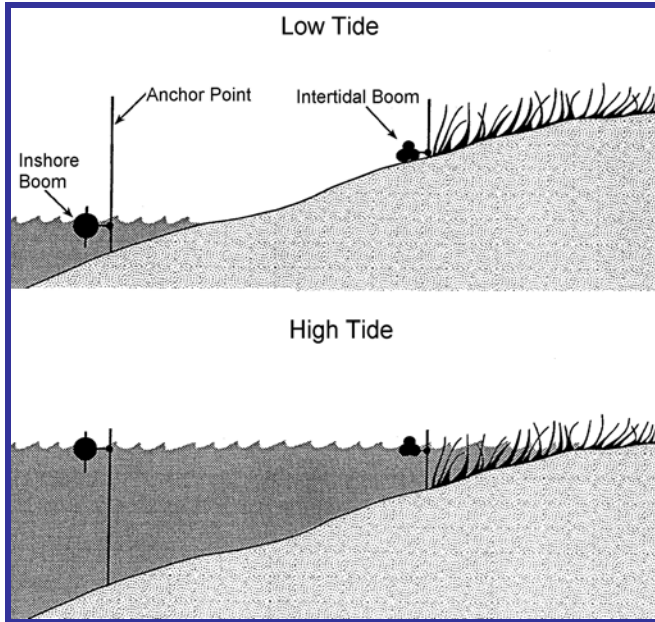
(Sawmill Bay in Prince William Sound, Alaska; from DWS Tanker Plan, 10Q/1)



Improvised redirection boom made from logs, rope, wire. (after ITOPF, 1987)



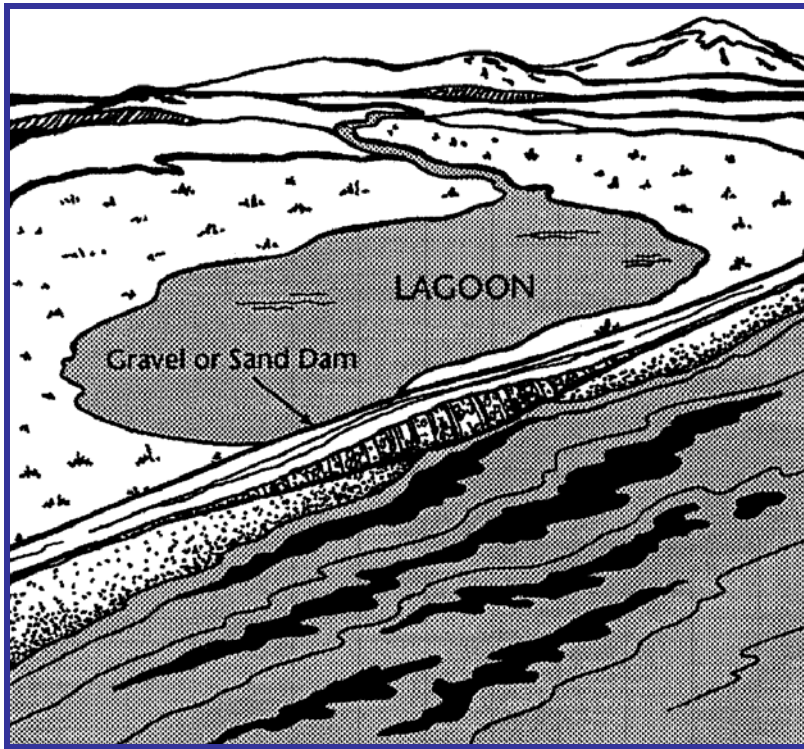
Shoreline or Intertidal Booms



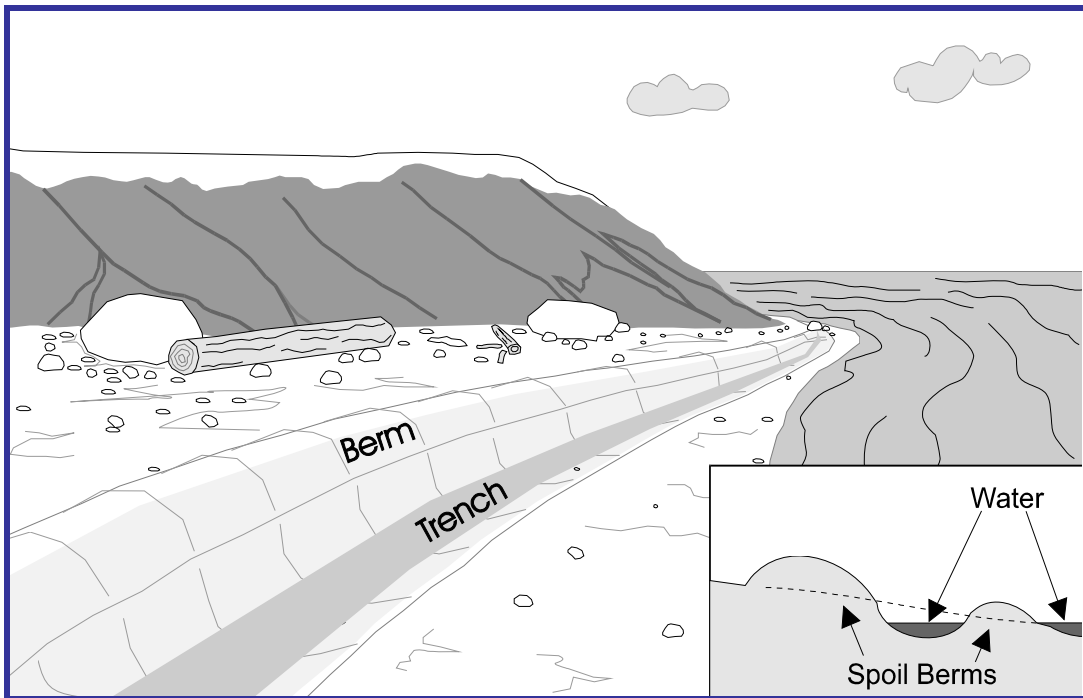
(from Owens, 1996)

Exclusion dam.

(after ABSORB, 1981)

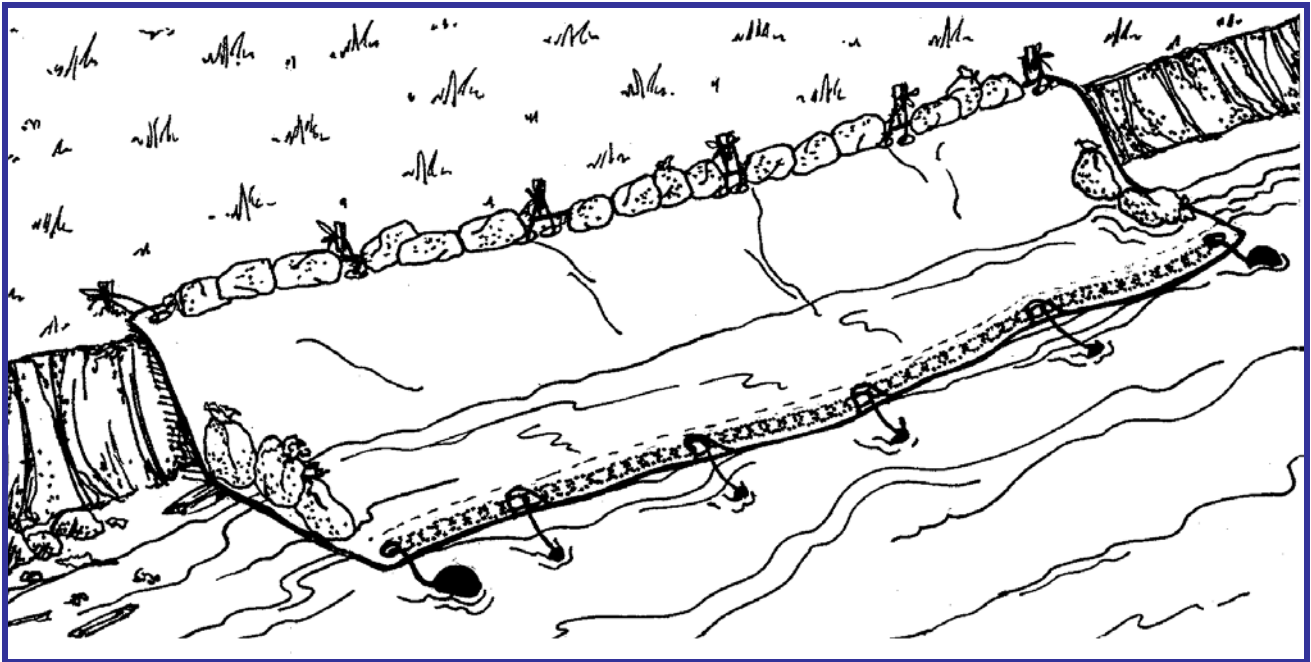


Berm along shoreline.



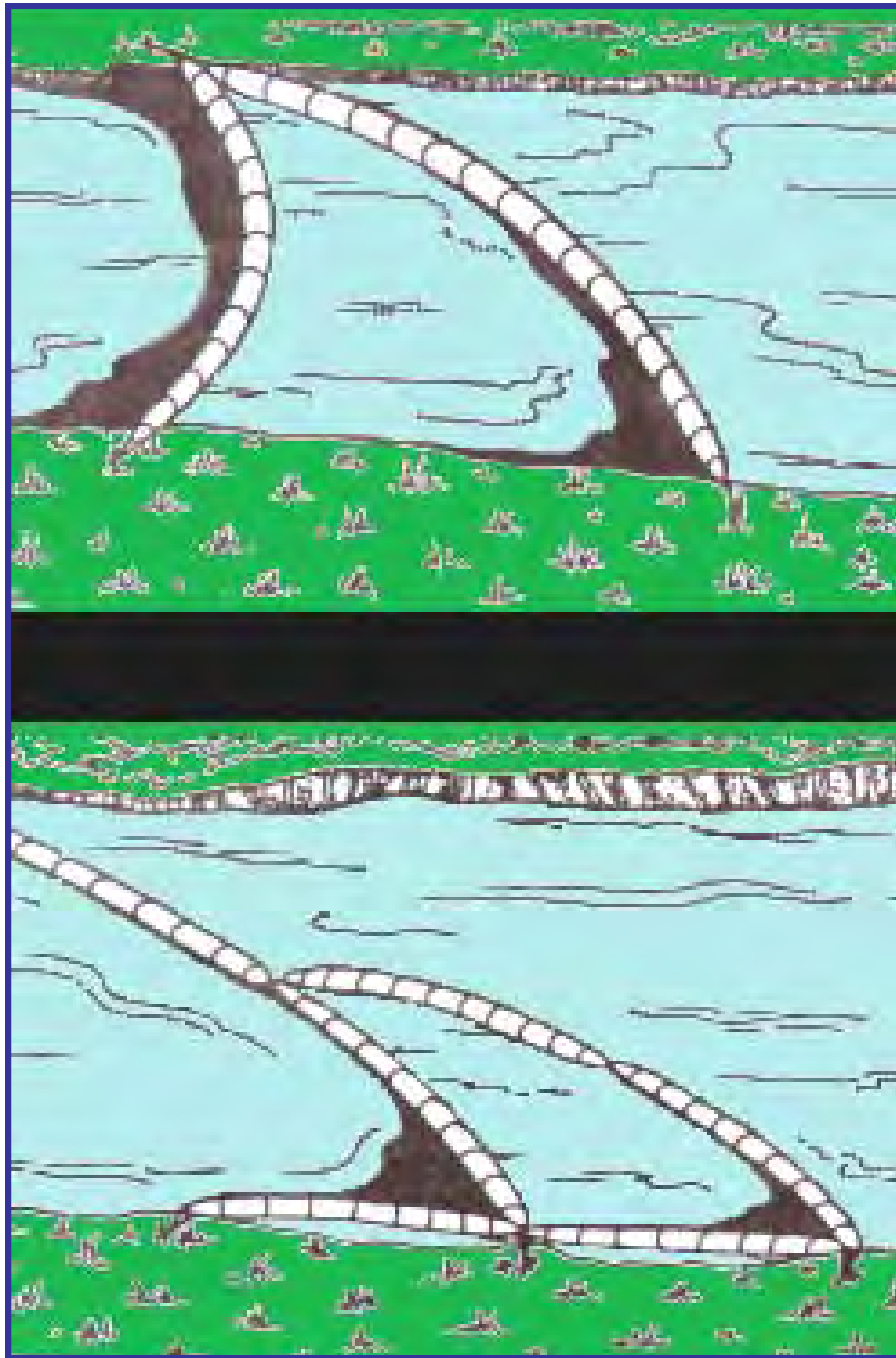
(from Owens, 1996)

Geotextile (Contact) Barriers



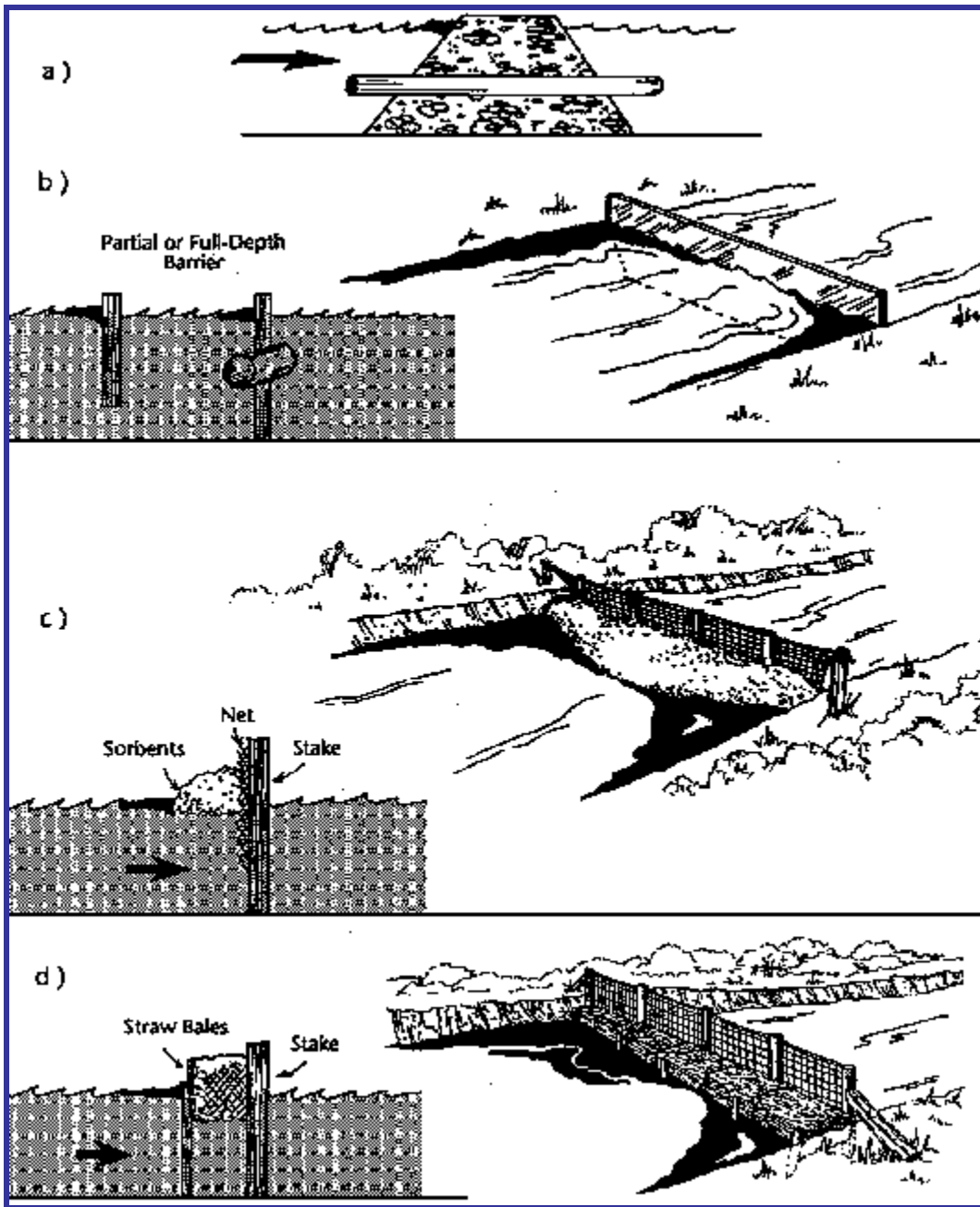
Channel Boom Strategies

(Owens, 1996)



Channel Barriers

(after CONCAWE, 1983)



Protection Technique Summary Tables

Protection Technique	Description	Limitations	Potential Environmental Effects
ON-WATER BOOMING			
Containment	Boom is deployed in nearshore waters in a "J" or "U" shape in front of the oncoming slick. The ends of the boom are anchored by work boats or drogues and the oil is contained within the "U", or the ends can be brought together to encircle the oil for recovery.	High winds Swells > 2 m Currents > 1.0 m/s Breaking waves > 50 cm	No significant effects.
Recovery-Skimming	Portable skimmers are placed within containment booms in the area of heaviest oil concentration. On-water, self-propelled skimmers work back and forth along the leading edge of a windrow; booms may be deployed from the front of a skimmer in a "V" configuration to increase sweep width.	High winds Swells > 2 m Currents > 1.0 m/s Breaking waves > 50 cm	No significant effects.
Redirection Away	Single or multiple booms are deployed from the shoreline at an angle away from the approaching slick and anchored or held in place with a work boat. Oil is deflected away from the shoreline where it may be contained for recovery.	Currents > 1.0 m/s Breaking waves > 50 cm	Minor disturbance to substrate at shoreline anchor points. Could affect unprotected downstream areas.
Redirection Towards	Single or multiple booms are deployed from the shoreline at an angle towards the approaching slick and anchored or held in place with a work boat. Oil is diverted towards the shoreline for recovery.	Currents > 1.0 m/s Breaking waves > 50cm	Minor disturbance to substrate at shoreline anchor points. Can cause heavy shoreline oiling at downstream end of boom (collection point).
Exclusion	Boom is deployed across or around sensitive areas and anchored in place. Approaching oil is deflected or contained by boom.	Currents > 0.5 m/s Breaking waves > 50 cm Water depth > 20 m	Minor disturbance to substrate at shoreline anchor points.
ONSHORE BARRIERS			
Intertidal/Shoreline Boom	Boom can be deployed across or along the shore/riverbank, on the beach or in the water, to contain oil. Designed for use where the water level will change. Water-filled chambers provide a seal as the boom grounds and a skirt when afloat. Can prevent remobilization of stranded oil.	Currents > 0.5 m/s Breaking waves > 50 cm	Minor disturbance to substrate at anchor points. Can cause heavy oiling if oil concentrated by the booming strategy.
Barriers, Berms	A berm is constructed along the shore/riverbank. The berm should be covered with plastic or geotextile sheeting to minimize wave erosion and oil penetration or burial.	Breaking waves > 25 cm Strong currents	Disturbs upper 50 – 60 cm of foreshore zone.
Sumps and Trenches	Dug by machinery to contain and collect oil for recovery as it is washed ashore. Prevents or minimizes remobilization of stranded oil. Likely would have to be lined to prevent penetration or mixing of oil and sediment by wave action.	Breaking waves > 25 cm Coarse sediments (cobble and boulders)	Disturbance of the substrate and, if not lined, greater oil penetration.
Geotextiles	A roll of geotextile, plastic sheeting, or other impermeable material is spread along the bottom of the splash zone and fastened in place to protect logs or other materials from oil splash or spray or to prevent oil penetration into riprap or boulder, cobble, pebble beaches.	Breaking waves > 25 cm Strong alongshore currents Low-sloped shorelines	No significant effects.
Boom Filter or Sorbent Exclusion Barrier	A barrier is constructed by installing two parallel lines of stakes across a channel, fastening wire mesh to the stakes, and filling the space between with loose sorbents.	Currents > 0.5 m/s Waves > 25 cm	Minor disturbance of inlet or channel substrate.
Solid Exclusion Barriers	A dam is constructed across a channel, inlet, or culvert where there is a limited flow, using local soil or beach sediments, sandbags, or wood sheeting to seal the opening and exclude oil from entering the area.	Water outflow Waves > 25 cm	Disturbs channel substrate and adds suspended sediments to water. Can be harmful to landward biota.

4.4. *Protection Expectations*

Despite best efforts, it is rarely possible to contain and remove much of the spilled oil from the water surface.

Nearshore / Offshore Operations

- (1) Do not expect off / in / nearshore operations to prevent shoreline oiling.
- (2) Oil will end up on the shore (in most cases) despite our best efforts.

The following table, based on operational experiences in the published literature, is a fair indicator of what can be expected from offshore and nearshore operations

Recovery of Spilled Oil From a Nearshore Spill

0 – 10%	Normal
10 – 25%	Exceptional
25 – 50%	It happens from time to time with small spills in sheltered waters
> 50%	Does not happen on the open sea

- ❖ Therefore, planning for shoreline protection and shoreline cleanup should begin even if the oil is still on the water and away from the shoreline, to prevent a last-minute operation to protect resources at risk.

Shoreline Protection “Rules of Thumb”

Protection Strategies

- ❖ Protection is a defensive strategy for resources at risk in the anticipated spill path.
- ❖ Think ahead, it may be already too late to protect a resource at risk.
- ❖ Be specific and define whether the protection goal is to “*prevent contact between the oil and the resource at risk*” or “*minimize the degree of contact*” — this will make a big difference to the level of effort and the degree of commitment by Planning and Operations.
- ❖ Protection by exclusion booming can be effective in sheltered areas; on open coasts, redirection (deflection – diversion) may be the only feasible protection strategy.
- ❖ Do not promise to keep oil away from an area or a location if it not feasible or practical to do so; this will avoid disappointment and loss of credibility.

Protection Priorities

- ❖ *PAY ATTENTION TO LOCAL SENSITIVITIES AND PRIORITIES* — generic sensitivities (e.g., marshes and wetlands — ESI 10s) may not be the same as local priorities; in the 1993 Tampa Bay spill, the local population considered the tourist sand beaches a much higher priority than the back-bay mangroves (which they considered to be “weeds that had grown on dredge-spoil piles and messed up the boating”)
- ❖ The oil is in the “backyard” of the local inhabitants, it is their land, riverbank, or shore that will be oiled and their resources or activities that will be affected — usually, we are outsiders and often do not immediately recognize their concerns or priorities.
- ❖ Area Contingency Plans (ACPs), Geographic Response Plans (GRPs), or similar regional response plans, do not necessarily reflect local concerns or priorities.
- ❖ *Sensitivity and Vulnerability* are two different concepts: a resource may be sensitive to oil but not vulnerable, and vice versa.

4.5. *On-Water Response Guidelines*

Booms and Boom Selection

Operating Environment Constraints

- ❖ wave height and wave steepness
- ❖ surface current strength
- ❖ winds
- ❖ visibility and darkness
- ❖ water depth (inshore)

Operational Factors

- ❖ oil encounter rate
- ❖ oil thickness
- ❖ debris

Boom Failure

- ❖ ENTRAINMENT — water flow too strong
- ❖ DRAINAGE — too much oil
- ❖ SPLASH OVER — wave height too high
- ❖ SUBMERGENCE — water flow too strong
- ❖ PLANING — winds and currents too strong

"Rules of Thumb"

- ❖ Booms work for most oil types and large or small oil volumes.
- ❖ Containment is most effective when the booms can be accurately directed towards the oil; a boat usually is not a good place from which to locate the oil.
- ❖ Booms almost always leak, even under the best of circumstances.
- ❖ A boom is only as good as the crew that deploys and controls it.
- ❖ Booms are not a static piece of equipment, they require constant attention.
- ❖ Offshore containment costs can be high per barrel (but still considerably less than shoreline cleanup and resource damages).

- ❖ Shoreline (or “tidal”) booms work well at the shore and on riverbanks.

Skimmers and Skimmer Selection

- ❖ Mechanical recovery in rivers might be possible in areas where oil naturally accumulates or is easily diverted to a collection area with booming techniques. Such areas, e.g. back eddy and quiet water embayments, are common in meandering rivers or streams.
- ❖ They can also occur where a narrow channel widens or a river turns in an oxbow and currents are reduced. In some cases, such areas are also created during a spill by earthmoving equipment where the advantages of creating an oil collection point outweigh the disturbances caused by altering the terrain.

Operating Environment Constraints

- ❖ wave height
- ❖ surface current strength

Operational Factors

- ❖ oil encounter rate
- ❖ oil type (viscosity and adhesion properties)
- ❖ oil thickness
- ❖ debris

“Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Different skimmers work for different oil types.
- ❖ Skimmers do not like rough waters or strong currents.
- ❖ Oil recovery rate equals total volume recovered less the amount of water.
- ❖ Oil recovery cannot exceed storage capacity.
- ❖ Offshore containment and recovery costs can be high per barrel (but still considerably less than shoreline cleanup and resource damages).

Mechanical Containment and Recovery

- ❖ The success of containment and recovery is primarily a function of (not in any order):
 - a) the type and volume of spilled oil
 - b) the size of the area over which the oil has spread
 - c) the sea and weather conditions
 - d) operator experience and skill.
 - e) the accuracy with which the equipment can be deployed in terms of the location and movement of the oil.
- ❖ The last item is probably the most important. Without good direction from the air, a recovery team likely will have a low efficiency and recovery potential.
- ❖ There are many different types of equipment and each has been designed for different applications.
- ❖ "Booms leak".
- ❖ Skimmers like calm water.
- ❖ On-water recovery rates generally are less than 10% of the spill volume — so for nearshore spills, expect the coast to be oiled.

In-Situ Burning “Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Burn when you can: limited window of opportunity.
- ❖ Know which way the wind is blowing and find out about the forecasted winds.
- ❖ Air emissions (usually) are not an HSE issue; fire and smoke only look bad.
- ❖ Burning does not preclude other actions taking place concurrently (i.e., containment and recovery).
- ❖ Any boom can be a “fire boom” — it may be only a one-time use though
- ❖ Burning is the simplest method and can be the most effective method for oil removal from a water surface: may be as much as 90% oil removal
- ❖ Be safe; think what will happen as soon as the oil is ignited — it will happen fast!

Dispersant Application “Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Disperse when you can: limited window of opportunity.
- ❖ Dispersion can be a very effective method for oil removal from a water surface.
- ❖ Environmental effects of chemical dispersion are much lower than the effects of oil on the shoreline.
- ❖ Dispersion does not preclude other actions taking place concurrently (i.e., containment and recovery, in-situ burning).
- ❖ Aerial spraying can cover very large areas (tens of acres per minute): figure out how much area can be covered with one load and the transit times to re-load to estimate how long it will take to cover all of the target oil.

4.6. Submerged or Sunken Oil

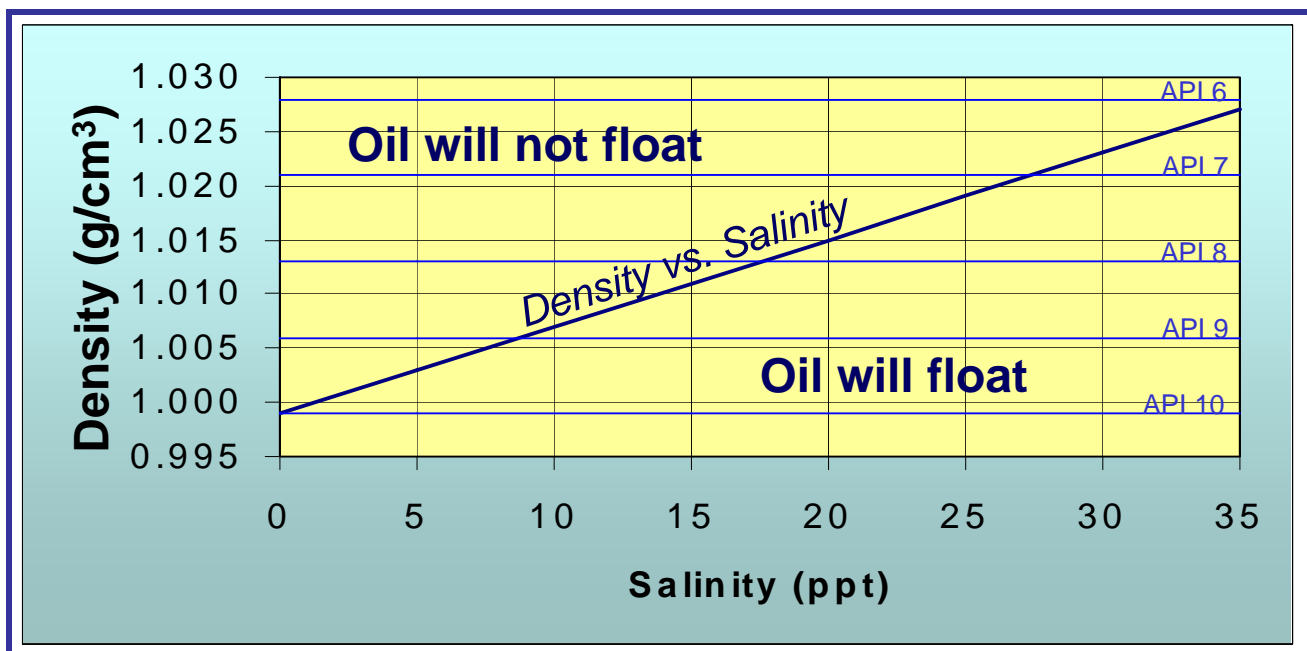
- ❖ *SUBMERGED OIL* is defined as oil that is below the water surface and is in the water column, whereas
- ❖ *SUNKEN OIL* is defined as oil that has been deposited on the floor of the sea, lake, or river.

Character

- ❖ *DENSITY* determines if a substance will float, remain in suspension, or sink in still water.
- ❖ *SOLUBILITY* determines if a substance will dissolve or partially dissolve.
- ❖ a *MIXER* dissolves (slowly or rapidly) and is irreversibly changed.
- ❖ a *SUSPENSION* or *SINKER* may dissolve (slowly) and retains all of part of its physiochemical character.

Density vs. Salinity

(after Galt)



Assessment of Submerged or Sunken Oil

- ❖ Can the oil be accurately located ?
- ❖ How long will it likely stay there ?
- ❖ Is the oil likely to move, be eroded or be buried ?
- ❖ What are the environmental effects of the submerged or sunken oil ?

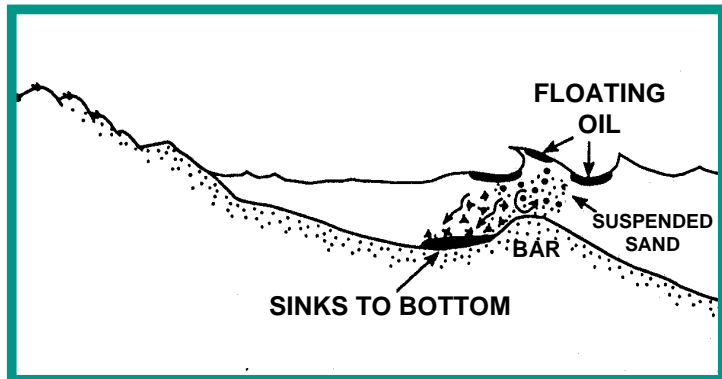
Possible Objectives (pick only one)

- ❖ Allow to weather and disperse naturally
- ❖ Contain and recover all of the oil
- ❖ Contain/recover as much oil as practical and safe

Submerged or Sunken Oil

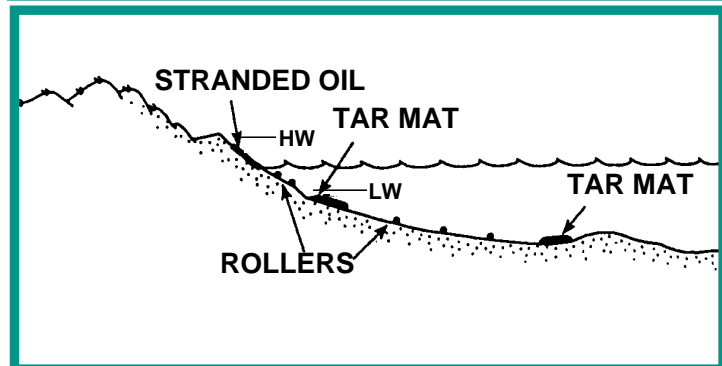
Oil can sink in the shore zone as the buoyancy is altered by mixing with suspended sediments or beach materials, so that the oil becomes more dense than the nearshore waters (Michel and Galt, 1995).

- Oil initially floats – mixes with suspended sand in breaker zone, then sinks.



- Oil initially floats – strands on beach – oil and sediment are mixed by wave action, then eroded and transported to nearshore bottom

(Michel *et al.*, 1995).



Assessment Guide(Castle *et al.*, 1995)

Oil is:	Depth is:		
Near Neutral Buoyancy (oil suspended in water column) ▶	0–20m ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Visual (Aircraft) ▪ Photobathymetric Techniques
	0–30m ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Visual (Diver)
	No depth restriction	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Sonar ▪ Visual (Television, ROV) ▪ Water Column Sampling <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Water Samples – Mid-Water Trawls ▪ In-Situ Detectors
Negative Buoyancy (sinks to bottom) ▶	0–20m ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Visual (Aircraft) ▪ Photobathymetric Techniques
	0–30 ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Visual (Diver)
	No depth restriction	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Geophysical ▪ Sonar ▪ Side-Scan Sonar ▪ Enhanced Acoustic ▪ Grab Samples ▪ Bottom Trawls ▪ Visual (Television, ROV) ▪ <i>In-Situ</i> Detectors

Containment Guide(Castle *et al.*, 1995)

Oil is:	Depth is:		
Near Neutral Buoyancy (oil suspended in water column) ▶	0–2m ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Physical Barrier
	0–3m ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Silt Curtain
	Maximum working depth not established	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pneumatic Curtain ▪ Contain Onshore
Negative Buoyancy (sinks to bottom) ▶	0–2m ±	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Physical Barrier
	No depth restriction	▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Allow to collect in natural or artificial depression ▪ Contain Onshore

Recovery Guide

(Castle et al., 1995)

Oil is:	Depth is:	
Near Neutral Buoyancy (oil suspended in water column) ▶	0-2m ± ▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Permeable Barriers ▪ Manual Recovery
	Working depth variable ▶	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mid-Water Trawls ▪ Pump/Decant Systems ▪ Recover Onshore
Negative Buoyancy (sinks to bottom) ▶	<p style="text-align: center;"><u>Oil is:</u></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Pumpable ▶</p>	<p><u>Depth is:</u></p> <p>0-5m ± Mud Cat</p> <p>0-15m ± Dustpan/Cutterhead Dredge</p> <p>0-20m ± Hopper Dredge</p> <p>0-30m ± Hand held Dredge</p> <p>0-40m ± Oozer Dredge</p> <p>Working Depths Variable Vacuum Systems Progressive Cavity Pumps Air Lift Pumps Combination Systems</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Not Pumpable ▶</p>	<p><u>Depth is:</u></p> <p>0-5m ± Mud Cat</p> <p>0-15m ± Cutterhead Dredge</p> <p>0-30m ± Manual – Divers</p> <p>Working Depths Variable Bottom Trawls Clamshells Robotic Systems</p>

Floating vs Sinking Oil

- ❖ Pay particular attention to this issue if (a) the oil has, or weathers to, a density close to that of the water, and (b) there are mixed water masses (e.g., fresh-water and sea-water lens in an estuary).
- ❖ Oils with a density near 1.0 may rise and sink as water temperature or water density (salinity) change — changes in oil temperature are not a factor.

Containment & Recovery Variables

SURFACE OIL	SUBMERGED OIL	SUNKEN OIL
Visible	“Hidden”	“Hidden”
Variable horizontal location	Variable horizontal location	Fixed horizontal location
Fixed vertical location	Variable vertical location	Fixed vertical location
Surface winds and currents identifiable and predictable to a degree.	Subsurface currents and density changes generally not known, hard to predict.	Bottom currents and density changes generally not known, hard to predict.
Concentrated in slick(s) or in small droplets	Concentrated in slick(s) or in small droplets	Usually would be concentrated

Detection and Tracking

1. ROVs
 2. Water-penetrating remote sensing
 3. Trajectory models
- *NONE are very effective or efficient*

- ❖ It is very difficult (usually impossible) to detect and track oil below the water surface.
- ❖ It is very difficult to see with the naked eye.
- ❖ Underwater “trajectory analyses” are a “shot in the dark”.

Containment, Protection and Recovery

There are only a very few situations (calm environments and shallow waters) when containment, protection, and recovery are feasible.

- ❖ Do not expect open-ocean containment and recovery actions to be successful.
- ❖ Recovery that involves pumping techniques also involves large volumes of water.

Protection Priorities include:

- ❖ water intakes
- ❖ aquaculture sites
- ❖ mid-depth – bottom fisheries (include crab, lobster pots, etc.)
- ❖ tidal inlets, oxbows, bayous, etc.

Boom

“Standard Booms”

- Draft usually 6 feet (2 m) or less

Specialized Booms

- Deep-skirt booms (12-ft. (4-m) draft)
- Silt curtains (generally 10-ft. (3-m) draft)
- Nets
- No theoretical depth limit for boom draft
 - But how easy would it be to deploy a 30 ft. (10 m) curtain in flowing water?
- Pneumatic barriers
- Behave as surface booms
- Entrainment, drainage will occur in the water column and on the bottom

Factors that Aid an Operation

- Shallow water
- Sheltered conditions (waves, currents, and winds)
- Limited and stationary distribution or extent of the oil
- Nearby staging and decanting facilities
- Either pumpable oil for vacuum recovery or weathered asphalt-like oils for physical removal

Potential for Success will Decrease with...

- Water depth
- Currents strength
- Wave exposure
- Distance offshore
- Extent of the affected area
- API gravity of the oil (because of dispersal)
- Volume of recovered oily wastes

The State of the Art

- ❖ "There are no proven techniques for locating oil that is neutrally buoyant and suspended in the water column"
- ❖ "Containment and removal efforts for neutrally buoyant oil will likely be ineffective. No proven techniques exist for containing oil in the water column, or for removing oil from large volumes of water"
Michel *et al.*, — 1995 Int. Oil Spill Conf.
- ❖ "The scope for recovering sunken oil is severely limited"
Moller (ITOPF) — AMOP 1992

SO ???

What is really practical?

- /// Diversion booms
- /// Sorbent barrier

“Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Expect the unexpected in terms of where the oil might go.
- ❖ Expect oil to enter the water column.
- ❖ Do not expect to predict the movement of, or detect, this submerged oil.
- ❖ Realistic control or recovery only is likely where the submerged or sunken oil can be accurately located and where recovery is a safe and practical operation.
- ❖ In most circumstances, despite some recent successes, it is not realistic to expect responders to contain or recover submerged or sunken oils.
- ❖ Do not be optimistic or promise results except in sheltered and shallow waters.
- ❖ The communication of reasonable expectations is almost as important as the development of practical, feasible, and safe response options.

Part 5 Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique (SCAT)

Table of Contents

5.1. The Documentation of Oiled Shorelines _____	5-3
5.1.1. Shoreline Oiling Assessment Strategy _____	5-5
5.1.2. Shoreline Segmentation _____	5-10
5.1.3. The Description of Shoreline Character _____	5-13
5.1.4. The Description of Stranded Surface Oil _____	5-14
5.1.5. The Description of Subsurface Oil _____	5-27
5.2. Sketch Maps _____	5-30
5.3. Photo/VTR Documentation _____	5-31
5.4. STR and SIR Forms _____	5-32
5.4.1. Shoreline Treatment Recommendation (STR) _____	5-32
5.4.2. Shoreline Inspection Report (SIR) _____	5-34
5.5. Data Base and Applications _____	5-36
5.6. SCAT Case Studies _____	5-42
5.7. Pre-Spill SCAT Survey _____	5-44
5.8. Who Uses SCAT Data ? _____	5-49

Part 5 Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique (SCAT)

5.1. *The Documentation of Oiled Shorelines*

A clear and accurate understanding of the *nature and extent of the shoreline oiling* is key to developing a practical response strategy and to selecting appropriate cleanup options.

Objective

The primary purpose of SCAT (*Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique*) is to Provide:

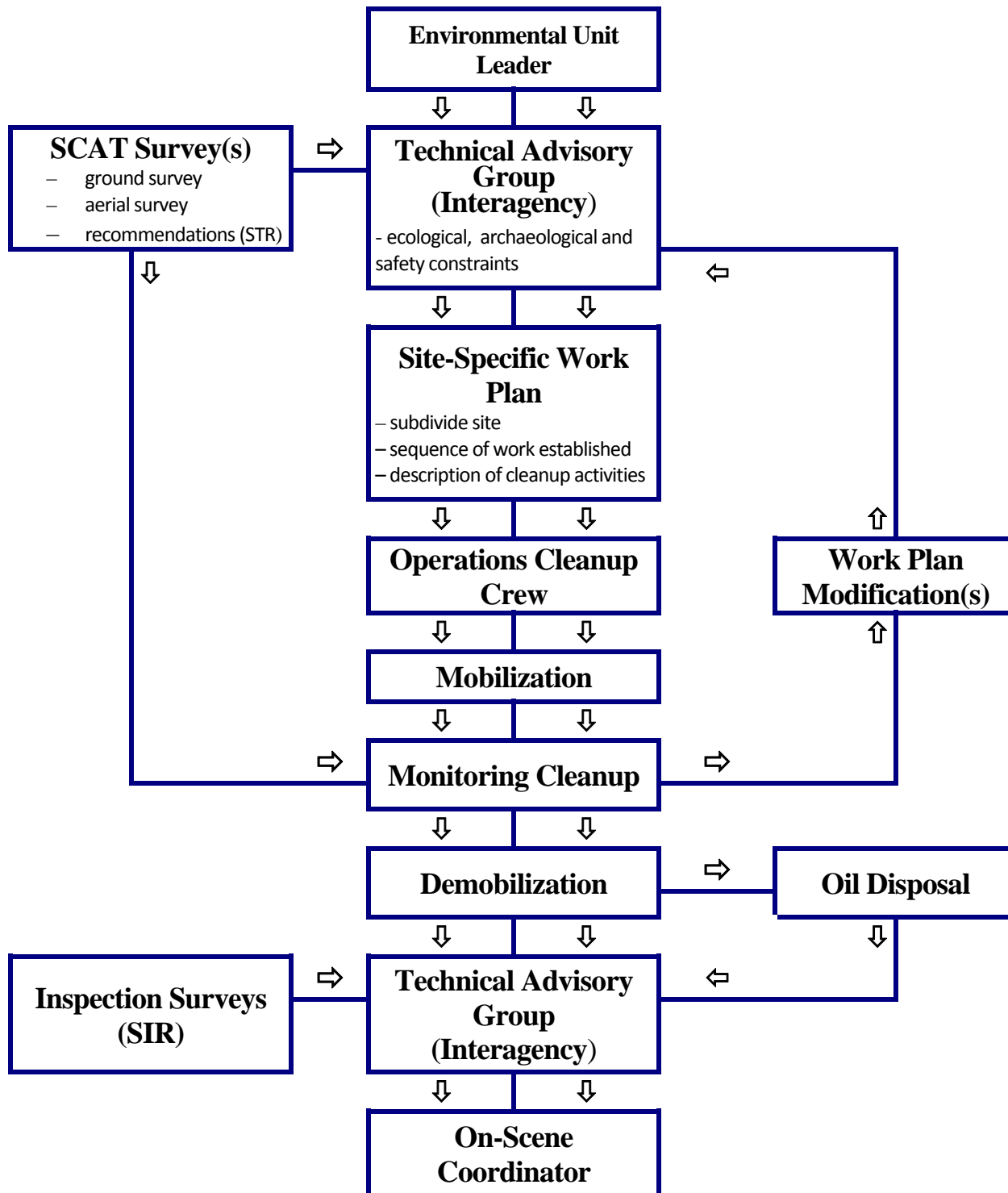
❖ OPERATIONAL SUPPORT

Method

- ❖ Systematically Collect Real-time Data on Oil and Shoreline Conditions
(that is assessed by the Decision Makers in the Unified Command to)
- ❖ Develop an Appropriate Treatment (Cleanup) Program

- ❖ The *OBJECTIVES* of the documentation phase are to:
 - provide decision support for onshore response operations,
 - systematically collect data on shoreline oiling conditions,
 - identify and describe affected resources,
 - cross check pre-existing information on environmental sensitivities or clarify observations from aerial surveys,
 - identify and describe any constraints that may limit operations, and
 - recommend appropriate treatment actions, if and where necessary, to meet the endpoint criteria.
- ❖ *PRIORITIES* for shoreline assessment surveys may be determined using information from aerial surveys and pre-existing sensitivity atlases and databases. Priority setting criteria include:
 - degree of oiling,
 - environmental resources/sensitivities,
 - projected tidal and wind conditions, and
 - available transportation and logistics.

Flowchart of Site-Specific Tactical Decision-Making Process



5.1.1. Shoreline Oiling Assessment Strategy

SCAT May Involve:

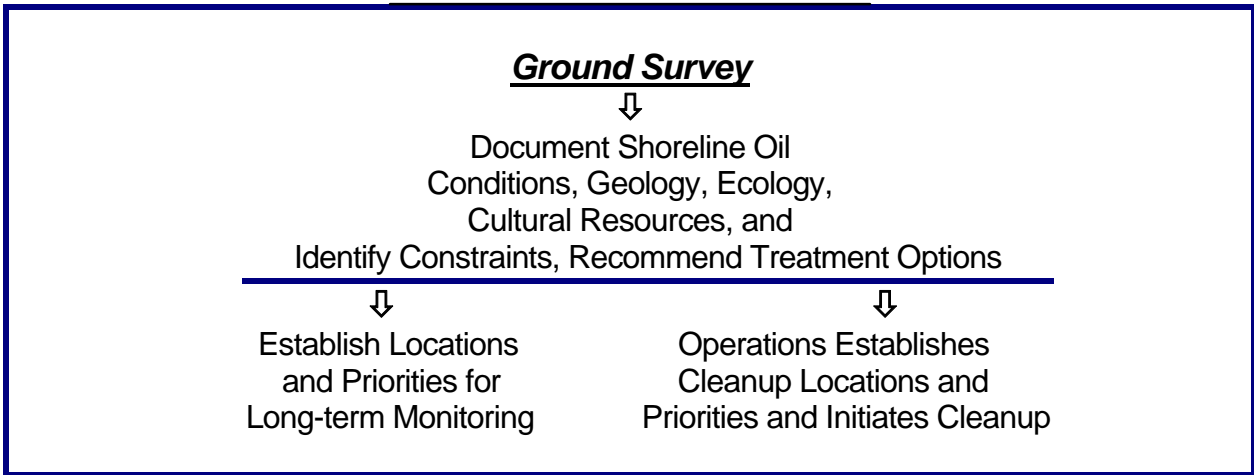
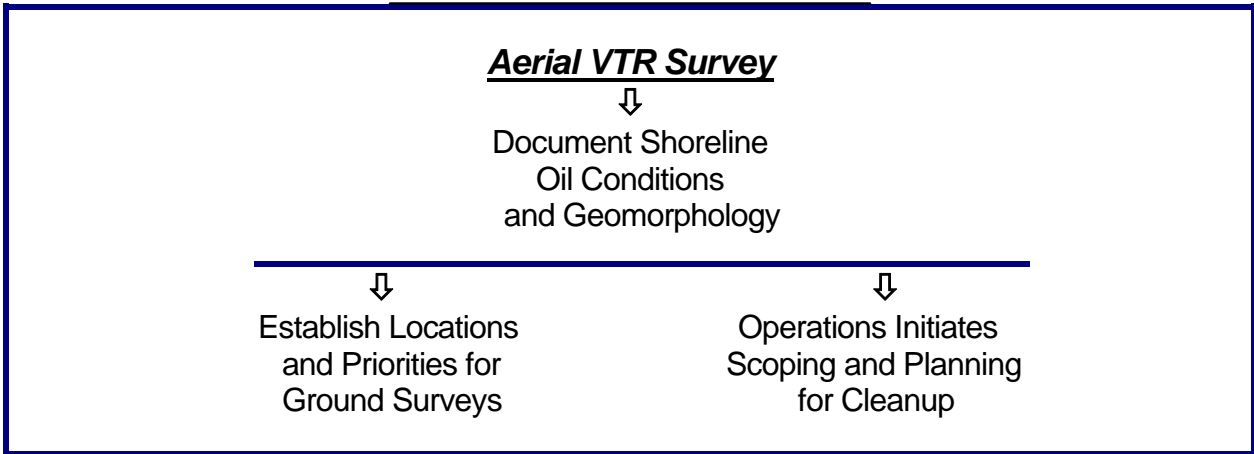
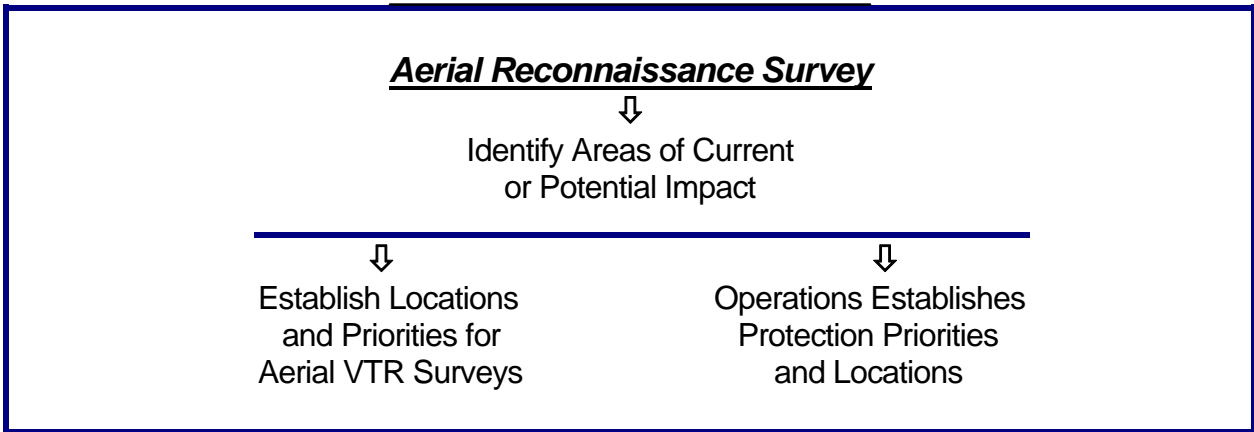
- Aerial Reconnaissance Team
- Aerial Videotape Recording (VTR) Team
- Shoreline Assessment Team(s)
 - *Geology/Oil*
 - *Ecology*
 - *Cultural Resources*
- Inspection Team(s)

SCAT and NRDA

- ❖ SCAT is **not** NRDA.
- ❖ SCAT provides data to support Response Decisions and Operations — NRDA or similar impact assessment surveys assess damage and define compensation (not punitive) for “resource injuries”.
- ❖ SCAT data may be used by the Responsible Party or Trustees, but
 - < SCAT is not initiated or driven by NRDA;
 - < if it were, data could be sequestered.

Government agencies, landowners or managers, and operations representatives can participate in the documentation process and in the development of recommended response options and constraints by participating in the assessment team surveys. This participation may minimize subsequent discussion on the degree and extent of oil conditions and recommended response options.

The SCAT process generates information for the decision process. The SCAT team does not decide on treatment or cleanup methods but can identify operational constraints, such as ecological sites, cultural resources, or access considerations.



Initial Phase — Aerial SCAT

For all but very small areas:

- Aerial observations/video provide the initial direction for operations
- Rapid data collection / turnaround
- Provides “Big Picture” — Scales the problem

Second Phase — Ground SCAT

- Ground surveys provide detailed information on shoreline oiling conditions to define where treatment is necessary to meet the end point criteria
- Just need to stay 2–3 days ahead of shoreline operations
- Do not need many teams: usually 4 to 5 maximum even on large spills (except a DWH scale response)
- Aerial surveys continue to provide “Big Picture”

Later Phases

- Post treatment ground surveys to support the inspection and “sign-off” process

Method

The Description of Shoreline Oiling Conditions

STEP 1: Divide the Coast into Segments (Section 5.1.2)

STEP 2: Describe Shoreline Character within Segment (Section 5.1.3)

STEP 3: Describe Surface Oil (Section 5.1.4)

a. **length** of oiled shore within segment

b. **width of** oiled band

c. **% distribution** of oil in band

[width + distribution = surface cover]

d. **thickness** of oil cover

[cover + thickness = surface oil category]

c. describe **oil character**

STEP 4: Describe Subsurface Oil (Section 5.1.5)

e. describe **relative oil concentration** and **subsurface oil character**

f. measure **thickness/depth of penetration** of oiled layer

[depth of penetration + relative oil concentration = subsurface oil category]

(Owens and Sergy, 2000)

The Five SCAT Principles

1. A systematic survey of all shorelines in the affected area
2. Division of the coast into segments
3. Use of a standard set of terms and definitions for documentation
4. A team of interagency personnel to represent land ownership, land use, management or trustee interests
5. Management and operational support that continues until all treatment activities and inspections have been completed.

SCAT Process — “Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ *Use an existing documentation form if that is appropriate:* generate a new form if existing forms are not appropriate.
- ❖ *Modify terms, definitions, forms at the outset:* try not to change terms and definitions midway through a project (can always add new terms or redefine terms in some cases).
- ❖ *SCAT can be labour-intensive and generate a large volume of data,* so be sensible and practical in designing field surveys: do not promise more than you can deliver and do not do more than is necessary.
- ❖ *Calibration* is an ongoing activity as personnel and as oiling conditions change.
- ❖ *Minimize personnel substitutions* and select team members who can stay with the program, or have a systematic schedule of alternates: people who see conditions change through time have a better perception of reality.
- ❖ Assign a *data manager* as soon as possible for anything other than a small response: field teams do not have time to complete their paper work, perform data entry and routine management tasks, as well as produce maps or reports unless the affected area is very small.
- ❖ *Have a data manager review field forms daily:* post-spill reconstruction of oiling conditions is tedious and usually inaccurate.

5.1.2. Shoreline Segmentation

Shoreline Segmentation

- A geo-reference system
- Used by SCAT to define:
 - **Shoreline character**
 - **Oiling conditions**
- Provides a systematic and uniform framework for documentation, planning, and response (*Operations*)

- ❖ The shoreline is divided into working units called *SEGMENTS* within which the shoreline character is relatively homogeneous in terms of physical features and sediment type.
- ❖ Each segment is given a unique location identifier and is surveyed.
- ❖ Segment boundaries can be either prominent geological features (headlands, streams, etc.), changes in shore/substrate types, or changes in oil conditions.
- ❖ Segments should consider jurisdictional, land management, administrative and/or political boundaries
- ❖ Segment lengths are small enough to obtain adequate resolution and detail on the distribution of oil, but not so small that too much data are generated. Most segments in oiled areas would be in the range of 0.2–2.0 km.
- ❖ Segments are numbered based on an alphanumeric numbering scheme with an alphabetical prefix (e.g., EI = Example Island) followed by a number based on an alongshore sequence (EI-14).

Segmentation

Existing segmentation may be available in the form of a *GIS database* or as part of a pre-spill planning exercise.

- ❖ Existing segmentation would need to be reviewed and compared to oiling conditions observed in the field to determine if the segmentation may need to be adapted to existing spill conditions.
- ❖ If oiling conditions vary significantly within the segment, segments could be subdivided; segment subdivisions can be identified by a suffix, e.g., EI-14 A, EI-14 B, etc.

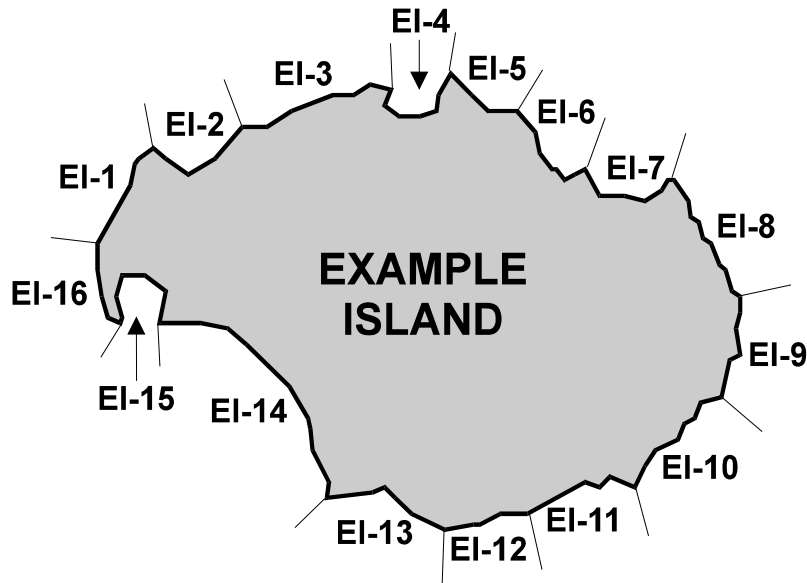
Exxon Valdez Shoreline Assessment Programs (adapted from Neff *et al.*, 1995)

SURVEYED				OILING CATEGORY				
Year	Segments	Km Surveyed	Number of Subdivisions	Very Light	Narrow/Light	Medium/Moderate	Wide/Heavy	Total Oiled
1989	550	1450	855	223	326	94	141	783
1990	493	1109	711	323	80	46	21	420
1991	305	386	432	68	15	12	0.1	96
1992	59	32	76	8.7	0.8	0.6	0.2	10

Segment "Rules of Thumb"

- ❖ The segment boundary should be at a change in the physical shoreline character, or where there is a change in oiling conditions even if the physical character is uniform (e.g., a long, straight sand beach).
- ❖ Do not use a river, stream, or inlet as a boundary, rather make the river or inlet a separate segment in itself.
- ❖ Make the segments operational units if possible, i.e., not too long nor too short.

Map showing shoreline segmentation for a hypothetical island shoreline.



5.1.3. The Description of Shoreline Character

Shoreline character affects the fate and persistence of stranded oil as well as access to the site and equipment constraints. During a survey, therefore, it is important to document the shoreline type and coastal character.

Shoreline Types

- (1) An Oil Spill Can Affect:
- Intertidal or swash zone
 - Supratidal or splash zone
 - therefore, base characterization on these zones
(shoreline type)
- (2) Operations Activities Take Place in Backshore and Nearshore Zones
- therefore, must also characterize area inland and seaward of the shoreline **(coastal character)**

The *COASTAL CHARACTER* describes the *form* of the various materials that result from *marine and coastal processes* (described in Part 1) that act to change the shape of the initial material.

Coastal Character

Solid Forms

- Bedrock:
- cliff
 - platform
 - reef
- Anthropomorphic:
- bulkhead
 - revetment
 - marina
 - seawall
- Ice

Unconsolidated Forms

- Beach
- Delta
- Dune
- Sand Barrier/Lagoon
- Channel
- Flats (mud, sand, tidal)
- Scree/Talus
- Low-lying Tundra
- Tundra Cliff
- Anthropomorphic:
- dock/pier
 - fill

5.1.4. The Description of Stranded Surface Oil

- ❖ The description of the character and amount of oil stranded on a section of shoreline uses a standardized set of terms and definitions.
- ❖ Length of oiled shoreline is the least accurate method: the most useful descriptions include estimates of length, width, and distribution of oil.
- ❖ The tables and terminology on the following pages are a standardized approach that has been developed for Environment Canada and is applicable worldwide.

Methods Used to Describe Surface Oil Conditions (Environment Canada, 1992)

Length	Presence or absence only
Length – Width	A measure of total oiled area
Length – Width – Distribution	Indicates oil cover (equal to Equivalent Area — Owens <i>et al.</i> , 1987) *
Length – Width – Distribution – Thickness	Estimates the amount of oil **

* see Initial Surface Oil Cover Matrix (page 5-23)

** see Surface Oil Categorization Matrix (page 5-23)

Data Collection

- ❖ Data are collected on standardized *SHORELINE OILING SUMMARY (SOS) FORMS*; forms may be modified for various shoreline types (e.g., beach, marsh, tidal flat, river, stream, winter), regions, or study programs, as appropriate (see examples on pages 5-19 through 5-23).
- ❖ This documentation is supplemented with *sketch maps* (Section 5.2) and *photographs* (Section 5.3).
- ❖ A list of typical equipment needed during a field survey is included on pg. 5-17.

Typical Shoreline Oiling Summary Forms

- ❖ SOS Shoreline Oiling Summary Form (full or "short" form)
- ❖ WOS Wetlands Oiling Summary Form
- ❖ RBOS River Bank Oiling Summary Form
- ❖ SBOS Stream Bank Oiling Summary Form
- ❖ LSOS Lake Shoreline Oiling Summary Form
- ❖ TFOS Tidal Flat Oiling Summary Form
- ❖ MOS Mangrove Oiling Summary Form
- ❖ CROS Coral Reef Form
- ❖ TBS Tar Ball Oiling Summary Form

Forms adapted for COLD CLIMATE or ARCTIC regions

- ❖ Arctic Shoreline Oiling Summary (ASOS) Form
 - ❖ "Short" ASOS Form for First Responders
 - ❖ Winter Lake Shore Form
 - ❖ Winter River Bank Oiling Summary (WRBOS) Form
 - ❖ "Short" WRBOS Form for First Responders
 - ❖ Winter Stream Bank Form
 - ❖ Winter Tidal Flat Form
 - ❖ Winter Tar Ball Form
 - ❖ Winter Wetland Form
- The most recent versions may be downloaded from: <http://www.shorelineSCAT.com>
 - Adjust forms as necessary for local environmental conditions (e.g. tidal range and oiled zone width categories)

Essential SCAT Data

General

- ❖ location, date, time, and segment code
- ❖ information on team members

Surface

- ❖ length and width of oiled section or subdivision described
- ❖ location of oil relative to tidal zones or lake/river levels
- ❖ distribution (percent surface coverage to nearest 5 or 10%)
- ❖ oil thickness
- ❖ oil character

Subsurface

- ❖ location and area (length and width) of penetrated or buried oil
- ❖ pit or trench locations and depths
- ❖ thickness of clean sediment on buried oil
- ❖ thickness of sediment to base of penetrated/buried oil

Field Sketch or Map

- ❖ scale, North arrow, GPS coordinates
- ❖ surface oil locations and characteristics (abbreviations)
- ❖ pit and trench locations
- ❖ access, staging, and safety or operational concerns
- ❖ photographs and/or video of the segment (optional)

SCAT Kit List — “SCAT Pack”

The Essentials:

- ❖ Forms — SOS, etc.; Sketch blanks (on waterproof paper)
- ❖ Waterproof Notebooks
- ❖ 2B Pencils or waterproof pens
- ❖ Clip board
- ❖ Camera and Film or Digital Memory Cards, extra Batteries; Photo Scale
- ❖ Map(s)

Optional:

- ❖ Range Finder
- ❖ Radios — Cellular Phone
- ❖ Compass — GPS (Global Positioning System)
- ❖ Shovel (folding)
- ❖ SCAT field guide or manual
- ❖ Other types of equipment would be necessary depending on the logistics, location, and duration of the surveys, including:
 - < safety and survival equipment,
 - < sampling equipment, if required, and
 - < personal weather gear/PPE; raingear, gloves, boots, exposure suits.

SCAT Documentation — “Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Remember that the role of the SCAT is to be the “eyes and ears” for the Planning and Operations teams. Record, on a form or in a field notebook, any and all information required to later recreate the character and location of the oil.
- ❖ Define practical segments, based on either the physical shore-zone character, oiling conditions, or operational units.
- ❖ Be more, rather than less detailed, and do not categorize (i.e., enter the actual value of **15%** for Distribution, not *Patchy*; enter the value *15 m* for Width of Oiled Band, not *> 3 m*).
- ❖ Always make a sketch (or draw a map or on a map if you cannot sketch too well) to indicate important features and the location of the oil.
- ❖ If there is not a standard term or definition that fits an observed feature, define and describe the feature.
- ❖ Look around and identify advantages or constraints that might help or hinder the field cleanup crew.

Key Components of a SCAT Survey/Program

- ❖ Systematic data collection (i.e., forms)
 - ❖ Identification of resources (physical, ecological, cultural, human use) affected by the oil and/or operations at the time of the spill
 - ❖ Identification of factors that may assist or constrain operations
 - ❖ Treatment recommendations
-
- In the US, Canada and elsewhere, SCAT has been in use for over 20 years and has been applied successfully to spills on the coast, in rivers, and for tar ball oiling conditions.
 - The SCAT process is an integral part of Environment Canada procedures and is included in most Oil Spill Contingency Plans. Agencies will expect the Responsible Party to initiate a SCAT program, or likely they will do it themselves.

Shoreline Oiling Summary (SOS) Form (with Supplemental Form)

MARINE TEMPERATE (SOS) FORM (ver. 13Feb13) Incident: _____ Page _____ of _____

1. GENERAL INFORMATION		Date (dd/mmm/yyyy)	Time (24h standard/daylight) _____ : _____ to _____ : _____		Tide Height (m) Low: _____ High: _____ (H / M / L) - (R / F / LS / HS)																								
Segment ID:		Segment Name:																											
Ops Zone:		Survey Type:		STR:																									
Survey By: Foot ___ ATV ___ Boat ___ Helicopter ___ Other _____				Weather: Sun / Clouds / Fog / Rain / Snow / Windy / Calm																									
2. SURVEY TEAM		Name		Organization																									
Team Number																													
3. SEGMENT		Total Length: _____ meters		Length Surveyed: _____ meters		Datum: _____																							
Survey Start GPS:	WP:	LAT: _____		LONG: _____																									
Survey End GPS:	WP:	LAT: _____		LONG: _____																									
4a. SHORELINE TYPE : Indicate only ONE Primary(dominant) type and ALL Secondary types. CIRCLE those OILED																													
BEDROCK: Cliff _____ Ramp _____ Platform _____		Sediment BEACH: Sand _____ Mixed _____ Pebble/Cobble _____ Boulder _____																											
MAN-MADE: Solid _____ Permeable _____		Sediment FLAT: Mud _____ Sand _____ Mixed _____ Pebble/Cobble/Boulder _____																											
Description: _____		WETLAND: _____ Description: _____																											
ESI Shoreline Type (primary) _____ (secondary) _____		OTHER: _____ If snow and ice use Winter SOS																											
4b. COASTAL/BACKSHORE CHARACTER Indicate only ONE Primary (P) and ANY Secondary (S) types.																													
Cliff/Hill: _____ ht. _____ m.		Flat/Lowland: _____ Beach: _____ Dune: _____ Inlet/Channel: _____ Delta: _____ Lagoon: _____ Marsh/Wetland: _____		Sloped: > (5°) (15°) (30°)																									
Man-Made: _____		Primary Substrate type: _____ Forested / Vegetated - _____																											
5. OPERATIONAL FEATURES			Oiled Debris? Yes / No		Type: _____ Amount: _____ (bags/trucks)																								
Direct backshore access? Yes / No			Alongshore access from next segment? Yes / No		Suitable for backshore staging? Yes / No																								
Access Description / Restrictions: _____			Current Dominated Channel? Yes / No																										
6. OILING DESCRIPTION : Use letters A-Z, Indicate 100% overlapping oil zones in different tidal zones by numbering them (e.g. A1, A2)																													
Zone ID	WP # Start	WP # End	Substrate Type(s) or ESI Code	Tidal Zone				Oil Cover					Oil Thickness					Oil Character											
				LI	MI	UI	SU	Area		Distribution		Size			TO	CV	CT	ST	FL	FR	MS	TB	PT	TC	SR	AP	NO		
								Length (m)	Width (m)	Dist % (> 1)	Number per unit area	Avg Size (cm)	Large Size (cm)																
7. SUBSURFACE OILING CONDITIONS : Format: Indicate Zone ID in Pit #, e.g., A-1, B-2, B-3, (use only number if not in zone e.g. 4, 5)																													
Pit #	WP #	Substrate Type Surface/Subsurface	Tidal Zone				Pit Depth (cm)	Oiled Interval (cm-cm)	Subsurface Oil Character								Water Table (cm)	Sheen Color B,R,S,N	Clean Below Yes / No										
			LI	MI	UI	SU			AP	OP	PP	OR	OF	TR	NO	%													
8. COMMENTS : Cleanup Recommendations; Ecological/Recreational/Cultural/Economic Issues; Wildlife Observations; Other Descriptions																													

*Use supplemental river SOS form for additional oiling zones, pits, and comments/sketches.

Sketch / Map: Yes / No Photos/Video: Yes / No Numbers: (_____ - _____) Photographer Name: _____

MARINE TEMPERATE (SOS-2) FORM (ver. 13Feb13) Incident: _____ Page _____ of _____

1. GENERAL INFORMATION		Date (dd/mmm/yyyy)	Time (24h standard/daylight) : to :	Tide Height (m) Low: High:
Segment ID:		Segment Name:		
Ops Zone:	Team #	Survey Type:	STR:	
Survey By: Foot ___ ATV ___ Boat ___ Helicopter ___ Other _____			Weather: Sun / Clouds / Fog / Rain / Snow / Windy / Calm	

6. OILING DESCRIPTION: Use letters A-Z, Indicate 100% overlapping oil zones in different tidal zones by numbering them (e.g. A1, A2)

Zone ID	WP # Start	WP # End	Substrate Type(s) or ESI Code	Tidal Zone				Oil Cover					Oil Thickness					Oil Character								
				LI	MI	UI	SU	Area		Distribution		Size		TO	CV	CT	ST	FL	FR	MS	TB	PT	TC	SR	AP	NO
								Length (m)	Width (m)	Dist (> 1)	% or per unit area	Avg Size (cm)	Large Size (cm)													

7. SUBSURFACE OILING CONDITIONS: Format: Indicate Zone ID in Pit #, e.g., A-1, B-2, B-3, (use only number if not in zone e.g. 4, 5)

Pit #	WP #	Substrate Type Surface/Subsurface	Tidal Zone				Pit Depth (cm)	Oiled Interval (cm-cm)	Subsurface Oil Character								Water Table (cm)	Sheen Color B,R,S,N	Clean Below Yes / No							
			LI	MI	UI	SU			AP	OP	PP	OR	OF	TR	NO	%										
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								
		/																								

8. COMMENTS: Cleanup Recommendations; Ecological/Recreational/Cultural/Economic Issues; Wildlife Observations; Other Descriptions

*Use supplemental river SOS form for additional oiling zones, pits, and comments/sketches.

Sketch / Map: Yes / No Photos/Video: Yes / No Numbers: (-) Photographer Name: _____



Surface Oiling Definitions (Box 6 on SOS Form)

A five-fold rating has been developed for describing surface oil conditions on the shoreline.

These conditions are:

<i>HEAVY</i>	<i>VERY LIGHT</i>
<i>MODERATE</i>	<i>NO OIL</i>
<i>LIGHT</i>	

Two steps are involved in the ground survey assessment of surface oiling.

STEP ONE:

Determine Width of Oil Band and Distribution of Oil According to the Following Criteria:

Oil Width (for *MICROTIDAL ENVIRONMENTS – such as the Gulf of Mexico*)

- Represents the average width of the oiled area or band in the shoreline segment. If multiple bands or areas occur across shore, width represents the sum of their widths.

WIDE	> 2 m
MEDIUM	> 1 to 2 m
NARROW	0.3 to 1 m
VERY NARROW	<0.3 m

Note: enter exact width on form (e.g., 1.5 m) and avoid category break values (0.3 m, 1 m, and 2 m).

Oil Distribution (DIST)

- Represents the percent of the surface within a band or area covered by oil. In the event of multiple bands, distribution refers to the term that best represents the oil conditions for the segment.

TRACE (TR)	<1%
SPORADIC (SP)	1 – 10%
PATCHY (PT)	11 – 50%
BROKEN (BR)	51 – 90%
CONTINUOUS (CN)	91 – 100%

Note: enter exact percentage (e.g., 60%) and avoid category break values (1%, 10%, 50%, and 90%).

The above two parameters are combined in the Initial Surface Oil Cover Matrix (see page 5-23) to determine the Initial Surface Oil Cover category.

STEP TWO:

Determine Oil Thickness According to the Following Criteria:

Oil Thickness

- Refers to the average or dominant oil thickness within a band or area.

TO	POOLED OR THICK OIL – generally consists of fresh oil or mousse accumulations >1.0 cm thick: record actual thickness.
CV	COVER – >1.0 cm and <0.1 cm thick.
CT	COAT – >0.1 cm and >0.01 cm thick coating, can be scratched off with fingernail on coarse sediments or bedrock.
ST	STAIN – <0.01 cm; cannot be scratched off easily on coarse sediments/bedrock
FL	FILM – transparent or translucent film or sheen.

The thickness is combined with the Surface Oil Cover (result of STEP ONE) in the Surface Oil Categorization Matrix (page 5-23) to determine the Surface Oil Category.

Surface Oiling Definitions (Box 6 Continued)

Further assessment of the oil is made by noting the character and elevation (location) of the oil within the shore or riverbank zone.

Oil Character/Debris Type

- FR** **FRESH** — unweathered, low viscosity oil.
- MS** **MOUSSE** — emulsified oil (oil and water mixture) existing as patches or accumulations, or within interstitial spaces.
- TB** **TAR BALLS or MOUSSE PATTIES** — discrete balls or patties on a beach or adhered to rock or coarse-sediment shoreline. Diameters are generally <10 cm and 10 cm to 1.0 m, respectively.
- TC** **TAR** — weathered coat or cover (see Oil Thickness) of tarry, almost solid consistency.
- SR** **SURFACE OIL RESIDUE** — Consists of non-cohesive, oiled, surface sediments, either as continuous patches or in coarse-sediment interstices.
- AP** **ASPHALT PAVEMENT** — cohesive mixture of oil and sediments.
- NO** **NO OIL** observed.
- DB** **DEBRIS** — can consist of logs, vegetation, rubbish or general debris; includes spill response items (sorbents, boom, snares):
LG = logs
VG = vegetation
RB = rubbish, garbage (man-made materials)

Shore Zones (note in boxes 6 & 7 on form for surface and subsurface oil)

- SU** **SUPRATIDAL ZONE** — the area above the mean high tide that only occasionally experiences wave activity, as during a storm event. Also known as the splash zone or backshore.
- UI** **UPPER INTERTIDAL ZONE** — the upper approximate one third of the intertidal zone (foreshore).
- MI** **UPPER INTERTIDAL ZONE** — the middle approximate one third of the intertidal zone (foreshore).
- LI** **LOWER INTERTIDAL ZONE** — the lower approximate one third of the intertidal zone (foreshore).

Riverbank Zones

- OB** **Over Bank** — flood zone
- UB** **Upper Bank** — under water during bank full stage
- LB** **Lower Bank** — exposed only during low flow stage
- MS** **Mid-Stream** — shoal or bar separated from river bank

Initial Surface Oil Cover Matrix

(Environment Canada, 1992)

		Width of Oiled Area			
		Wide	Medium	Narrow	Very Narrow
O i l D i s t r i b u t i o n	Continuous 91 – 100%	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
	Broken 51 – 90%	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
	Patchy 11 – 50%	Moderate	Moderate	Light	Very Light
	Sporadic 1 – 10%	Light	Light	Very Light	Very Light
	Trace < 1%	Very Light	Very Light	Very Light	Very Light

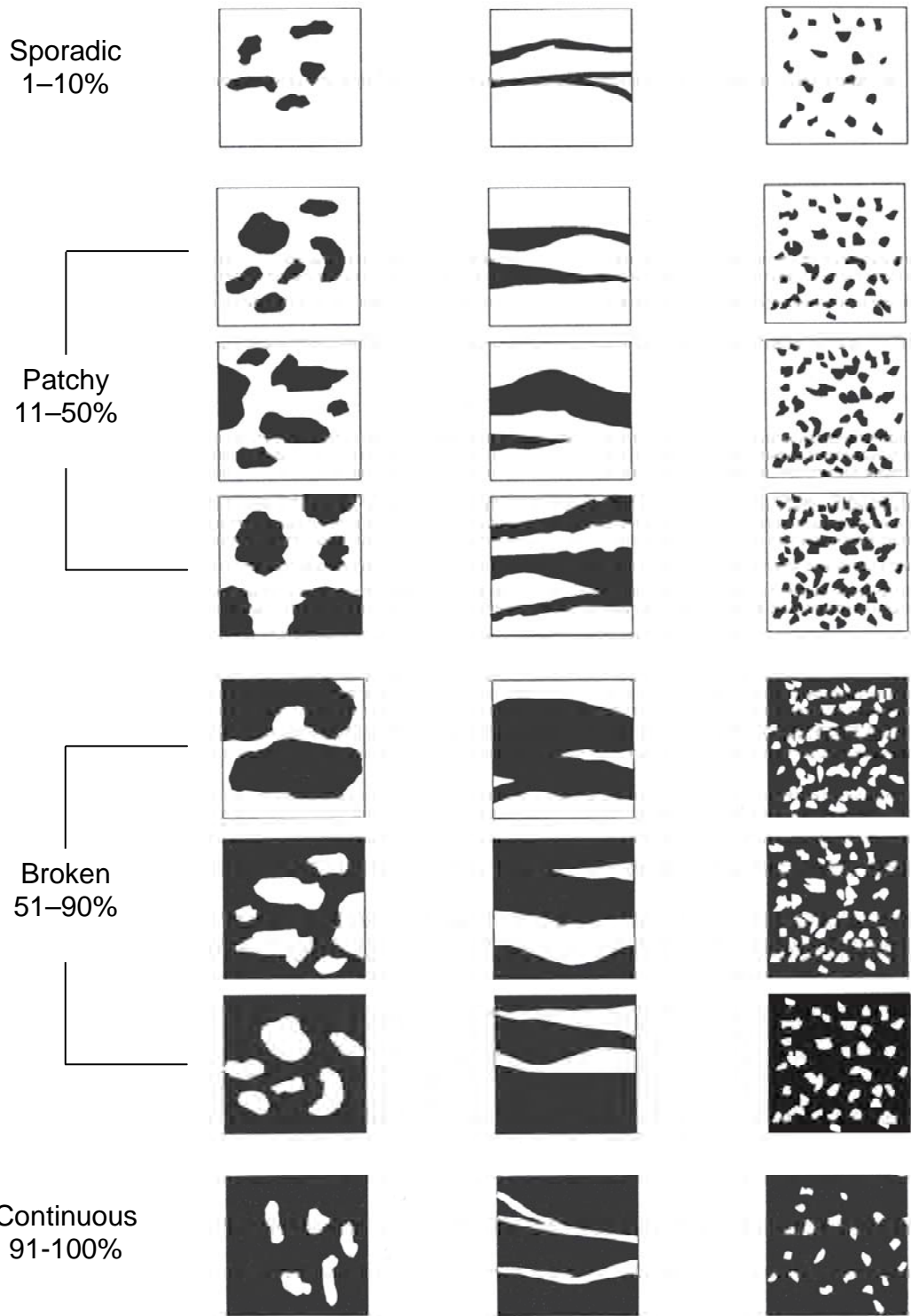
Surface Oil Categorization Matrix

(Environment Canada, 1992)

		Initial Categorization of Surface Oil			
		Heavy	Moderate	Light	Very Light
A v e r a g e T h i c k n e s s	Thick or Pooled > 1 cm	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
	Cover 0.1 – 1.0 cm	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
	Coat 0.01 – 0.1 cm	Moderate	Moderate	Light	Very Light
	Stain/Film < 0.01 cm	Light	Light	Very Light	Very Light

Visual aid for estimating oil distribution percentages.

(Owens and Sergy, 1994)



Example of Oiling Classification Method for a Shoreline Segment

STEP 1

Width of oiled area: **0.5m** = narrow
 + **Distribution** estimated at: **75%** = broken

Initial Surface Oil Cover Matrix Category : **Moderate**

<i>Distribution:</i>	<i>Width of Oiled Areas:</i>			
	Wide	Medium	Narrow	Very Narrow
Continuous	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
Broken	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
Patchy	Moderate	Moderate	Light	Very Light
Sporadic	Light	Light	Very Light	Very Light
Trace	Very Light	Very Light	Very Light	Very Light

- Therefore, this shoreline has a **MODERATE** surface oil cover.

STEP 2

Initial Surface Oil Cover Matrix Category (from above) = **Moderate**
 + Average oil **thickness:** **2 cm** = thick

Final Surface Oil Matrix Category **Heavy**

<i>Average Thickness:</i>	<i>Initial Surface Oiling Category:</i>			
	Heavy	Moderate	Light	Very Light
Thick or Pooled	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
Cover	Heavy	Heavy	Moderate	Light
Coat	Moderate	Moderate	Light	Very Light
Stain/Film	Light	Light	Very Light	Very Light

- This shoreline has a **HEAVY** amount of surface oil. This information can then be used, in part, to determine cleanup priorities and options.

Generalized Oil Volumes (for Microtidal Environments)

(assume oil ~ 1 cm or 0.5 inch thick)

- ❖ **Heavy:** > 15 liters/m² beach
> 3 gallons/yd² beach

- ❖ **Moderate:** > 5 – 15 liters/m² beach
1 – 3 gallons/yd² beach

- ❖ **Light:** > 0.5 – 5 liters/m² beach
0.1 – 1 gallon/yd² beach

- ❖ **Very Light:** < 0.5 liters/m² beach
< 0.1 gallon/yd² beach

5.1.5. The Description of Subsurface Oil

Subsurface Oil Definitions (Box 7 on SOS Form)

Sheen Color:

BR	<i>Brown</i>
RB	<i>Rainbow</i>
SV	<i>Silver</i>
NN	<i>None</i>

Subsurface Oil Character/Relative Oil Concentration:

— Refers to a qualitative description of the degree of oil-filled pore spaces.

- AP ASPHALT PAVEMENT** — cohesive mixture of weathered oil and sediment situated completely below a surface sediment layer(s) (thickness should be noted during observation).
- OP OIL-FILLED PORES** — pore spaces in the sediment matrix are completely filled with oil. Often characterized by oil flowing out of the sediments when disturbed.
- PP PARTIALLY-FILLED PORES** — pore spaces filled with oil, but generally does not flow out when exposed or disturbed.
- OR/C OIL RESIDUE – COVER** (>0.1 – 1.0 cm) **or COAT** (0.01 – 0.1 cm) of oil residue on sediments and/or some pore spaces partially filled with oil. Can be scratched off easily with fingernail on coarse sediments or bedrock.
- OR/S OIL RESIDUE – STAIN** (<0.01 cm) or film oil residue on the sediment surfaces. Non-cohesive. Cannot be scratched off easily on coarse sediments or bedrock.
- TR TRACE** — discontinuous film or spots of oil on sediments, or an odor or tackiness with no visible evidence of oil.
- NO NO OIL** — no visible or apparent evidence of oil.

Subsurface Oil Categorization

As for surface oil, a five-fold rating system has been developed for describing subsurface oil conditions. The terms are:

HEAVY
 MODERATE
 LIGHT
 VERY LIGHT
 NO OIL

Subsurface Oil Character/Relative Oil Concentration (defined on previous page) combines with the *Depth of Penetration or Thickness* of the buried oil lens in the Subsurface Oil Categorization Matrix to determine the Subsurface Oil Category.

Subsurface Oil Categorization Matrix

(Environment Canada, 1992)

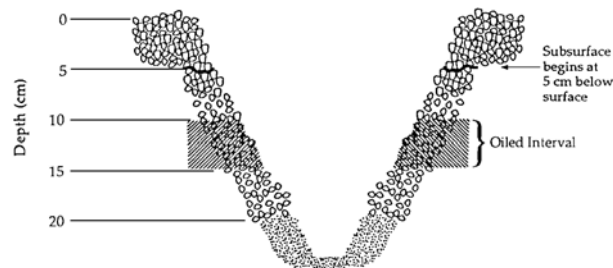
		<i>Depth of Penetration or Thickness of Oil Lens</i>			
		<i>>30 cm</i>	<i>21–30 cm</i>	<i>11–20 cm</i>	<i>0–10 cm</i>
<i>O I l C o n c e n t r a t i o n</i>	<i>OP</i>	<i>Heavy</i>	<i>Heavy</i>	<i>Heavy</i>	<i>Moderate</i>
	<i>PP</i>	<i>Heavy</i>	<i>Moderate</i>	<i>Moderate</i>	<i>Light</i>
	<i>OR</i>	<i>Moderate</i>	<i>Moderate</i>	<i>Light</i>	<i>Light</i>
	<i>TR</i>	<i>Light</i>	<i>Very Light</i>	<i>Very Light</i>	<i>Very Light</i>

Subsurface Oil Definitions

Due to the problems associated with differentiating between what is considered surface and subsurface oil for oil character categories such as interstitial MS, surface SR, AP, subsurface OP and OR that begins at the surface, etc., the following definitions have been developed:

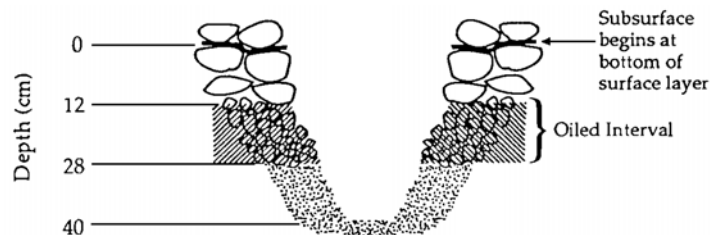
□ Fine Sediments (Pebble, Gravel, Sand, Mud)

- If a pit were to reveal oiling in sand from the surface down to 20 cm, the upper 5 cm would be classified as surface oil and the remainder as subsurface. However, the oiled interval still would be shown as 0 to 20 cm.



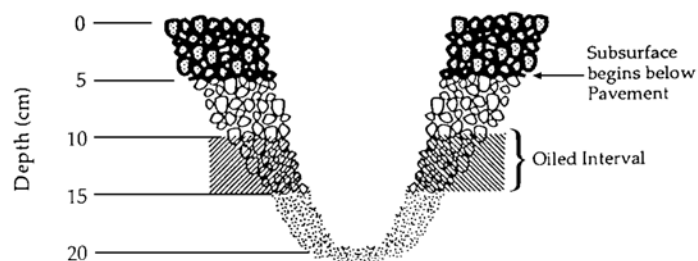
□ Coarse Sediments (Cobble, Boulder)

- Subsurface begins where the top layer of cobbles or boulders contact the underlying layer of sediments.



□ Asphalt Pavement

- Where AP exists on the surface, the subsurface begins at the bottom of the pavement.



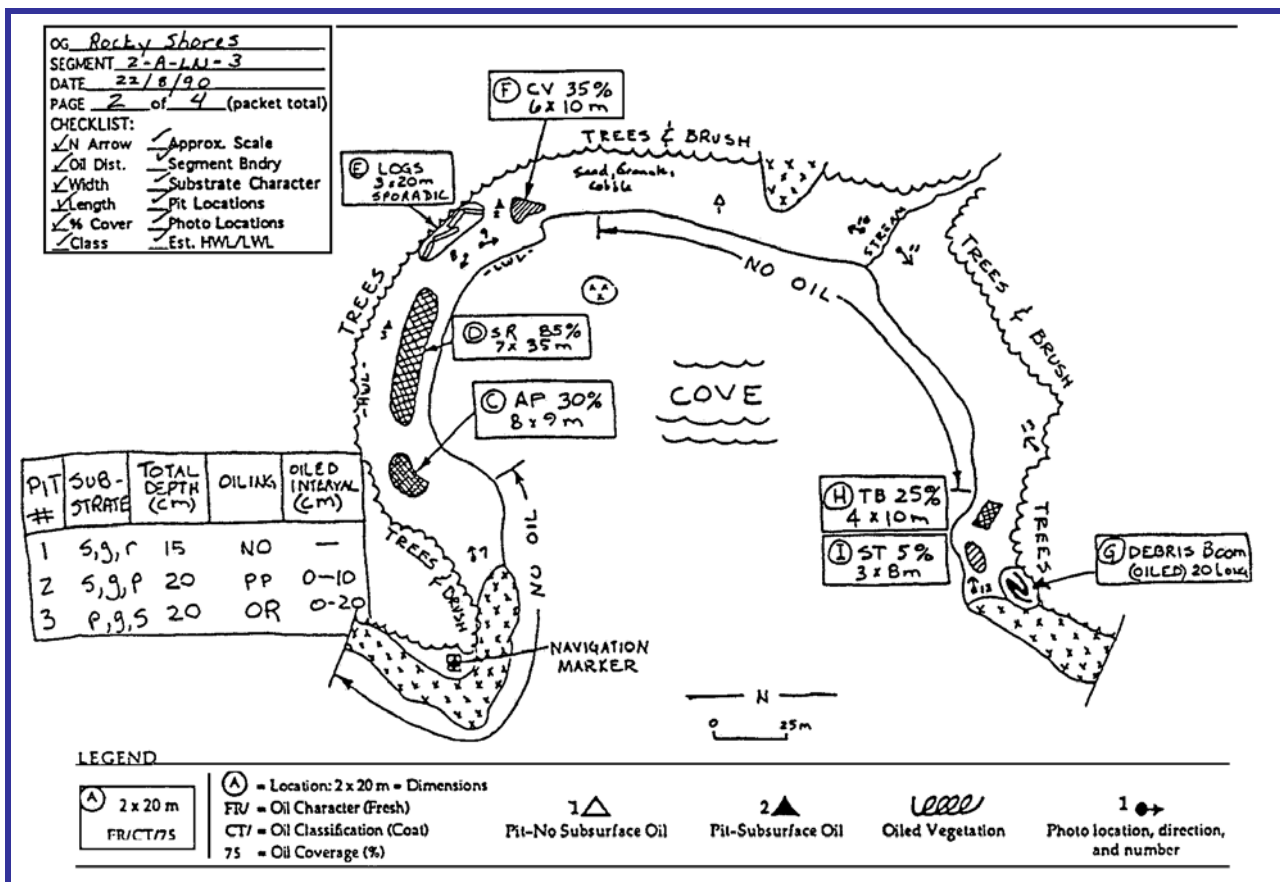
(after Environment Canada, 1992)

5.2. Sketch Maps

A sketch map is drawn for each segment to identify the physical layout of the shoreline, location of the oil, samples, pits, and photographs. The data shown on the sketch map are identified to correspond to the data on the SOS and other forms.

Aerial photos or small-scale maps can be photocopied or traced to create a base map for the sketches to enhance their accuracy and scale, and to provide consistency between the personnel providing sketch maps (geomorphologist, ecologist, archaeologist).

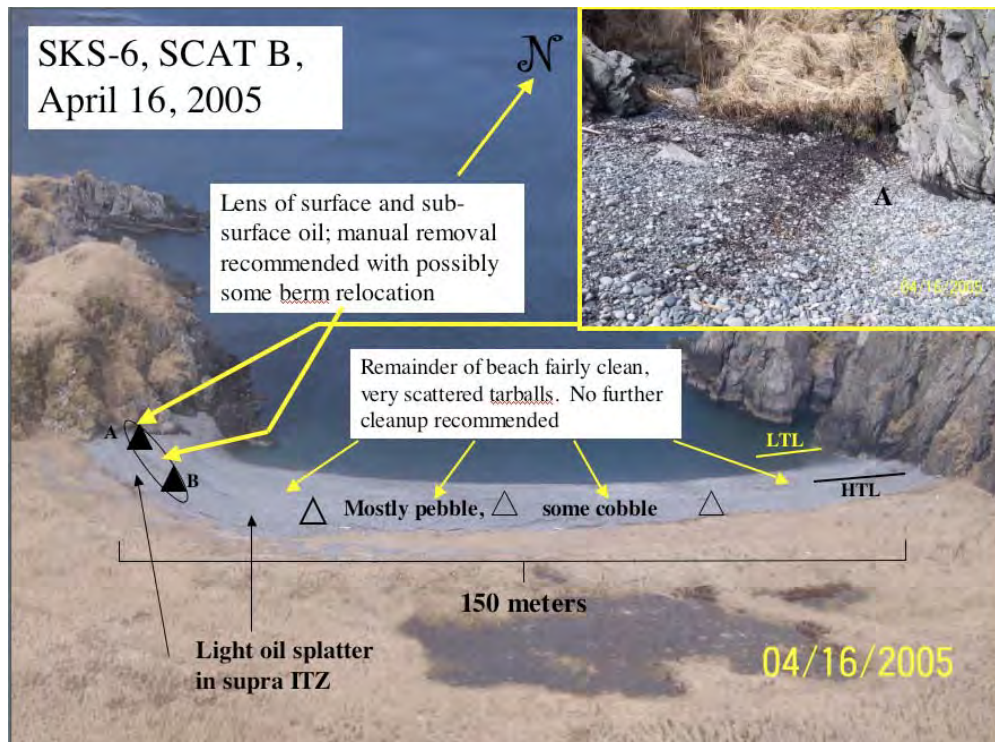
Shoreline oiling summary sketch map example.



5.3. Photo/VTR Documentation

Photographs and videotapes must be accurately documented and logged to avoid confusion about the location and subject matter; do not rely on memory as many segment locations look similar, especially in photographs.

- ❖ Maintain an accurate log of photographs and videotapes in the field or follow the georeferencing approach described in Appendix D.4. Note location and direction of photos on the sketch map (a circled number with an arrow works well — see sketch map legend (previous page)).
- ❖ Do not need a date stamp on the photo image as time/date are automatically recorded on digital cameras.
- ❖ As soon as return to the Command Post or SCAT base, download GPS and photos right away – keep all photos in a single location with files by date and initials of the photographer (e.g. 12Sept08-ABC)
- ❖ Photo Log : Ideally, set up a computer data base that logs photos by segment so that can pull out a time series from the same location – a critical part of the inspection phase of the response



see also Owens et al. 2008. *Proceedings International Oil Spill Conference*, Amer. Petr. Institute, Washington DC, 1193-1199.

5.4. STR and SIR Forms

(see also Attachment C)

5.4.1. Shoreline Treatment Recommendation (STR)

- A recent development to better support the management decision process, Planning and Operations has been the use of a SHORELINE TREATMENT RECOMMENDATION TRANSMITTAL (**STR**) form. These forms are completed by the SCAT teams to provide advice regarding treatment options that would be appropriate considering the degree of oiling, the treatment end points that apply to that segment, access considerations, and safety. This process was used on the M/V *Selandang Ayu* response in Alaska (December 2005) and on the M/V *Cosco Busan* response in San Francisco Bay (November 2007).
- The STR form is prepared by the SCAT team if, during the SCAT survey, the segment does not meet the Treatment Endpoint(s) for the shoreline type(s) present in that segment. If the segment has No Observed Oil (**NOO**) or conforms to the treatment endpoints, and therefore No Further Treatment (**NFT**) is required, then an STRT is not prepared.
- The completed STR form is reviewed and approved by the Historic Properties Specialist (HPS), the Environmental Unit Leader for environmental risk and environmental priority assignment, and the Unified Command (FOSC; SOSC; RPIC). Once approved by the UC, the form is forwarded to Operations via the EUL. The STR form is in effect a “work order” for the treatment of an oiled segment and can be included in the ICS-204.

INCIDENT NAME

**Shoreline Treatment Recommendation
Operational Permit to Work**

STR# _____

Segment: _____

Survey Date: _____

Start Latitude: _____

End Lat: _____

Start Longitude: _____

End Long: _____

Length (m): _____

Shoreline Type: *Primary* _____ *Secondary* _____

Oiled Areas for Treatment:

*Auto entry directly populated from data base of:
Zone: Shoreline Type, L x W, Oil % Dist, Oil Character, Oil Thickness, Oiling Category
e.g. Zone A: Salt marsh, 200 m x 1 m, 10% Fresh oil, pooled, Oiling Category: Heavy*

Cleanup Recommendations:

(Use standard terms and definitions from a Word document or populate database with these standard statements)

Staging and/or Logistics Constraints/Waste Issues:

Ecological Concerns:

Cultural / Historical Concerns:

Safety Concerns:

Attachments: Segment Map Sketch SCAT Form Fact Sheet Other

Prepared by: _____ Date Prepared: _____

Date
Time

to SOSC

to Land Mgr

to SHPO

to EU Leader

to _____

Final

Approval _____

State OSC Rep

Federal OSC Rep

EU Leader

Submitted

to OPS _____

**** When Treatment is completed, send a Segment Completion Report to SCAT ****

5.4.2. Shoreline Inspection Report (SIR)

- A formal inspection process is appropriate for shorelines where oil above the treatment end points was observed and for which an STR form was prepared. A Segment Inspection Report (**SIR**) form documents that a segment has been resurveyed by the SCAT team and that the treatment actions have reduced the oiling to a level that meets the Treatment Endpoints.
- After the Operations Division Supervisor or Shoreline Supervisor considers that cleanup in a segment has been completed, the segment is inspected by a SCAT team which (typically) is empowered to (a) determine that end point criteria have been met and (b) recommend to the UC that cleanup in that segment be terminated.
- Ideally, the Supervisor will provide advance notice so that an “informal” pre-inspection survey (Post-Treatment Assessment - **PTA**) can ensure that the endpoints will be met before the crews are demobilized and before the formal inspection. This avoids the need to remobilize a crew that has been partially demobilized or has already moved on to another segment or area.
- There are four possible outcomes to the inspection: if the SCAT team determines that (1) no oil is present in the segment (**NOO**) or (2) that the cleanup has met the end-point criteria, so that No Further Treatment (**NFT**) is necessary, or (3) that oil has been observed and does not meet end point criteria but **NFT** is required as ***NEB is natural weathering .is expected to reduce the residual oil in the segment to meet end point criteria with an acceptably short time period.*** For these three cases, the members of the SCAT team who represent the UC sign an **SIR** form and forward this recommendation to the UC for approval.
- If a segment fails to meet the cleanup criteria and natural weathering to the end point criteria would not be expected to occur during an acceptable time period, by unanimous agreement among the UC representatives, the team (4) indicates on the SIR where work is required, what should be done to pass inspection, and sends the form to the SCAT Field Coordinator/Data Manager who forwards this to Operations via the EUL. One option at this point is to revise the original STR form rather than create a new one from scratch.

SEGMENT INSPECTION REPORT

INCIDENT NAME

LOCATION	Segment ID
Geographic Name	
Operations Division	

Date of Survey	_____
Time of Survey	_____
Tide Stage	_____
Weather	_____

Inspection Completed Along Entire Segment?	
YES	NO

SCAT Team () Members		
If no further treatment is required, each UC rep sign below:		
Name		Signature
_____	RP rep	_____
_____	FOSC rep	_____
_____	SOSC rep	_____

Treatment Endpoint Criteria:

<p>Is treatment or further treatment required? (circle one)</p> <p>YES - define below specific treatment action(s) and specific locations within the segment where required. Provide sketches, maps, GPS coordinates to Ops</p> <p>NO FURTHER TREATMENT required - each UC rep sign appropriate signature box above</p>

Comments:

FOSC _____ SOSC _____ RP _____

5.5. Data Base and Applications

Data Management

SCAT Information is Input into a

- Database, possibly for use with a
- Geographical Information System (GIS)

The scale of a field survey and the type of data sets that are collected are a function of the size of a spill and the operational needs of the response program. A small spill may require the collection of only a few key parameters.

- ❖ Field information is transferred into a database system, such as a Geographical Information System (GIS). A form can be used for data entry.
- ❖ This information can be used interchangeably to track and evaluate, in a variety of ways, the impacts, treatment, and recovery of the affected areas.

The SCAT database can include:

- < maps of shoreline oiling conditions,
- < maps of the shoreline surveys,
- < shoreline geomorphology,
- < wave-exposure levels,
- < sensitive areas and timing,
- < species habitats and observations,
- < ecological and cultural constraints,
- < calculation and categorization of lengths of oiled shoreline,
- < oil/sediment volume calculations (for cleanup/disposal),
- < comparison of shoreline conditions through time,
- < overlay of different related data (shoreline type, wave energy level, oil conditions) to predict the consequent behavior of oil,
- < data displayed in tabular or graphic form,
- < tracking of related response activities (date of segment assessment, cleanup approval date), and
- < background information for comparison (other agency oiling surveys, ecological databases, and maps).

Data Management

- ❖ SCAT surveys can generate large volumes of data
- ❖ In almost all cases need a full-time SCAT Data Manager. Typically this a person who stays in the Command Post and who takes care of all data entry, managing the data files (hard copy and electronic), and generates summary information for the UC, Planning, and the EU Leader. Field teams rarely have time to reduce data or prepare maps
- ❖ QA/QC is important and should be carried out before observers forget what they saw !
- ❖ For more details see Lamarche 2007 – Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique Data Management Manual. Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON. (available at www.shorelinescat.com)

Example Oil Category/Volume by Segment Table

Cosco Busan Incident

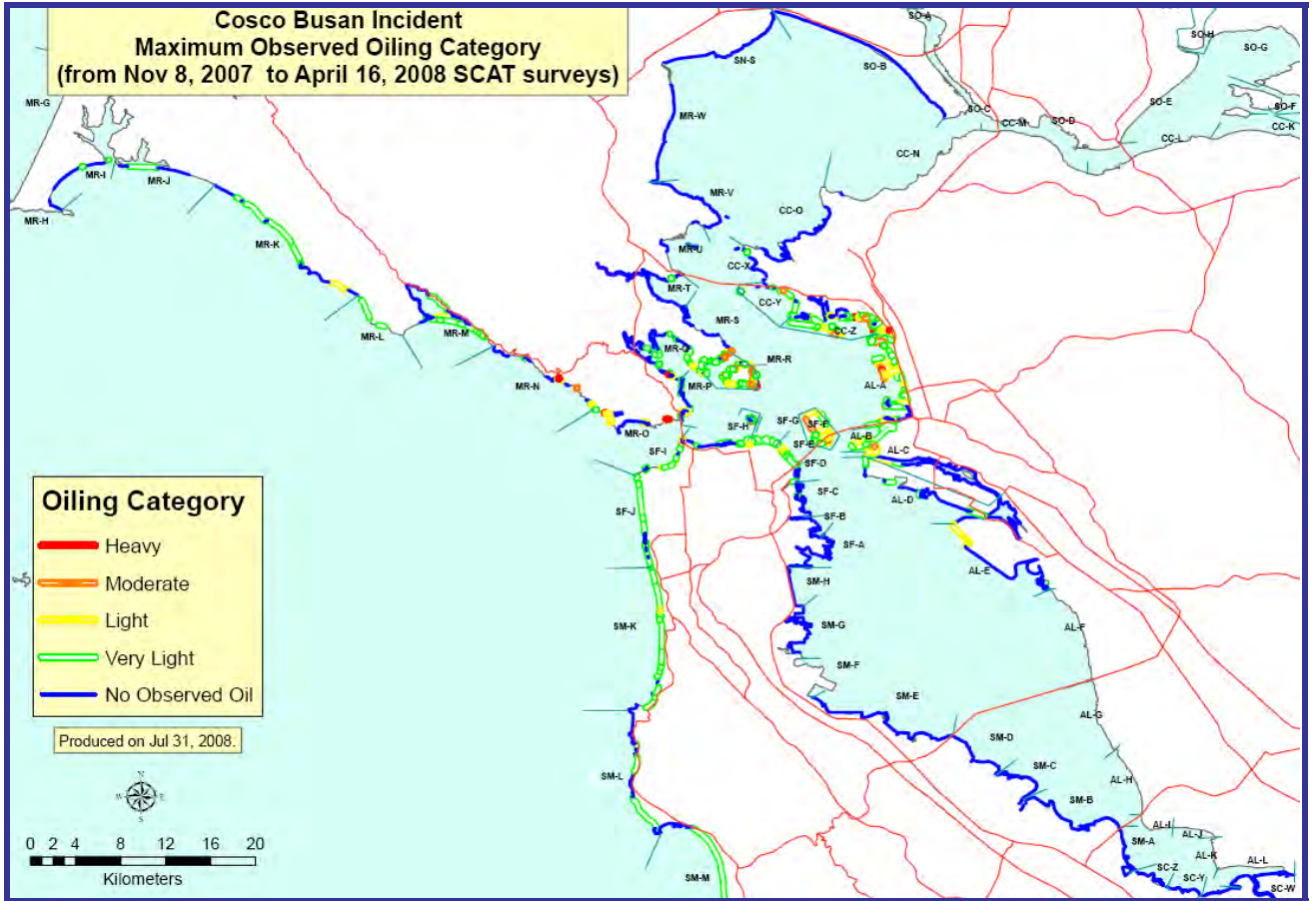
Oiling Summary by Shoreline Segment
Most Severe Oiling Conditions

(From Nov 8, 2007 to Apr 16, 2008 SCAT surveys)

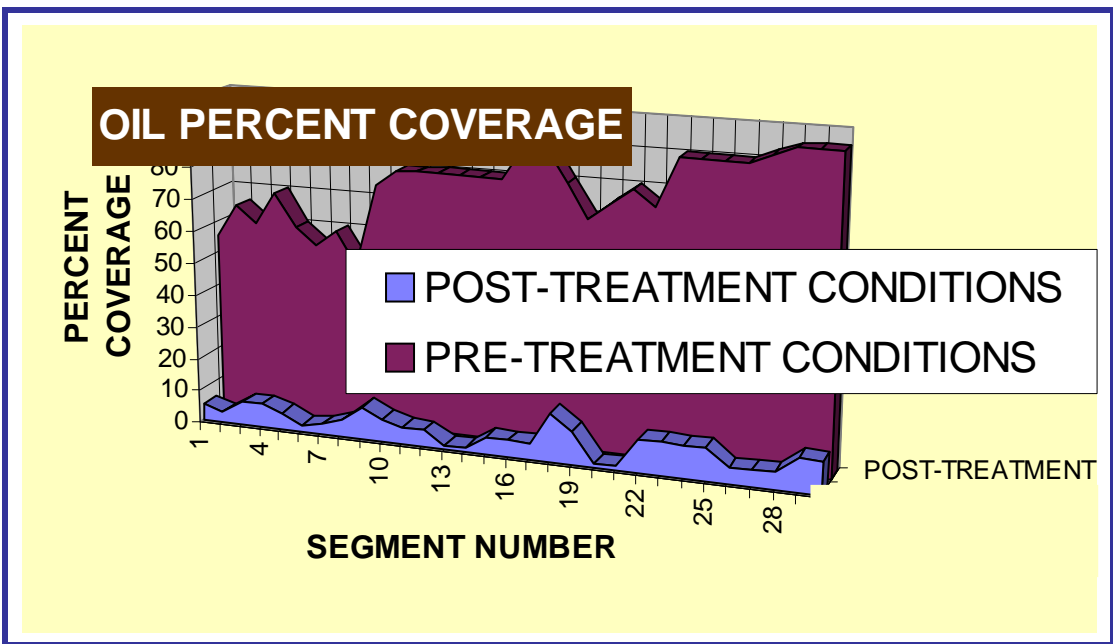
Substrate Type	Length of shoreline by Oiling Category (m)					% of Oiled Shore by Substrate Type
	Heavy	Moderate	Light	Very Light	NOO	
Bedrock	243	278	1,025	4,802	23,007	4.1
Seawall	60	270	10,220	12,457	49,767	14.7
Sand	290	304	15,965	37,299	30,893	34.5
Sandy Gravel	578	200	1,135	1,291	25,950	2.1
Coarse Gravel	0	0	3,795	3,534	37,790	4.7
Cobble-Pebble	905	1,559	4,289	3,921	18,048	6.8
Boulder	75	946	909	960	14,196	1.8
Rip-Rap	802	5,126	12,373	27,793	98,900	29.5
Mud	0	0	989	250	14,491	0.8
Vegetation	150	345	869	200	140,312	1.0
Debris	0	0	0	22	1,832	0.0
Total	3,103	9,028	51,569	92,529	455,186	
Total Surveyed	611,415					
% total by category	0.5	1.5	8.4	15.1	74.4	
Total Oiled	156,229					
% of oiled by category	2.0	5.8	33.0	59.2		

Data – Map Output Examples

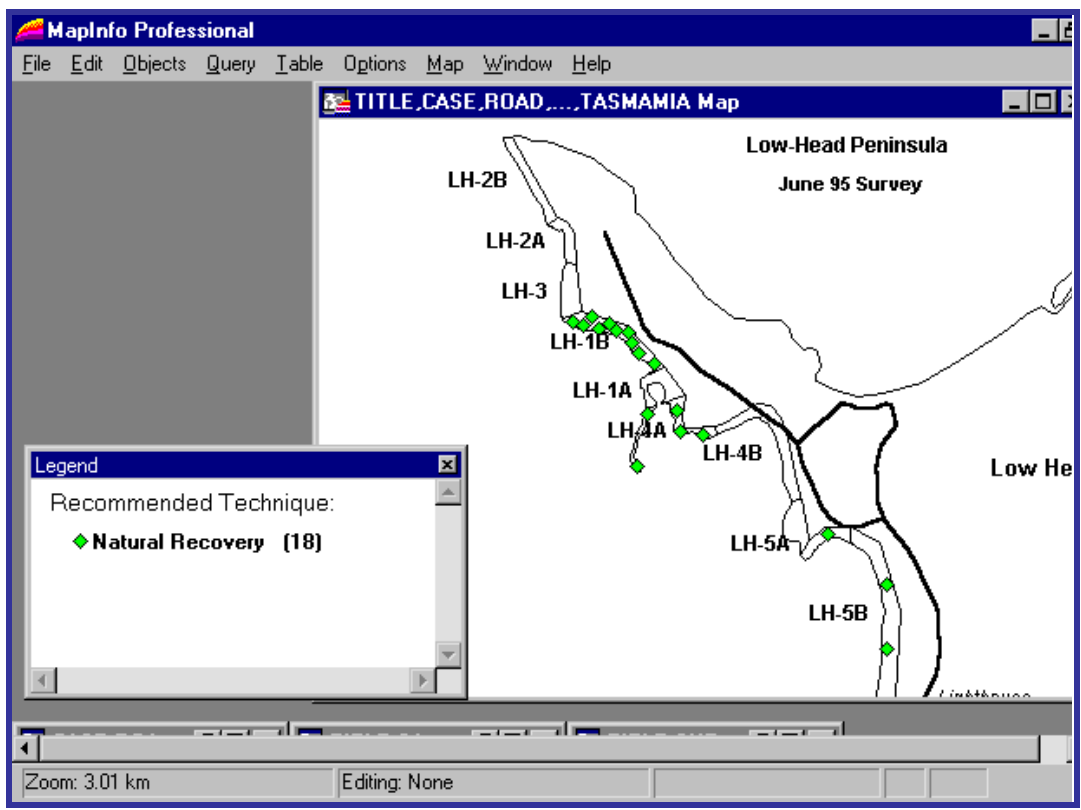
- ❖ Oil category/volume by segment
- ❖ Shore type/treatment recommendations
- ❖ Status of treatment operations
- ❖ Segment volume changes through time

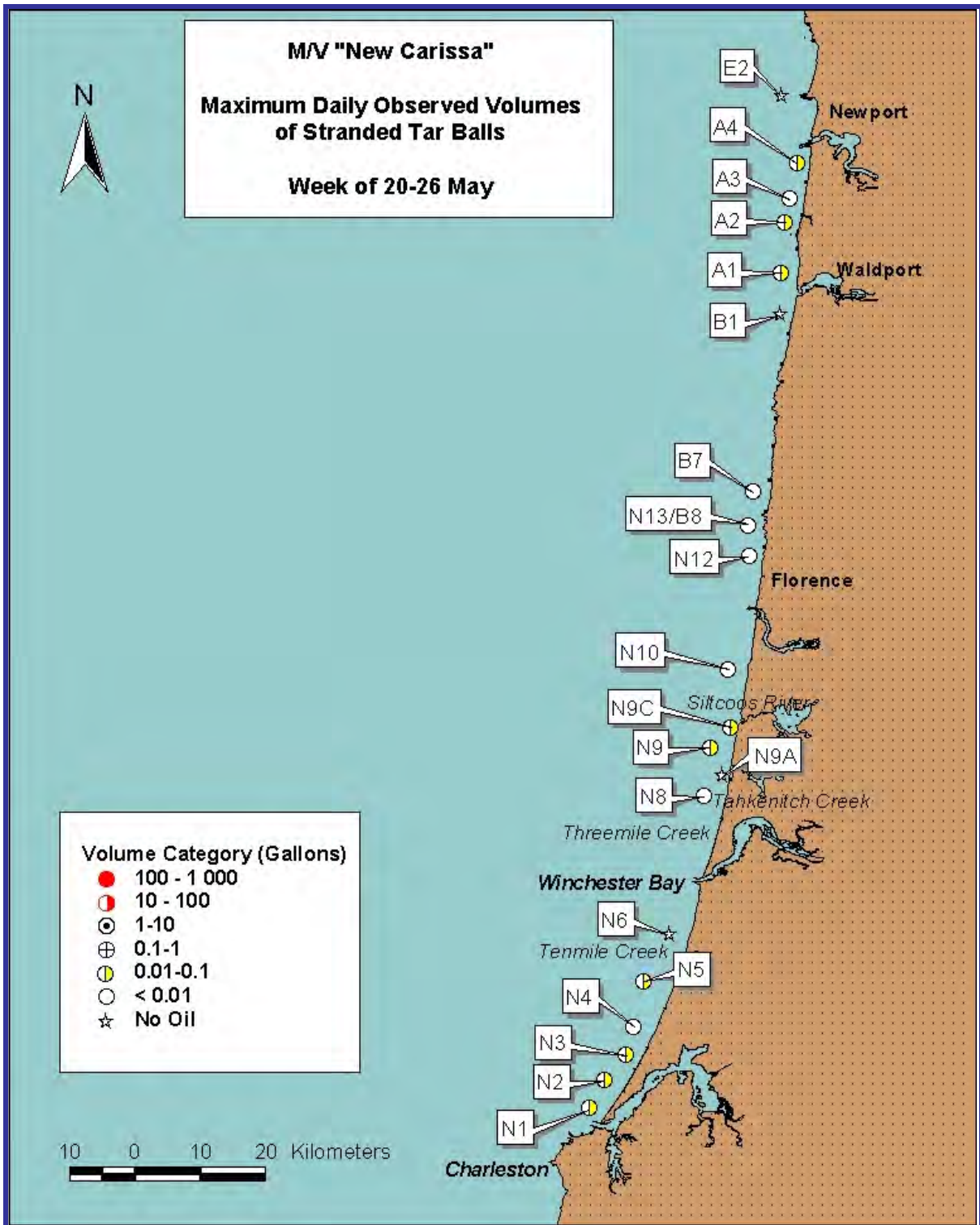


Example Oil Cover Graph



Example Treatment Recommendation Map





5.6. SCAT Case Studies

“North Cape” Spill - Rhode Island, 19 January 1996

- ❖ 828,000 gallons No. 2 fuel oil
- ❖ Shoreline Assessment Teams
 - < 23 January survey
 - < 4 categories:
 - (1) could smell but could not see oil,
 - (2) greasy film could be felt but not seen,
 - (3) sheen visible, and
 - (4) coat of oil visible.
 - < Only one section of coast in category 4.
 - < Cleanup recommended at a few sites, involving oily debris removal and sorbents.

“New Carissa” Spill - Oregon, 2000

- ❖ after the initial oiling phase, standard SCAT procedures yielded oil volumes that were always too high
 - (1) the AREA covered by tar balls generally was less than 1% (and thus approximated to 1%), and the thickness category was always a COVER (> 1 mm and < 1 cm)
 - (2) the WIDTH of the area covered by tar balls often was reported as the width of the beach
- As a result of these standardized measurements, the degree of oiling was always reported as VERY LIGHT, and the estimated volumes tended to be uniformly too high.
- ❖ Solution: Generated a new form (Beach Assessment Report Form) that has been adopted by NOAA and Environment Canada for reporting tar balls.

Additional Case Studies are presented in the Environment Canada SCAT manual (Owens and Sergy, 2000)

INCIDENT	M/V Selandang Ayu Unalaska Island, Alaska December 2004 – June 2006	M/V Cosco Busan San Francisco Bay, California November 2007 – April 2007
PREPLANNING (local area)	none	no segmentation – Area Contingency Plan divisions
SPILL	480,000 gallons (11,300 bbl)	54,000 gallons (1,275 bbl)
REACTIVE PHASE	aerial reconnaissance and video – remote area – no direct access	ground reconnaissance – easy access
Affected Area	760 km surveyed 50.4 km had observed oil	390 km surveyed 107.5 km had observed oil
Number of SCAT teams	4	4
SCAT Coordinator	Yes - RP	Yes - RP
SCAT Data Manager	Yes	Yes
Treatment End Points	Agreed and approved by UC prior to Phase 2	Agreed and approved by UC prior to Phase 2
Shoreline Treatment Recommendation	Yes – STRT forms	Yes – STRT forms
Treatment and Inspection Phases	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. limited bulk oil removal in winter 2. oil removal to/near endpoint criteria: remote area “clean as you go and sign off as you go” strategy 3. Final Sign Off inspection with landowner/manager 	<p><u>Phase 1</u> - bulk oil removal</p> <p><u>Phase 2</u> - oil removal to/near endpoint criteria</p> <p><u>Phase 3</u> - maintenance and monitoring</p> <p><u>Phase 4</u> - Final Sign Off inspection with landowner/manager</p>
Inspection process	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transition from Phase 2 to 3 driven by Operations (Lowest Practicable Level of Contamination), Safety Constraints, and NEB considerations. • Pre-inspection survey (PEST) conducted prior to Final Sign Off inspection • SIR process and forms used in Final Sign Off inspections of segments 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transitions from Phase 1 to Phase 2 and from Phase 2 to Phase 3 driven by Operations (Lowest Practicable Level of Contamination), Safety Constraints, and NEB considerations. • Pre-inspection survey (POM) conducted prior to Phase 3 inspection • Phase 3 inspection and SIR process involved (i) completion of a new SOS form and (ii) common use of the concept that “<i>NFT is appropriate because natural weathering is considered to be the most appropriate remaining cleanup strategy</i>”.
COMPLETION PHASE	UC Memo 23 June 2006	219 out of 226 segments “signed off” by UC 28 August 2008

5.7. Pre-Spill SCAT Survey

The SCAT process is based on the use of a systematic approach and standardized terms and definitions. Pre-spill SCAT activities follow this same process to collect, collate, and organize information using survey forms (an example of a Pre-Spill SCAT Segment Survey Form is shown on pages 5-46 and 5-47).

- ❖ Pre-spill SCAT data collection and/or collation is intended to complete as many phases of the SCAT process as can be undertaken prior to a spill. This activity can:
 - < *reduce field survey effort* at the time of a spill,
 - < *identify operational and logistical constraints or opportunities* (e.g., access, safety hazards, etc.),
 - < *identify suitable types and quantities of cleanup equipment*, and
 - < *provide an opportunity for interested/responsible parties to consider response priorities and strategies* and reach a *pre-spill consensus*.
- ❖ The process may involve:
 - < FIELD SURVEYS, and/or
 - < COLLATION OF AVAILABLE DATA.

The pre-spill SCAT activities do not replace environmental mapping or other spill-related data collection programs or contingency planning, but rather are designed to build on those activities and to *collect relevant, or organize existing, data in a form that is suitable for use by Planning and Operations* groups.

The pre-spill SCAT work is particularly valuable in high risk or highly sensitive and vulnerable areas *where time would be of the essence* at the time of a spill event to reach agreement and to implement a shoreline protection and/or cleanup strategy.

Pre-Spill SCAT Programs

- ❖ Provides segmentation as the framework for a regional data base
- ❖ Has been applied to Atlantic Canada, British Columbia, Oahu, Sakhalin Island, Alaskan North Slope, Chukchi Sea, and Prince William Sound Alaska

Pre-Spill SCAT Database

Relevant information that can be included in a SCAT database relates to not only the shore-zone character, but also to operational factors and to appropriate response (i.e., protection and cleanup) strategies. Examples of pre-spill data that can be included are summarized below.

Examples of Data That Can Be Included in a Pre-spill SCAT Database

1) GENERAL INFORMATION

- segment area, location number, date of survey
- tidal level/weather conditions
- observer's name, participants in pre-spill assessment

2) PHYSICAL SHORE-ZONE CHARACTER

- segment width, length
- substrate type
- nearshore conditions
- potential oil behavior

3) RESOURCE ISSUES

- primary resources at risk
- resource (environmental, cultural, economic) constraints on response operations

4) OPERATIONAL CHARACTERISTICS

- backshore human use activities
- local logistics (e.g., shelter; power sources; toilet facilities; potable water; fire hydrants; etc.)
- pre-impact debris pickup
- operational constraints (access, nearshore conditions, ice, etc.)

5) OPERATIONAL SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

- backshore or on-land hazards
- hazards at the waters' edge or in the nearshore

6) RESPONSE GOALS (SEGMENT OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES)

- segment protection objectives and strategy(ies)
- cleanup/treatment objectives and strategy(ies)

7) METHODS

- potential protection options
- potential cleanup/treatment options

8) OPERATIONAL ISSUES

- segment/spill site access
- equipment use feasibility
- safety

Pre-Spill SCAT segment survey form (page 1).

PRE-SPILL SCAT SEGMENT SURVEY

1 GENERAL INFORMATION	
Area: _____ Location: _____	Segment Number: _____
Survey Date: _____ Survey Time: _____	Tide Level: _____ m
Observer Name: _____	Weather/Wind Conditions: _____
Participants: _____	
	Snow-Ice Conditions: _____

2 PHYSICAL CHARACTER Segment Length: _____ m Width (intertidal): _____ m Width (backshore): _____ m Nearshore Reef/Shoal: Yes ___ No ___ Shoreline Waves (normal/average breaker height): < 25 cm ___; 25-50 cm ___; 50 cm-1 m ___; > 1 m ___ <u>POTENTIAL OIL BEHAVIOUR:</u> natural alongshore movement barrier: yes / no man-made alongshore barrier: yes / no natural bay or embayment: yes / no tidal inlet or channel: yes / no tidal lagoon or estuary: yes / no sand shoreline/potential for burial: yes / no overwash into lagoon or marsh: yes / no pebble-cobble shoreline/penetration potential: yes / no riprap, boulder shoreline/penetration-remobilization potential: yes / no marsh-wetland/potential for oiling meadow area: yes / no other: _____	SUBSTRATE TYPE (from list below) Bedrock Man-Made Solid (Impermeable) Sand Beach Mixed Sediment Beach (Sandy Gravel) Pebble-Cobble Beach (Shingle) Mixed Sediment Beach (Coarse Gravel) Boulder Beach Man-Made Permeable (wharf: pilings) Mud Tidal Flat Sand Tidal Flat Mixed and Coarse Sediment Flat Salt Marsh	*LITZ UITZ SU
	*LITZ = lower intertidal zone; UITZ = upper intertidal; SU = supratidal zone	
	COASTAL CHARACTER ___ cliff ___ tidal inlet ___ marsh ___ platform ___ beach ___ overwash ___ man made ___ delta ___ scree/talus ___ estuary ___ dune ___ forest ___ channel ___ flats ___ field	

3 RESOURCE ISSUES		
	Primary Resource(s) at Risk	Response Constraints
Environmental		
Cultural		
Human Use/ Economic		

4 OPERATIONAL CHARACTERISTICS Surrounding Human-Use Activities (if any): Natural / Agricultural / Commercial / Residential / Recreational Potential nearby access: fixed-wing _____; helo.pad/landing _____; boat landing _____; ATV _____ Access constraints/limitations: _____ Describe the amount of pre-impact debris pickup/relocation work? _____ (light / moderate / heavy) No. of bags? _____ (estimate # of bags) remote: yes / no winter shore ice: yes / no / ? narrow intertidal zone: yes / no staging areas: yes / no exposed coast: yes / no shore zone suitable for machinery: yes / no / ? road access: yes / no / ? strong currents: yes / no backshore cliff: yes / no alongshore access: yes / no / ? nearshore shoals/reefs: yes / no / ? high tidal range: yes / no <u>Comments:</u> _____

5 OPERATIONAL SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS Note Safety Constraints Beyond Normal — or N/A: _____ _____



Pre-Spill SCAT segment survey form (page 2).

PRE-SPILL SCAT SEGMENT SURVEY

GENERAL INFORMATION	Survey Date: _____
Area: _____	Location: _____ Segment: _____

<p>6 RESPONSE GOALS</p> <p><u>SEGMENT PROTECTION OBJECTIVES:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Prevent contact with shore or resource(s) at risk</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Minimize contact</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Prevent oil movement to adjacent segment(s)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Contain stranded oil</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Prevent oil transport into inlet, estuary, or channel</p> <p>Other: _____</p> <p><u>SEGMENT PROTECTION STRATEGIES:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Contain/recover oil on water</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Alter direction of movement of oil on water</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Prevent oil movement (landward) on flooding tides</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Trap/contain and collect oil at the shoreline</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Prevent remobilization of stranded oil</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Prevent overwash into the backshore or a lagoon</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Pre-impact shoreline debris removal</p> <p>Other: _____</p>	<p><u>SHORELINE CLEANUP/TREATMENT OBJECTIVES:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Allow natural recovery</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Restore shore to pre-oiling condition</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Accelerate natural recovery</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Restore with minimal removal of material</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Minimize oil remobilization</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Minimize damage to dune, marsh, or peat bog</p> <p>Other: _____</p> <p><u>SHORELINE CLEANUP/TREATMENT STRATEGIES:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Monitor</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Act quickly to remove stranded oil before burial</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Remove bulk oil only</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Minimize waste generation using <i>in-situ</i> treatment methods</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Manual techniques preferred</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Salt-marsh fringe/meadow treatment strategies</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Man-made backshore riprap treatment techniques</p> <p>Other: _____</p>
--	---

<p>7 METHODS _____ (check all that are appropriate and feasible) _____</p> <p>(mark "?" if possibly useful; mark "X" if not recommended or inappropriate)</p>		
<p><u>POTENTIAL PROTECTION OPTIONS:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 1. Nearshore containment/recovery</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 2. Nearshore redirection (away)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 3. Nearshore redirection (towards)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 4. Exclusion boom</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 5. Shoreline (intertidal) protection boom</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 6. Shoreline barrier/berm</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 7. Contact barrier</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 8. Channel boom/barrier</p>	<p><u>POTENTIAL CLEANUP/TREATMENT OPTIONS:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 1. Natural recovery</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 2. Flooding</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 3. Low-pressure, cold wash</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 4. Low-pressure, hot/warm wash</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 5. High-pressure, cold wash</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 6. High-pressure, hot/warm wash</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 7. Steam cleaning</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 8. Sandblasting</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 9. Manual removal</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 10. Vacuums</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> 11. Mechanical removal</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 12. Vegetation removal</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 13. Passive sorbent</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 14. Tilling/Aeration</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 15. Surf washing/Sediment reworking</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 16. Burning</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 17. Dispersants</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 18. Shoreline cleaners</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 19. Solidifiers</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 20. Bioremediation/Nutrient enrichment</p>

<p>8 OPERATIONAL ISSUES</p> <p><u>SPILL SITE ACCESS:</u> (Enter "No" or "Yes")</p> <table border="1" style="width:100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>To/From:</th> <th>Trucks</th> <th>Heavy Equip.</th> <th>2X4 P/U</th> <th>Backhoes</th> <th>ATVs</th> <th>> 50 ft. Vessel</th> <th>< 15 ft. Runabouts</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Staging Area/ Backshore</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Intertidal</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Subtidal Water</td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> <td style="background-color: #cccccc;"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><u>HEAVY EQUIPMENT USE FEASIBILITY:</u> (Enter "Good", "Fair", "Poor", or "No" based on ability to operate)</p> <table border="1" style="width:100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Grader</th> <th>Bulldozer</th> <th>Front-end Loader</th> <th>Backhoe</th> <th>Bobcat</th> <th>4x4 P/U</th> <th>ATVs</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Access Alongshore</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bearing Capacity</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Beach Slope/Width</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Maximum Distance to Temporary Storage from Cleanup Site? _____ (metres)</p>								To/From:	Trucks	Heavy Equip.	2X4 P/U	Backhoes	ATVs	> 50 ft. Vessel	< 15 ft. Runabouts	Staging Area/ Backshore								Intertidal								Subtidal Water									Grader	Bulldozer	Front-end Loader	Backhoe	Bobcat	4x4 P/U	ATVs	Access Alongshore								Bearing Capacity								Beach Slope/Width							
To/From:	Trucks	Heavy Equip.	2X4 P/U	Backhoes	ATVs	> 50 ft. Vessel	< 15 ft. Runabouts																																																																
Staging Area/ Backshore																																																																							
Intertidal																																																																							
Subtidal Water																																																																							
	Grader	Bulldozer	Front-end Loader	Backhoe	Bobcat	4x4 P/U	ATVs																																																																
Access Alongshore																																																																							
Bearing Capacity																																																																							
Beach Slope/Width																																																																							

<p>9 COMMENTS</p>

<p>10 VISUALS</p> <p>SKETCH Attached: yes _____ no _____; PHOTOS Attached: yes _____ no _____</p> <p>VIDEO: yes _____ no _____; tape # _____;</p>
--

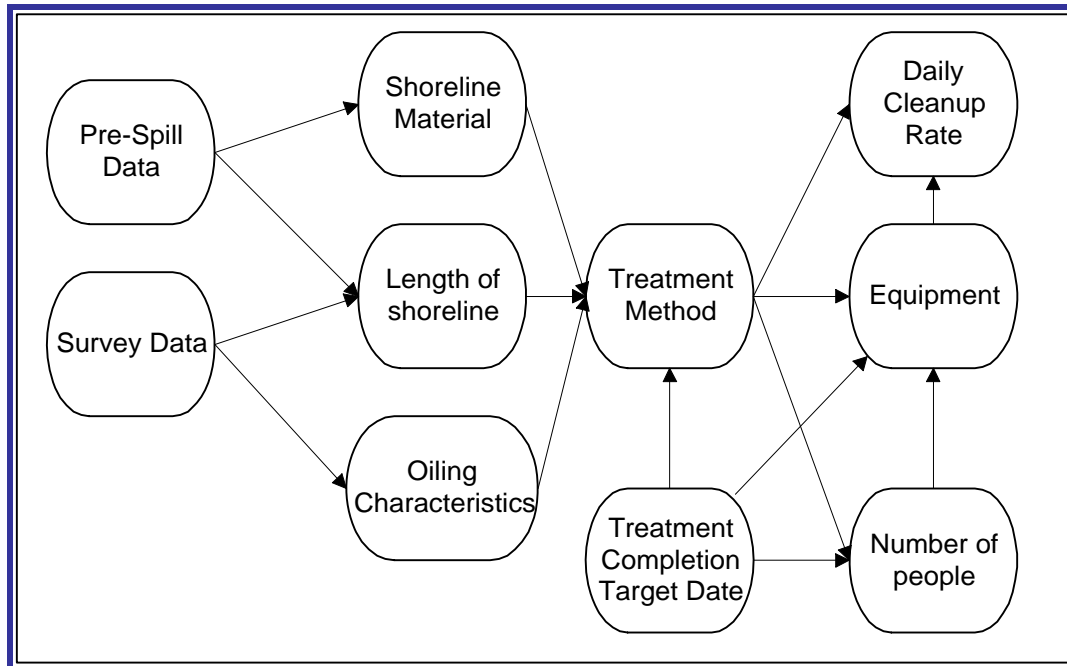
Pre-spill SCAT database entry form.

Detailed Shoreline Characteristics				
Region	Unit	Segment ID	Segment Length (m)	Print
Naked	472	AGN 01	200	
Video Surveys		Shoreline Segment Start and End coordinates:		
Primary Secondary (Overlap)		Start		
Videotape #	Date	Start Time	End Time	End
FW599-10	June 18, 1999	18:49:54	18:49:58	Degrees
Tidal Height (cm)		Time Zone		Decimal Minutes
-25		UTC		Degrees
Surveyed By:		Longitude		
Owens-Reimer (Helicopter with VTR)		Latitude		
		<input type="checkbox"/> Decimal Degrees <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Degrees - Decimal Minutes		
Shoreline Characteristics				
Intertidal Zones		Lower	Upper	Supra
	Material	Form	Material	Form
Primary	Sandy Gravel	Beach	Cobble/Pebt	Beach
Secondary	Cobble/Pebt	Beach	Boulder	Beach
Tertiary	Boulder	Beach		Beach
Backshore		Material	Form	
Primary	Forest	Slopes		
Secondary	Rock	Cliff		
Tertiary				
pebble cobble boulder beaches with some mixed sand lower - fringe grass super - cliff in trees back				
Summary:		Shoreline Type	Coastal Character	Exposure
(Upper Intertidal)		Coarse Gravel Beach	Beach	Partially Exposed
Nearshore Shoals/reefs:		Road access:		
N ? Y N		N ? Y N		
Direct Access:		Alongshore access possible:		
N ? Y N		Y ? Y N		
Shallow Water:		Staging Area nearby:		
Y ? Y N		Y ? Y N		
Narrow Intertidal Zone:		Suitable for Machinery:		
N ? Y N		Y ? Y N		
		Backshore cliff present:		
		Y ? Y N		
Top Sheet #	Chart #	Mapper Name	Map Date	
Seward (C-2)	15705	Reimer		

5.8. Who Uses SCAT Data ?

- ❖ **Unified Command** to evaluate the scale of the problem and the scope of the response
- ❖ **Planning** to:
 - < define priorities
 - < select cleanup or treatment methods
 - < identify the required level of effort
 - < apply cleanup or treatment end-point criteria
 - < monitor progress
- ❖ **Logistics** to figure out what is required to complete the job on a site-by-site (segment) basis
- ❖ **Operations** to find the site and implement the cleanup task
- ❖ **Waste Team** to determine what type of and how much waste will be generated at each site
- ❖ **Environmental and NRDA Teams** to (i) assess effects and recovery, and (ii) identify potential liabilities
- ❖ **Safety Officer(s)** to identify shore-zone hazards and other safety issues at each work site
- ❖ **Public Information Team** to provide accurate data to the media on the scale of the oiling and on the progress of the cleanup
- ❖ **Agencies and Trustees** to evaluate the proposed activities and to monitor progress (they now expect to see a SCAT team in action very early in a spill response - and to participate)
- ❖ SCAT is included in the NIIMS ICS as a function of the Environmental Unit
- ❖ etc., etc., etc. ...

Schematic that shows the application of pre-spill and shoreline oiling data to the decision process for treatment methods and for planning treatment resources and rates.



Final Thoughts.....

Problems

- ❖ Untrained observers
- ❖ Team substitutions
- ❖ Segmentation
- ❖ Following “protocols” too closely and not adapting to the spill conditions
- ❖ Making “form completion” the goal of the survey
- ❖ Timely input of information in the Planning process and the development of the IAP

Solutions

- ❖ Training and calibration
- ❖ SCAT is not technically difficult but does require an understanding of the basic principles and the uses to which the data are applied
- ❖ Almost always requires a data manager to provide timely QA/QC and rapid data turn around times

The SCAT Survey has been successful if :

- ❖ The right number of people in a cleanup crew...
- ❖ show up with the right tools...
- ❖ at the right place, and...
- ❖ see what they expect to see (i.e., no surprises !!!)

This means that the appropriate information has been generated by the SCAT survey and that the planning process has worked well.

SCAT Information

- Provide accurate information quickly before media can “invent” information
- Counter hype with facts
- SCAT data provides an accurate perspective

“Truth”

The Economist 20 March 1999:

- EXXON VALDEZ... “spread oil a much as 3 feet thick across 1,400 miles of beach”

SCAT Facts:

- Total shoreline with “heavy oil” = 114 miles
- Total length of all oiled shorelines = 1,304 miles

Conclusions

- ❖ In some ways SCAT is taken for granted — often thought to be “an easy job that anyone can do”. Actually involves a thorough understanding of coastal landforms and coastal processes, the behavior and weathering of oil, shoreline treatment methods, and data management.
- ❖ Provides management and Operations support from Day 1 through to the completion of the Inspection and Sign-off process.
- ❖ A SCAT program requires good planning and management, just like any other phase of a spill response.

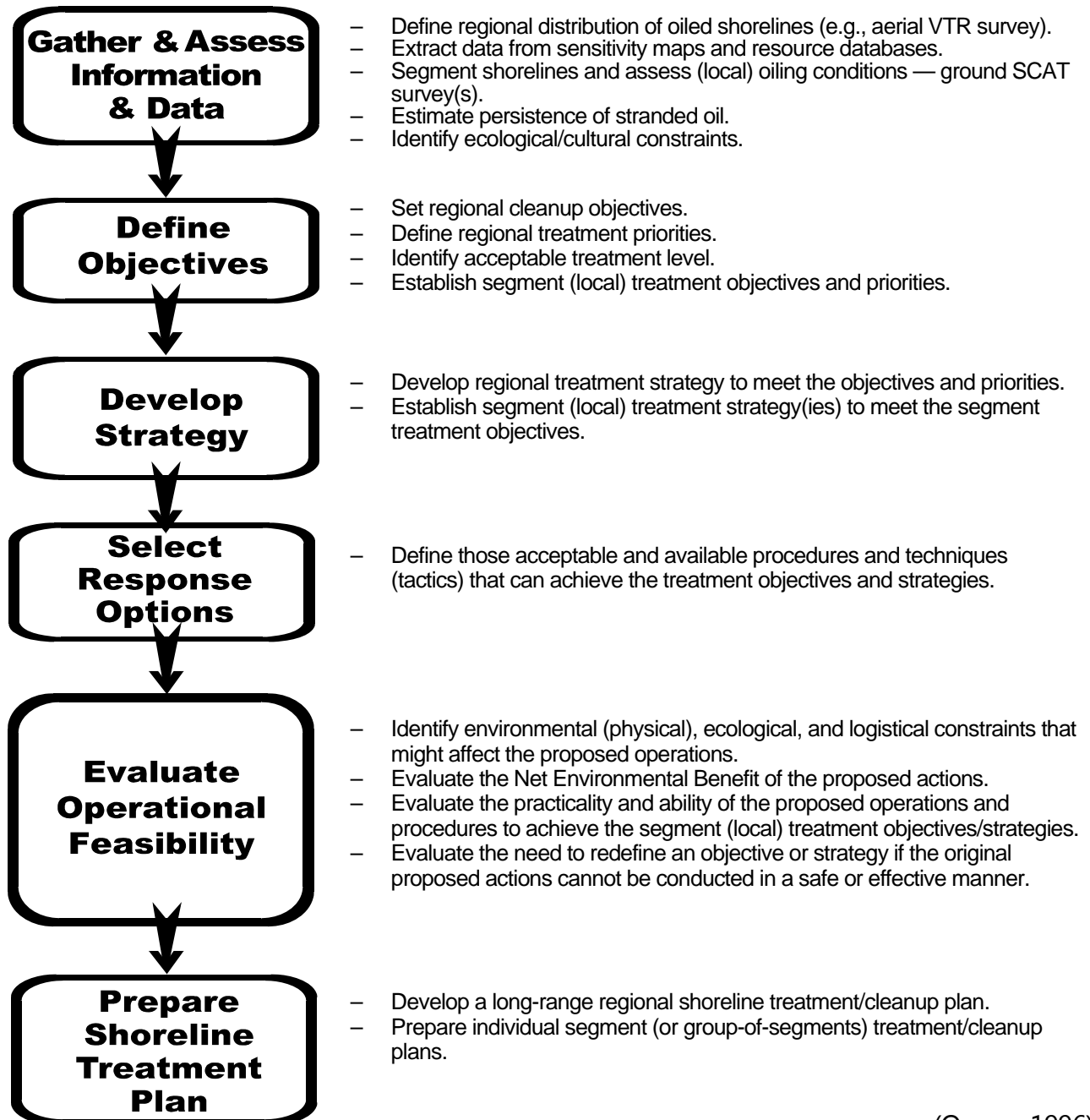
Part 6 Treatment or Cleanup

Table of Contents

6.1. Treatment Decision Process/Actions	6-3
6.1.1. Treatment or Cleanup Options	6-6
6.1.2. Treatment or Cleaning Rates	6-12
6.2. Treatment or Cleanup Methods	6-15
6.2.1. Physical Cleaning — Washing and Recovery	6-18
6.2.2. Physical Cleaning — Removal and Disposal	6-20
6.2.3. Physical Cleaning — In-Situ Treatment	6-24
6.2.4. Chemical/Biological Treatment	6-28
6.3. Marshes and Oil	6-31

Part 6 Treatment or Cleanup

6.1. Treatment Decision Process/Actions



(Owens, 1996)

Objectives

The *OBJECTIVES* of response actions for the treatment of a shoreline can include:

- allow the oiled shore zone or riverbank to recover naturally,
- restore the oiled shore zone or riverbank to its pre-spill condition,
- accelerate the natural recovery of the oiled shoreline or riverbank,
- ❓ restore with minimal material removal,
- ❓ minimize remobilization of stranded oil,
- ❓ minimize operational damage to dune or marsh system.
- T avoid causing more damage in responding to the spill than the oil would cause alone,
- T use available resources in a safe, efficient, and effective manner,
- T minimize the generation and handling of waste materials.

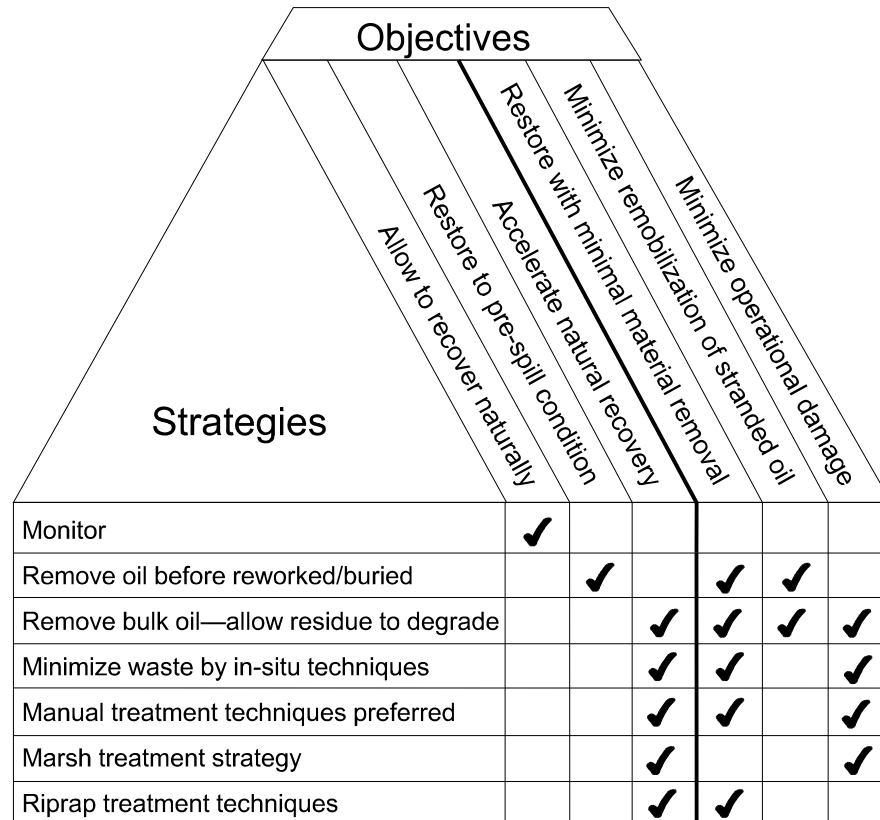
SELECT ONE OF THE FIRST THREE OBJECTIVES () to define the level of treatment for the segment. Then identify which of the next three (❓) also might apply to the segment.

Λ The last three objectives (T) are generic and apply to all shoreline response operations.

Strategies

The goals can be achieved by the development of a number of specific *OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES* that include:

- ❖ monitor,
- ❖ act quickly to remove oil before it is reworked and/or buried,
- ❖ remove bulk oil — allow residue to degrade
- ❖ minimize waste generation by *in-situ* techniques,
- ❖ manual treatment techniques preferred,
- ❖ marsh treatment strategy,
- ❖ backshore riprap treatment techniques.



(Owens 1996)

Feasibility

The *FEASIBILITY* of a selected shoreline treatment strategy is considered in the context of environmental constraints, both physical and ecological, that may affect the likely success of a proposed activity.

Examples of constraints to be evaluated include:

- ❓ is this a remote area,
- ❓ is there direct road access to the shore,
- ❓ is alongshore access possible within the segment,
- ❓ is there a suitable staging area nearby,
- ❓ is the shore zone suitable for machinery,
- ❓ is a backshore cliff or bluff present,
- ❓ would nearshore shoals or reefs affect access by water,
- ❓ are ecological resources present that might be adversely affected by response activities,
- ❓ are cultural resources present that might be adversely affected by response activities.

6.1.1. Treatment or Cleanup Options

Strategies							Method
Monitor	Remove oil before burial/reworking	Remove oil before burial/reworking	Minimize waste/in-situ techniques	Manual techniques preferred	Salt-marsh or wetland treatment	Riprap treatment techniques	
✓							1. natural recovery
	✓	✓			✓		2. flooding
	✓	✓			✓	✓	3. low-pressure, cold wash
						✓	4. low-pressure, warm/hot wash
						✓	5. high-pressure, cold wash
						✓	6. high-pressure, warm/hot wash
						✓	7. steam cleaning
						✓	8. sandblasting
	✓		✓	✓			9. manual removal
	✓	✓					10. vacuums
	✓	✓					11. mechanical removal
				✓	✓		12. vegetation cutting
		✓	✓		✓		13. passive sorbents
	✓	✓	✓				14. tilling/aeration
	✓	✓	✓				15. sediment reworking/surf wash
			✓				16. burning
		✓	✓			✓	17. dispersant
		✓				✓	18. shoreline cleaners
		✓		✓			19. solidifiers
		✓	✓				20. bioremediation

(Owens 1996)

- ❖ Shoreline treatment or cleanup usually involves a combination of methods to achieve the defined objective.
- ❖ Differentiate between —
 - LARGE RIVERS where one bank is cleaned at a time, and
 - SMALL RIVERS, STREAMS OR CREEKS where both banks are cleaned at the same time. Cleanup Systems

Technique Selection

The response options, in terms of the actual treatment or cleanup techniques, should be selected to be compatible with the *CHARACTER OF THE SHORE ZONE* and with the *OILING CONDITIONS*.

Selection of Cleanup / Treatment Options (1)

- ! Based primarily on:
 - shore-zone character
 - oiling conditions
- ! Specifically, would need to know:
 - site conditions
(substrate, type, slope, access, trafficability, etc.)
 - oiling character
(type, volume, distribution, thickness, penetration, etc.)

Selection of Cleanup / Treatment Options (2)

- ! Matrices provide a guide as to what is feasible and efficient
- ! Site-specific conditions will determine exactly:
 - (1) what options can be used and
 - (2) how effective they may be

Selection of Cleanup / Treatment Options (3)

Most important characteristics of oil on the shore:

- ! “Stickiness”
- ! Viscosity
- ! Specific gravity

Treatment Systems

Cleanup operations often involve a number of related components. For example, low-pressure washing can be seen as four activities (washing–recovery–transfer–disposal), each of which involves a number of separate actions. This combination of activities often is called a “**system**”.

- ❖ Wash
 - < pump(s)
 - < hose(s)
- ❖ Recover
 - < booms
 - boats
 - lines
 - anchors
 - < skimmer(s)
 - pumps
 - power
 - fuel
 - < container(s)
- ❖ Transfer
 - < tank(s)
 - < vehicle(s) / vessel(s)
- ❖ Disposal

Treatment Options

“Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Basic treatment or cleanup options are:
 - < Removal
 - wash and recover
 - manual* or mechanical pickup
 - < Treatment in Place
 - mix or surf wash
 - chemical dispersant*
 - bioremediation*

(* = primarily for polishing or small amounts of oil only)
- ❖ Mechanical cleanup of beaches is quicker and costs less, but generates more waste than manual removal.
- ❖ Rarely will one technique be used alone.
- ❖ May use one or more methods for the gross oil and others for residual oil or “polishing”.
- ❖ Minimum effort and waste generation is the goal for remote area operations.
- ❖ Multiple handling increase effort (and costs).

Shoreline Treatment Phases

Phase 1 — Bulk Oil Removal

- ! Recover oil that can be easily removed
- ! Remove oil that can be easily remobilized
- ! 90% of the oil for 10% of the effort

Phase 2 — Polishing

- ! Where necessary, remove the residual stain or coat after bulk oil removal
- ! Usually only necessary in recreational areas or where there is a risk to wildlife
- ! 10% of the oil for 90% of the effort

Phase 3 — Restoration

- ! Clearing up and fixing things after the operation — especially staging areas
- ! e.g., replacing sediment, regrading roads, mending fences, removing all waste and rubbish
- ! Whatcom Creek — recreating stream bank habitats

Bedrock**Typically:**

- ! Difficult access
- ! Safety issues – slips/trips/falls – tides
- ! Ecological constraints: sensitive subtidal and intertidal biota plus supratidal lichens

Phase 1

- ! Vacuum — wash/recover

Phase 2

- ! Scraping
- ! Increase water temperature and pressure

Sand Beaches**Typically:**

- ! Alongshore access straightforward
- ! Suitable for machinery
- ! Burial potential – only light products penetrate
- ! Few ecological constraints

Phase 1

- ! Manual – mechanical removal

Phase 2

- ! Tilling — surf washing

Coarse Sediment Beaches**Typically:**

- ! Often difficult pedestrian movement and substrate not suitable for machinery
- ! Penetration and burial potential – all oil types can penetrate if no sand present
- ! Few ecological constraints – minimize sediment removal

Phase 1

- ! Washing and removal

Phase 2

- ! Increase water temperature and pressure
- ! Surf washing

Marshes — Wetlands**Typically:**

- ! Difficult access — boats, walkways
- ! Safety issues — tides
- ! Ecological constraints: sensitive intertidal biota

Phase 1

- ! Sorbents — wash / recover

Phase 2

- ! ???

6.1.2. Treatment or Cleaning Rates

Natural Cleaning Rates

- ❖ Spilled oil is subject to degradation and weathering processes:
 - < biodegradation,
 - < dissolution,
 - < emulsification,
 - < evaporation, and
 - < photo-oxidation.
- ❖ *PHYSICAL (MECHANICAL) PROCESSES*, such as wave action, are a key factor as these break the oil down into smaller particles so that degradation processes then can act on larger surface areas of the oil.
- ❖ Oiled shorelines will clean themselves naturally in most cases (Owens, 1978, 1985). Where oil is stranded *above the limit of all wave action* or becomes *buried* — normal shore-zone mechanical and weathering or degradation processes cease.
- ❖ Thin oil residues may clean rapidly if there are fine-grain sediments in the nearshore waters and the oil is not too weathered or too viscous (Bragg and Owens, 1994, 1995; Owens, Bragg, and Humphrey, 1994). (see Section 2.1)

Natural Recovery vs Treatment — “Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ First of all, evaluate: the *POTENTIAL PERSISTENCE (RESIDENCE TIME) AND FATE OF THE OIL*; the *EFFECTIVENESS OF CLEANUP OR TREATMENT TO ACCELERATE NATURAL RECOVERY*; then *CONSIDER NATURAL RECOVERY AS THE PRIMARY OPTION IF RESPONSE ACTIONS CANNOT ACCELERATE THIS PROCESS*.
- ❖ *WAVE ACTION IS THE MOST EFFECTIVE AND LEAST EXPENSIVE METHOD OF HYDRAULIC WASHING*.
- ❖ All treatment and cleanup methods have some environmental effects; some are just more intrusive or more injurious than others (see *NET ENVIRONMENTAL BENEFIT* — Section 3.4).
- ❖ Recent studies have shown that *CLEANUP RARELY ACCELERATES NATURAL RECOVERY* for (1) *BEDROCK SHORES*, and (2) *MARSHES*. Despite our best intentions and efforts, usually we end up delaying rather than accelerating recovery in these two habitats; exceptions to this general statement occur for large amounts of viscous oil above the zone of normal wave action.

Treatment or Cleaning Rates

Can only generalize, it is very difficult to predict or estimate except on a case-by-case basis. Cleaning rates are basically affected by the oiling conditions and the site character (see Section 2). The following is a list of key factors that can affect cleanup or treatment rates.

❖ Oiling Conditions:

- < oil type
- < distribution (surface cover)
- < thickness
- < penetration
- < burial

It usually is more efficient and easier to collect large amounts of surface oil. To remove the remaining oil becomes progressively more difficult as cleanup proceeds and the amount of oil decreases.

❖ Site Character:

- < substrate type
- < slopes in the shore-zone
- < access from the backshore or nearshore
- < alongshore access
- < nearby staging areas

❖ Physical Environmental Factors:

- < tidal range
- < breaking wave action
- < weather conditions (particularly temperature and wind)
- < timing of tidal highs and lows
- < sunrise and sunset (length of work day)

❖ Resource Availability:

- < personnel
- < cleanup equipment
- < recovery/transfer/storage/disposal equipment
- < support services (shelter, food, etc.)

Cleaning Rates

“Rules of Thumb”

❖ Manual Removal:

- < On a sand beach,
 - one person can remove a maximum of 0.5 m³ to 2 m³ of oiled sediment in one day (8 hours);
 - this is equal to between 500 and 2000 linear metres of beach for a 10-person team.
- < These rates exclude waste transfer.

❖ Mechanical Removal:

- < Rate is controlled by, among other things:
 - size and physical area to be cleaned,
 - swath width of blade or bucket,
 - depth of sediment removal,
 - operating speed of vehicle, and
 - distance to temporary storage or disposal.
- < Graders and elevating scrapers work at about 3 to 3.5 hours/hectare
- < FEL = 8 to 10 hours/hectare
- < Bulldozer = 12.5 hours/hectare
- < Backhoe = 15 to 17 hours /hectare

❖ Mixing/Tilling/Surf Washing:

- < Tilling/surf washing can work at 2 – 3 km/hour, and can cover:
 - a 3-m swath 2 km long in one hour, or
 - a 20-m swath 2 km long in about one day.

❖ Hydraulic Washing

- < One low-pressure hose unit can flush bulk oil at a rate of about 50 m²/hour
 - excluding setup/recovery/demobilization.
- < A team of 5 washing units can cover between tens of m²/hour to 500 m²/hour
 - usually, once set up, the teams tend to be relatively static, when in fact the majority of the oil that can be removed is dislodged in the first 5 passes with the hose; so these rates require almost continuous movement of the washing units.

6.2. Treatment or Cleanup Methods

Natural
1) Natural Recovery
Physical Cleaning — Washing and Recovery
2) Flooding
3) Low-Pressure Cold Water Wash
4) Low-Pressure Hot/Warm Water Wash
5) High-Pressure Cold Water Wash
6) High-Pressure Warm/Hot Water Wash
7) Steam Cleaning
8) Sandblasting
Physical Cleaning — Removal and Disposal
9) Manual Removal
10) Vacuums
11) Mechanical Removal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Elevating Scraper – Motor Grader & Elevating Scraper – Motor Grader & Front-end Loader – Front-end Loader – Bulldozer & Front-end Loaders – Backhoe – Dragline, Clamshell – Beach Cleaner
12) Vegetation Removal/Cropping
13) Passive Sorbent Collection/Removal
Physical Cleaning — <i>In-Situ</i> Treatment
14) Tilling – Mixing
15) Surf Washing – Sediment Reworking
16) Burning
Chemical/Biological Treatment
17) Dispersants
18) Shoreline Cleaners
19) Solidifiers
20) Bioremediation/Nutrient Enrichment

Impact of Response Options

- ❖ All options except for natural recovery involve some form of intrusion on the ecological character of the shoreline type that is being treated or cleaned.
- ❖ The selection of response techniques involves an assessment of the trade-off associated with the effects of the cleanup operations and leaving the oil to be cleaned naturally. In some cases, cleanup that involves intrusion may be preferred to natural recovery.
- ❖ The table on the following page lists the response options and summarizes the relative level of impact that each option may have for the shoreline types used in these guidelines, irrespective of the type or volume of oil that may be involved in a spill.

Summary of Relative Potential Impact of Response Techniques in the Absence of Oil

(Modified from API, 2001)

Response Method	Shoreline Intertidal													Ice	
	Exposed Rocky Shores	Exposed Solid Man-Made Structures	Exposed Wave-Cut Platforms	Sand Beaches	Mixed Sand and Gravel Beaches	Gravel Beaches	Riprap	Exposed Tidal Flats	Sheltered Rocky Shores	Sheltered Solid Man-Made	Sheltered Tidal Flats	Marshes	Peat Shores	Accessible Ice	Inaccessible Ice
Natural Recovery	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
Flooding	—	—	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	—	B	B	B	—	—
Low-Pressure, Ambient-Water Flushing	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	C	B	B	C	B	B	B	B
Low-Pressure, Hot-Water Flushing	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	—	D	D	—	—	—	B	B
High-Pressure, Ambient-Water Flushing	C	C	C	—	C	C	C	—	C	C	—	—	—	—	—
High-Pressure, Hot-Water Flushing	D	D	D	—	D	D	D	—	D	D	—	—	—	—	—
Steam Cleaning	D	D	D	—	D	D	D	—	D	D	—	—	—	B	B
Sandblasting	D	D	D	—	—	—	D	v	D	D	—	—	—	—	—
Manual Oil Removal/Cleaning	B	B	B	B	B	B	A	C	B	B	D	D	B	B	—
Vacuum	B	—	B	B	B	B	A	B	B	—	B	C	B	B	B
Mechanical Oil Removal	—	—	—	C	C	C	C	D	—	—	-	D	D	B	B
Vegetation Cutting/Removal	—	—	—	C	C	—	—	D	D	—	D	D	C	—	—
Sorbents	B	B	B	B	B	B	A	B	B	A	B	C	B	B	B
Sediment Reworking	—	—	—	C	C	C	—	D	—	—	—	D	B	—	—
Sediment Tilling	—	—	—	C	C	C	—	D	—	—	—	D	B	—	—
<i>In-Situ</i> Burning	—	—	D	C	C	C	D	—	D	—	—	C	—	B	B
Dispersants	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	B	B
Surface Washing Agents	B	B	B	—	C	B	B	—	B	B	—	B	—	—	—
Solidifiers	—	—	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	—	B	C	—	B	B
Nutrient Enrichment	—	—	—	B	B	B	B	I	B	I	I	B	B	I	I

A = may cause the least adverse impact

C = may cause significant adverse habitat impact

I = incomplete information

B = may cause some adverse habitat impact

D = may cause the most adverse habitat impact

— = not applicable to this habitat type

6.2.1. Physical Cleaning — Washing and Recovery

This group of methods involves a variety of washing or flushing techniques to move oil from the shore zone to a location for collection, from where it can be removed and disposed.

- ❖ Often this involves washing the oil —
 - (a) onto the adjacent water where it can be contained by booms and collected by skimmers, or —
 - (b) towards a collection area, such as a lined sump or trench, where it can be removed by a vacuum system.
- ❖ The variables that distinguish one particular washing technique from another are *PRESSURE* and *TEMPERATURE* (see table below). All of the equipment used for these techniques would be available commercially.
- ❖ The flushing or steam cleaning techniques (3 through 7) are sometimes referred to as *SPOT WASHING* when applied to *small sections* of shoreline.

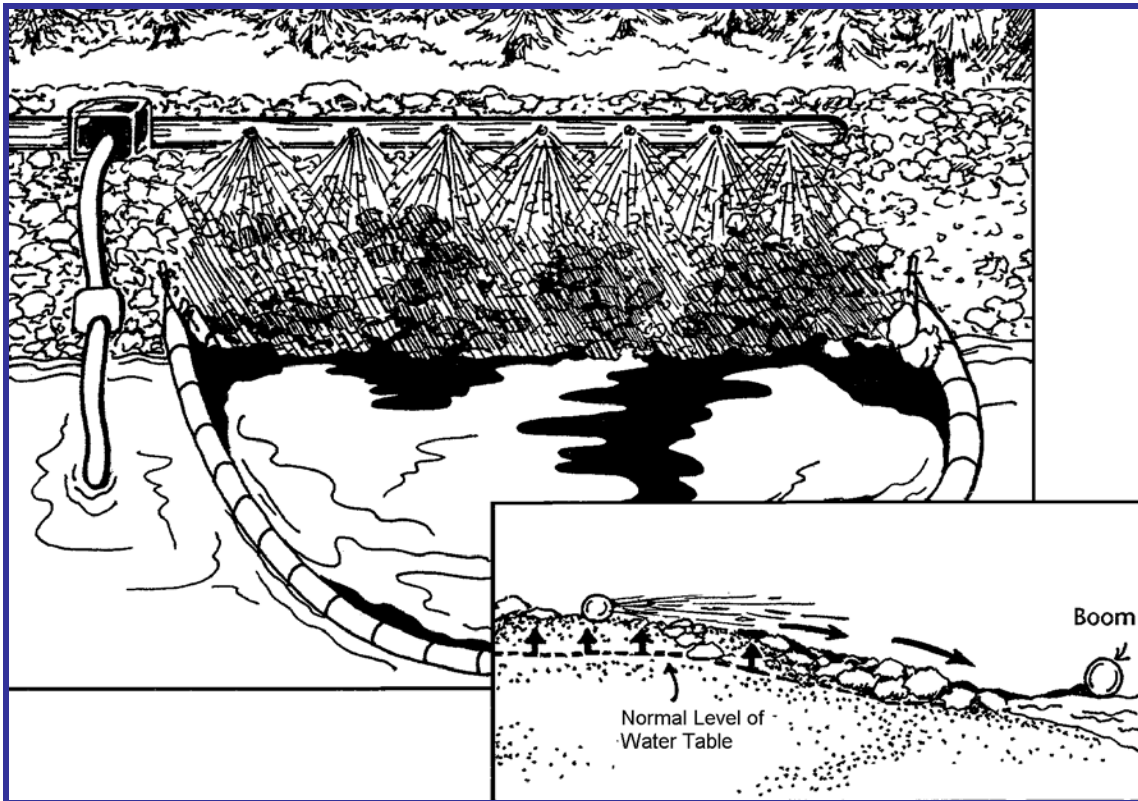
Summary of Washing or Flushing Technique Ranges

(Owens 1996)

Technique	Pressure Range		Temperature Range (°C)
	bars	[psi]	
2) Flooding (“ <i>deluge</i> ”)	< 1.5	[< 20]	ambient sea water
3) Low-pressure, Cold Washing	< 3	[< 50]	ambient sea water
4) Low-pressure, Warm/Hot Washing	< 3	[< 50]	30 – 100
5) High-pressure, Cold Washing	4 – 70	[50–1000]	ambient sea water
5) “ <i>Pressure Washing</i> ”	> 70	[> 1000]	ambient sea water
6) High-pressure, Warm/Hot Washing	4 – 70	[50–1000]	30 – 100
7) Steam Cleaning	4 – 70	[50–1000]	> 100
8) Sandblasting	4	[50]	n/a

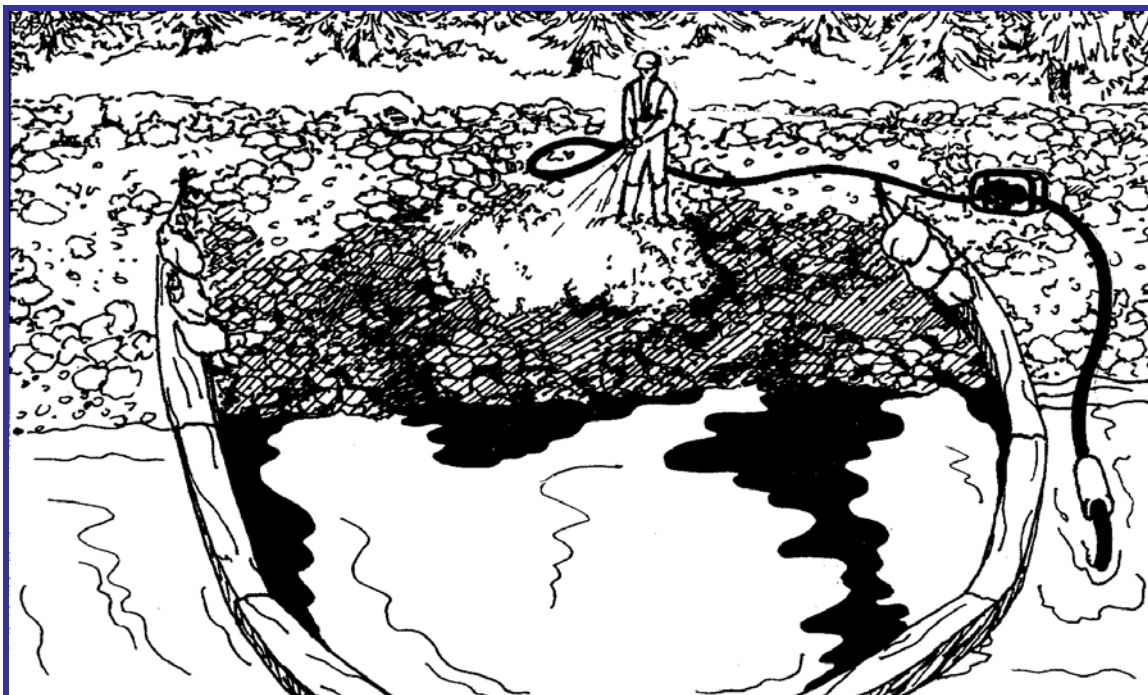
Flooding technique.

(Owens 1996)



Low-pressure washing technique.

(Owens 1996)



6.2.2. Physical Cleaning — Removal and Disposal

This group of physical methods involves *removal of the oil or oiled materials* (sediments, debris, vegetation, etc.) from the shore zone to a location where it can be disposed.

- ❖ With the exception of sorbent materials, all of the equipment necessary to implement these techniques is used for non-spill related activities and is available commercially. Most sorbents are manufactured specifically for use on oil spills.
- ❖ The mechanical techniques essentially use equipment that has been designed for earth-moving or construction projects, although a few commercial devices have been fabricated with spill cleanup as one specific application.

Summary of Efficiency Factors for Removal Techniques

(Owens 1996)

Technique	Resource Requirements	Relative Cleanup Rate	Single or Multiple Step	Waste Generation
(9) Manual Removal	labor intensive	slow	multiple	minimal
(10) Vacuums	labor intensive	slow	multiple	moderate
(11) Grader/Scraper	minimal labor support	very rapid	multiple/single	moderate
Front-end Loader	minimal labor support	rapid	single	high
Bulldozer	minimal labor support	rapid	multiple	very high
Backhoe	minimal labor support	medium	single	high
Dragline/Clamshell	minimal labor support	medium	single	high
Beach Cleaners	minimal labor support	slow	varied	low
(12) Vegetation Cutting	labor intensive	slow	multiple	can be high
(13) Passive Sorbents	labor intensive if used extensively with large amounts of oil	slow	multiple	can be high if frequent change-outs required

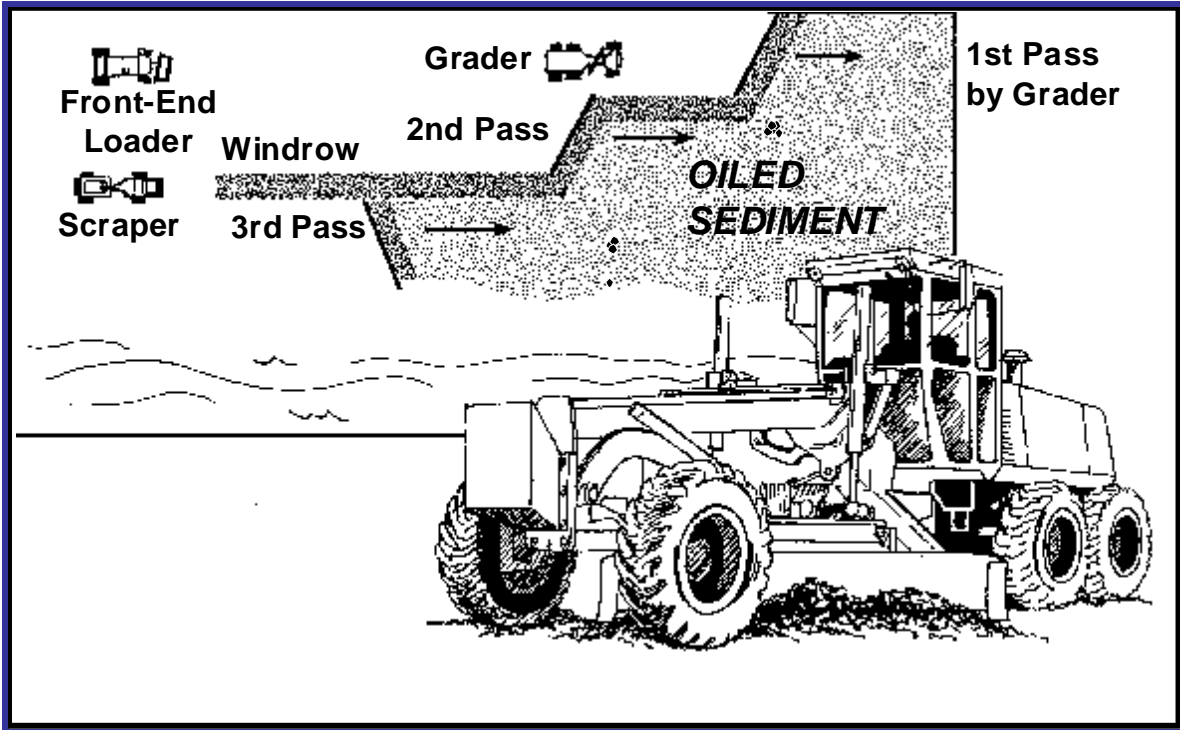
Earth-Moving Equipment (in order of preference)

(Owens 1996)

Machine	Technique	Applicability
Elevating scraper	Moves parallel to the water line scraping off a thin layer of surface oiled sediment, which is collected in a hopper; can be used to remove windrows.	Limited to relatively hard and flat sand beaches with surface oiling; reduced tire pressure can extend operations.
Motor grader	Moves parallel to the water line side-casting off a thin layer of surface oiled sediment which forms a linear windrow for pickup; excessive spillage may result if more than 2 passes are made.	Limited to relatively hard sand beaches with surface oiling; can operate on low-angle slopes; reduced tire pressure can extend operations.
Front-end loader (FEL)	Bucket lifts oiled sediments for transfer to truck or temporary storage site; for surface oiling, bucket should lift only a thin cut to avoid removing clean sediments; removes windrows.	Can operate on most sediments to remove surface and subsurface oil; traction reduced as sediment size increases.
Bulldozer	Blade moves oiled sediments for pickup and transfer by other equipment; least preferred earth-moving equipment, has least control of depth of cut and can mix oil into sediments.	Can operate on most sediments to move surface and subsurface oil; traction reduced as sediment size increases.
Backhoe	Bucket lifts oiled sediments for transfer to truck or temporary storage site; for surface oiling, bucket should lift only a thin cut to avoid removing clean sediments; can reach from a platform or clean area.	Can operate on most sediments or on steep slopes to remove surface and subsurface oil; traction reduced as sediment size increases.
Dragline/ Clamshell	Bucket lifts oiled sediments for transfer to truck or temporary storage site; can reach from a platform or clean area; poor control of depth of cut.	Can operate on most sediments or on steep slopes to remove surface and subsurface oil.

Examples of earth-moving equipment techniques.

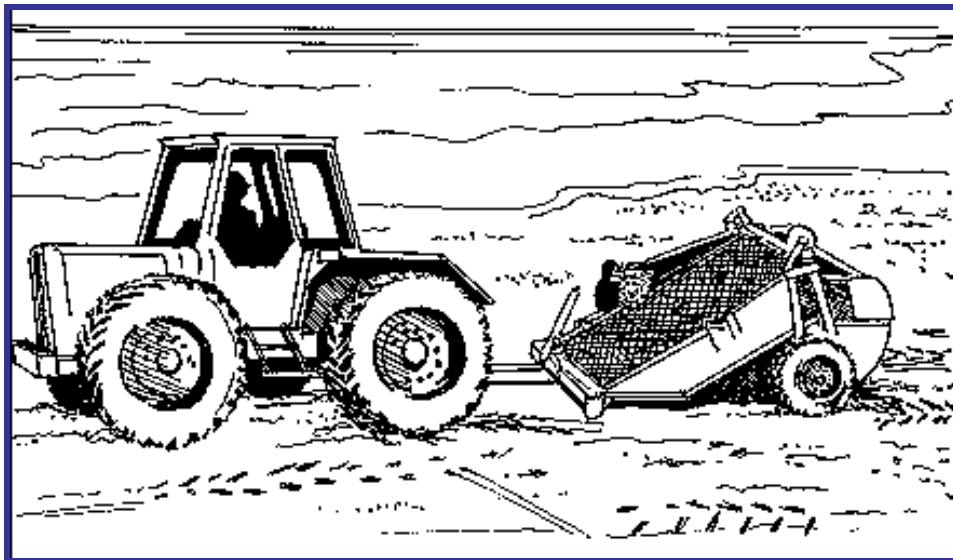
(Owens 1996)



Beach Cleaning Machines

(see also Taylor and Owens, 1997)

Machine	Technique	Applicability
Mobile Lifters/ Sorters and Rakes	Moving vehicle picks up oil and/or sediment by belts, brushes, rakes, scraper, sieves, tynes or water jets to separate oil from the sediments.	Usually limited to semi-solid, solid, or weathered oils that can be easily separated from clean sediments.
Mobile Vacuums	Vacuum systems that have a fixed slot or similar suction system that is mounted below a mobile platform (usually a tank truck).	Restricted to flat, hard beaches with a thin layer of surface oil.
Mobile Washers	Oiled sediments are picked up, treated, and replaced as the vehicle travels forward.	Can handle thin layers of oiled sands and most oil types; usually slow through-put volumes.
Off-site Sorters	Oiled materials are removed from the beach, sorted, and the clean material is replaced and oily wastes disposed.	Can handle most sizes of sediments but only weathered oil types; usually slow throughput volumes.
Off-site Washers or Treaters	Oiled materials are removed from the beach, treated, and the treated materials are replaced or disposed. Usually involves multiple transfers of sediment.	Can handle most sizes of sediments and oil types; usually slow throughput volumes.



(adapted from ITOPF, 1987)

6.2.3. Physical Cleaning — In-Situ Treatment

This group of methods involves physical, on-site, treatment techniques to alter the character of the oil in the shore zone in order to promote weathering and natural degradation.

- ❖ A key feature of this group of techniques is that essentially *no oiled materials are generated* that require transfer and disposal.

In-Situ Treatment Methods

14) Mechanical Tilling / Mixing

- ! Involves the mixing of sediments in place or the exposure of subsurface oil: can be carried out by most types of earth-moving equipment or by mechanical rakes/tines.
- ! “Wet mixing used underwater as a removal technique on beaches during a rising tide or in streams to release/recover oil without sediment removal.

15) Sediment Reworking / Surf Washing

- ! Either:
 - (1) oiled material in the zone above the normal limit of wave action is moved downslope to an area where waves can abrade the sediments and remove the oil (sediment reworking; Owens and Teal, 1990); or
 - (2) stained or oil coated sediments can be mechanically pushed into the surf zone to accelerate wave abrasion or to accelerate fine-particle aggregation (Owens, Bragg, and Humphrey, 1994).

16) Burning

- ! Oiled debris or logs can be ignited on site or collected and burned in pits or barrels.
- ! Used in some areas to burn oiled marshes if substrate is wet.

Mechanical Tilling/Mixing

<u>14) Mechanical Tilling/Mixing Techniques</u>
<p>“Dry” Mixing Techniques:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Garden rotary tiller (manual or towed) • Rakes (manual) • Agricultural discs, harrows, or ploughs • Earthmoving ripper (tyres), excavators, or backhoes
<p>“Wet” Mixing Techniques:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Agricultural discs, harrows, or ploughs • Earthmoving ripper (tyres), excavators, or backhoes • High-volume, low-pressure water jets • Low-volume, high-pressure water jets

<u>14) Mechanical Tilling/Mixing</u>	
ACTIVITY — OBJECTIVE	BENEFITS — APPLICATIONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Accelerate natural weathering of penetrated or buried oil without sediment removal or waste generation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • increases natural weathering rate • no sediment removal • no waste generation • useful for small or large amounts of oil in remote areas
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Break up a surface oil cover in the upper intertidal or supratidal zones before or after a resistant asphalt pavement forms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • prevents pavement formation • increases natural weathering rate • no sediment removal • no waste generation • useful for small or large amounts of oil in remote areas
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mixing sediments to expose any subsurface oil that might have been missed by manual and/or mechanical cleanup 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • locates subsurface oil residues • oil removed, little sediment removal • an important secondary step on recreational beaches
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Release/recover oil by underwater agitation in a stream or during a rising tide without sediment removal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • oil recovered or volatile oils immediately weathered • no sediment removal

In-Situ Treatment Methods

15) Sediment Reworking/Surf Washing

- ❖ Earthmoving equipment is used to move oil or oiled sediments from surface or subsurface areas where:
 - (a) they are protected from natural physical abrasion and weathering processes, or
 - (b) these processes occur at relatively slower rates.
- ❖ The oiled sediments are moved to a location where these processes are more active.

- ❖ Mechanical Tilling/Mixing (14) and Sediment Reworking/Surf Washing (15) have many similarities.
- ❖ The objective of both techniques is to accelerate evaporation and other natural degradation processes. In tilling this is achieved by turning over the sediments in place, whereas surf washing moves the oil and oiled materials to parts of the beach that have higher levels of physical (wave) energy.
- ❖ Both may involve the use of farm-type equipment such as a disc system, harrow, plough, rakes or tines, or earth-moving equipment such as front-end loaders, graders, or bulldozers.
- ❖ Both may be used in conjunction with *manual removal* (to pick up patches of oil that are exposed) or *bioremediation*.
- ❖ These methods can be used on *coarse-sediment (pebble-cobble) or sand beaches*, and is particularly useful in *promoting evaporation and physical abrasion*.
- ❖ Can recover oil in some cases, for example, using booms and sorbents — particularly when using “wet” tilling.

Burning

The objective of this technique is to remove or reduce the amount of oil by burning on site.

- ❖ Oil on a beach will not sustain combustion by itself unless it is pooled or has been *concentrated* in sumps, trenches, or other types of containers. This technique is used primarily where *combustible materials*, such as logs or debris, have been oiled and can be collected and burned, or where vegetation, such as a marsh, has been heavily oiled.
- ❖ Burning efficiency can be improved by the use of fans to provide wind in burn piles.
- ❖ Torches can be used to burn oil from hard substrates but this is a labor-intensive method that uses large amounts of energy to remove small amounts of oil.
- ❖ Burning equipment, such as mobile incinerators, may be used if available and if they can be transported to the site.
- ❖ Burning is applicable primarily for *OILED PEAT, LOGS, or DEBRIS*, or where oil has been collected and can be ignited with sustained combustion in sumps or drums.
- ❖ Burning has been used effectively for *OIL SPILLS ON ICE*.
- ❖ Burning of *heavily oiled marsh vegetation* has a major impact on the ecosystem if the marsh soils are dry, as the root systems can be destroyed. Wet soils protect the root systems from heat damage so that recovery from burning is more rapid.
- ❖ Burning may require that appropriate permit(s) be obtained.

6.2.4. Chemical/Biological Treatment

Chemical / Biological Methods

- (17) Dispersants
- (18) Shoreline Cleaners
- (19) Solidifiers and Visco-Elastic Agents
- (20) Nutrient Enrichment / Bioremediation

This group of methods involves chemical agents or nutrients that alter the character of the stranded oil either to:

- < *FACILITATE REMOVAL* of the oil from the shore zone, or
- < *ACCELERATE IN-SITU WEATHERING*.
- ❖ Nutrient enrichment and bioremediation can use products that have been developed for other applications.
- ❖ All of the other techniques involve agents or materials that are *designed specifically for oil spill response* and that are available commercially from manufacturers and/or suppliers.
- ❖ Only dispersant application (17) and bioremediation (20) are *stand-alone techniques*, the remaining methods require an additional removal component.

Dispersants

- ! Most effective on very light oils (90%)
- ! Hibernia – Prudhoe Bay medium crude oils effectiveness 5 – 20%
- ! Bunker C effectiveness 1 – 2%
- ! Less effective on weathered oils vs. fresh counterparts

Surface-Washing Agents

- ! Soak and rinse process
- ! Low dispersant effectiveness so oil can be recovered

<u>Dispersants</u>	vs.	<u>Surface-Washing Agents</u>
(Dispersancy)		(Detergency)
Oil made into fine droplets		Oil removed from solid surface

- ! A good dispersant is a poor detergent and vice-versa.

Potential application of treatment agent by oil type

(after Walker *et al.*, 1993)

Agent	Oil Type/Degree of Weathering		
	Light	Medium	Heavy
(19) Solidifiers			
(19) Visco-Elastic Agents			
(18) Shoreline Cleaners			
(18) Shoreline Cleaners as a Pre-soak			

Key:

Most Effective	
Moderately effective	
Least effective/appropriate	
Ineffective	

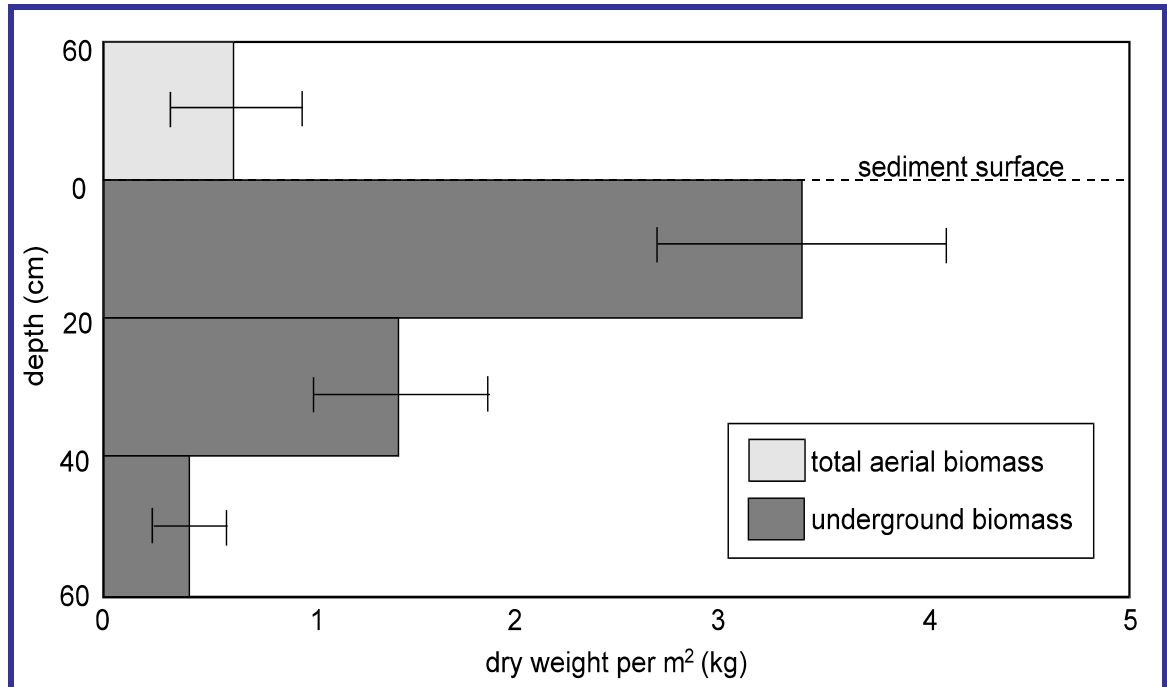
Bioremediation

- ❖ The objective of this technique is to accelerate natural biodegradation processes by the addition of nutrients (fertilizers containing nitrogen and phosphorous).
- ❖ Naturally occurring micro-organisms (bacteria) use oxygen to convert hydrocarbons into water and carbon dioxide. There are few locations where these oil-degrading organisms do not exist, as they are primarily carried to the shoreline in the nearshore waters. This process usually occurs at the water interface and is limited by *oxygen* and *nutrient availability* and by the *exposed surface area* of the oil. If these three factors can be increased, then the rate of biodegradation can be *accelerated*.
- ❖ Fertilizers can be obtained in solid or liquid form. Solid fertilizers, such as pellets, can be *broadcast* using seed spreaders such as are used on lawns or fields. On contact with water, the fertilizer slowly dissolves and releases water-soluble nutrients over time. Liquid fertilizers can be *sprayed* onto a shoreline using a number of commercially available types of equipment, such as paint sprayers or backpacks.
- ❖ This technique is appropriate to accelerate biodegradation on residual oil ("*polishing*") after other techniques have been used to remove mobile or bulk oil from the shoreline.
- ❖ Applications may be repeated periodically (weeks or months as applicable) to continue the supply of nutrients.
- ❖ Fertilizers may be used alone on a shore to degrade residual surface and/or subsurface oil, but the process is *more effective if combined with tilling* or other methods of breaking the oil into smaller particles, thereby significantly increasing the surface area for the micro-organisms to affect.
- ❖ Nutrient enrichment/bioremediation is an effective but relatively slow process compared to other response options. The rate of biodegradation decreases with lower temperatures so that nutrient enrichment is more effective during warmer summer months.

Λ Hoff, 1992, discusses biodegradation vs. bioremediation, and discusses the pros and cons of nutrient addition, microbial addition, and open water bioremediation. Bioremediation is discussed in more detail by Prince, 1993.

6.3. Marshes and Oil

In summer, most biomass is in the top 20 cm of the sediment. Surface oil is less damaging than oil that penetrates the marsh or that is forced into the subsurface (e.g., by trampling or mixing).



Often, cleanup actions can delay, rather than accelerate, natural recovery of oiled marshes.

“AMOCO CADIZ” Oiled Marsh Cleanup — % Change in Area 1971 – 1990

(Baker et al., 1994)

Location	% Change	Result
Ile Grande boat harbor	-39%	Cleaned
Ile Grande North marsh	-35%	Cleaned
Ile Grande — Notenno	-26%	Cleaned
Cantel	+21%	Not Cleaned

Freshwater/Brackish Marshes

- ❖ Many species of plants (100s) compared to salt marshes (10s)
 - < therefore, difficult to predict response to oil.
- ❖ Inundation frequency low (<20 days/year)
 - < therefore, edge effects more likely than areal interior oiling.
- ❖ Organic content high (50-80%):
 - < predominantly root systems,
 - < very porous,
 - < poor bearing capacity.

In general:

- ❖ Saline marshes are:
 - < better understood,
 - < less sensitive,
 - < more vulnerable, and
 - < easier to access
- than freshwater/brackish marshes

Part 7 Waste Management and Operational Considerations

Table of Contents

7.1. Waste Separation, Transfer, and Disposal	7-3
7.1.1. Waste Generation	7-6
7.1.2. Waste Segregation	7-9
7.1.3. Waste Handling	7-10
7.1.4. Packaging, Storage, Transportation, and Disposal	7-13
7.1.5. Waste Management "Rules of Thumb"	7-15
7.2. Operational Considerations	7-16
7.2.1. Response in Remote Areas	7-26

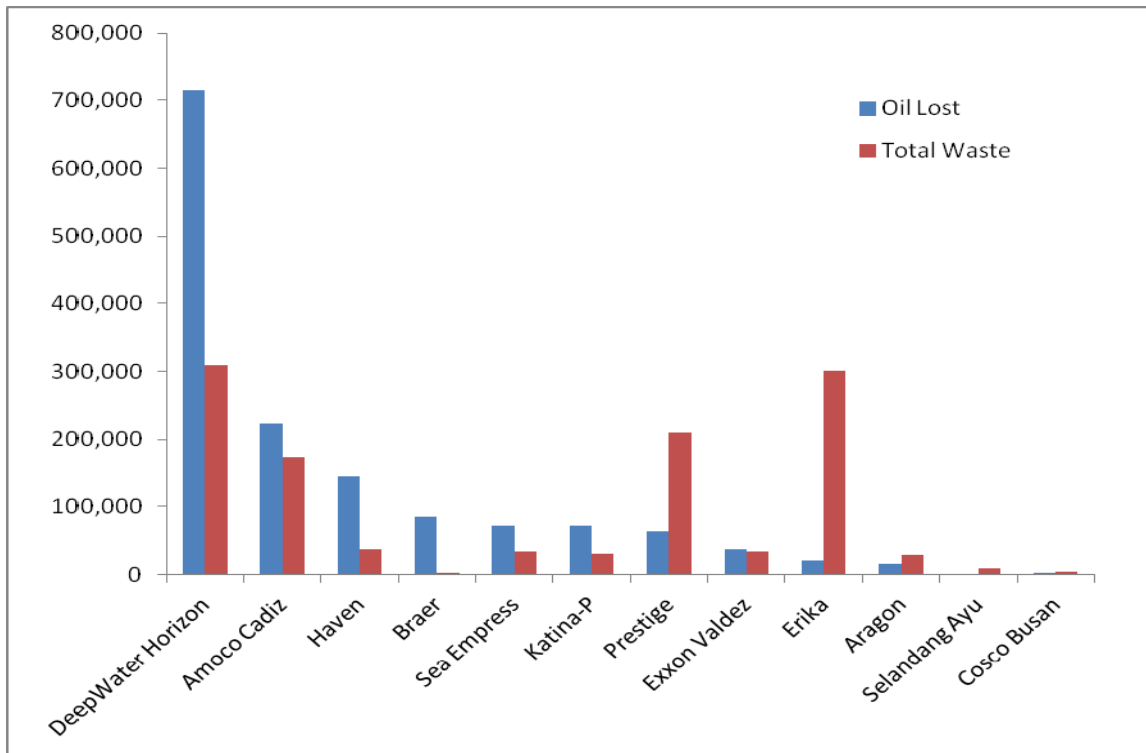
Part 7 Waste Management and Operational Considerations

7.1. Waste Separation, Transfer, and Disposal

Different types and amounts of waste will be generated by a response operation depending on the:

- < size of the spill,
- < shoreline types where the oil becomes stranded,
- < the treatment end points selected by the spill management team, and
- < the treatment or cleanup method(s) implemented.

There is no direct link between the volumes of waste generated and the original amount of spilled oil. The response to the T/V *Erika* spill generated more waste as compared to that generated following the T/V *Amoco Cadiz*, although the volume spilled was an order of magnitude less.

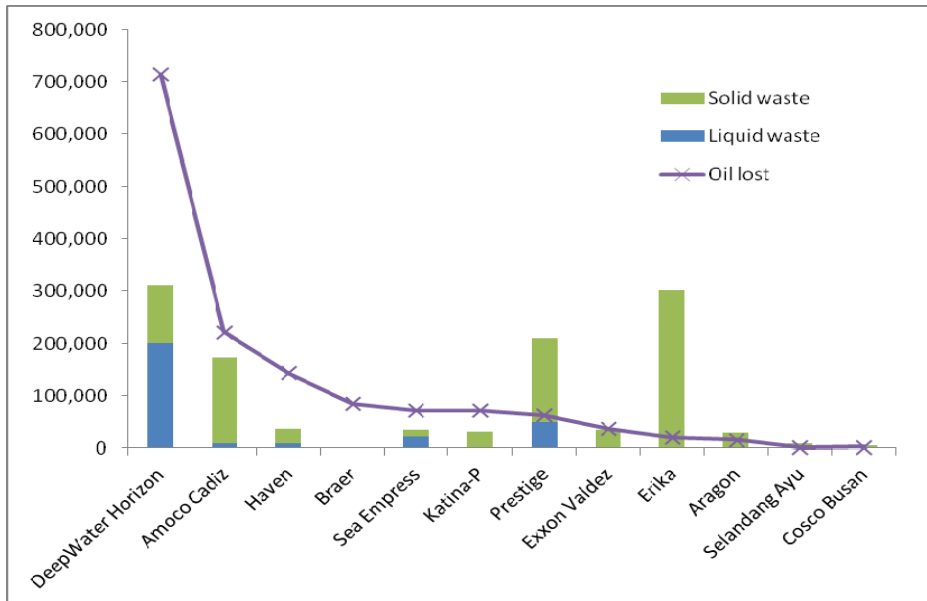


Comparison of spill volumes (tonnes) (adapted and revised from IPIECA 2004)

Examples of liquid and solid wastes generated from marine oil spill response operations (in part from IPIECA 2004 and ITOPF^a)

INCIDENT	OIL LOST (tonnes)	LIQUID WASTES (tonnes)	SOLID WASTE (tonnes)
T/V Amoco Cadiz	223,000	8,500	165,000
T/V Haven	144,000	9,000	28,000
T/V Braer	85,000	0	2,000
T/V Sea Empress	72,000	22,000	12,000
T/V Katina-P	72,000	1,400	30,000
T/V Prestige	63,000	50,000	160,000
T/V Metula	54,000	0	0
T/V Exxon Valdez	37,000	1,300	33,000
T/V Erika	20,000	1,000	300,000
T/V Aragon	15,000	1,200	28,000
M/V Selandang Ayu	1,000	0	8,400

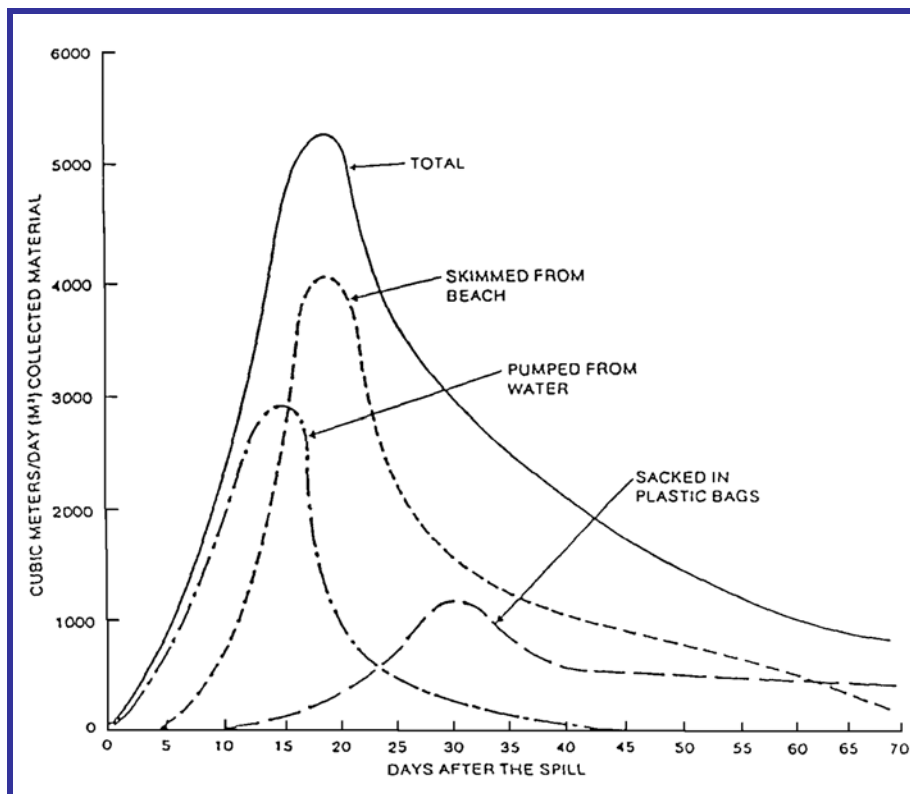
^a www.itopf.com



Examples of solid versus liquid waste generated (tonnes)

- ❖ Usually, more than one cleanup technique will be implemented so that more than one waste type will be generated at any one cleanup site.

Cubic meters of oil and oil contaminated material pumped, skimmed, and sacked in the Finister region during the *Amoco Cadiz* cleanup.



(from Exxon, 1979)

- ❖ Oil and oily debris, as well as non-oiled waste from the response operations, may or may not be generated; in some instances, oiled materials may be treated on site or left to natural recovery.

The **objectives of waste management** are to:
minimize waste generation, and
minimize waste handling and disposal.

Λ The *BEST PRACTICES OF WASTE MANAGEMENT* involve:

- < separation of the waste types as they are generated, and
- < identifying the ultimate fate of the waste types, so that they can be
- < packaged, handled, and stored appropriately

Start at the beginning: **separate** waste types at source
Identify ultimate fate of waste types:
package / handle / store appropriately

7.1.1. Waste Generation

In-situ treatment is the preferred response option in terms of waste minimization.

- ❖ All of the *in-situ* treatment techniques (see table below) have significant advantages over wholesale waste removal, especially when treating sediments:
 - < materials remain in place, decreasing the potential for erosion,
 - < the techniques are relatively quick and increase cleanup efficiency,
 - < the techniques employ fewer workers and decrease secondary environmental impacts from cleanup and disposal.
- ❖ *In-situ* treatment is also the preferred option in terms of cost minimization.

❖

**Shoreline Cleanup and Treatment Methods —
In Situ vs. Methods Requiring Some Type of Off-Site Disposal**

<u><i>In Situ</i></u>	<u><i>Off-Site Disposal</i></u>
Natural Recovery	Flooding
Sediment Tilling	Washing
Surf Washing	Spot Washing
Log/Debris Burning	Steam Cleaning
Dispersants	Sandblasting
Bioremediation	Manual Removal
	Vacuum/Skimming
	Mechanical Removal
	Vegetation Cutting
	Passive Sorbents
	Shoreline Cleaners
	Visco-elastic Agents/Solidifiers

Waste Materials Generated by Shoreline Cleanup Methods

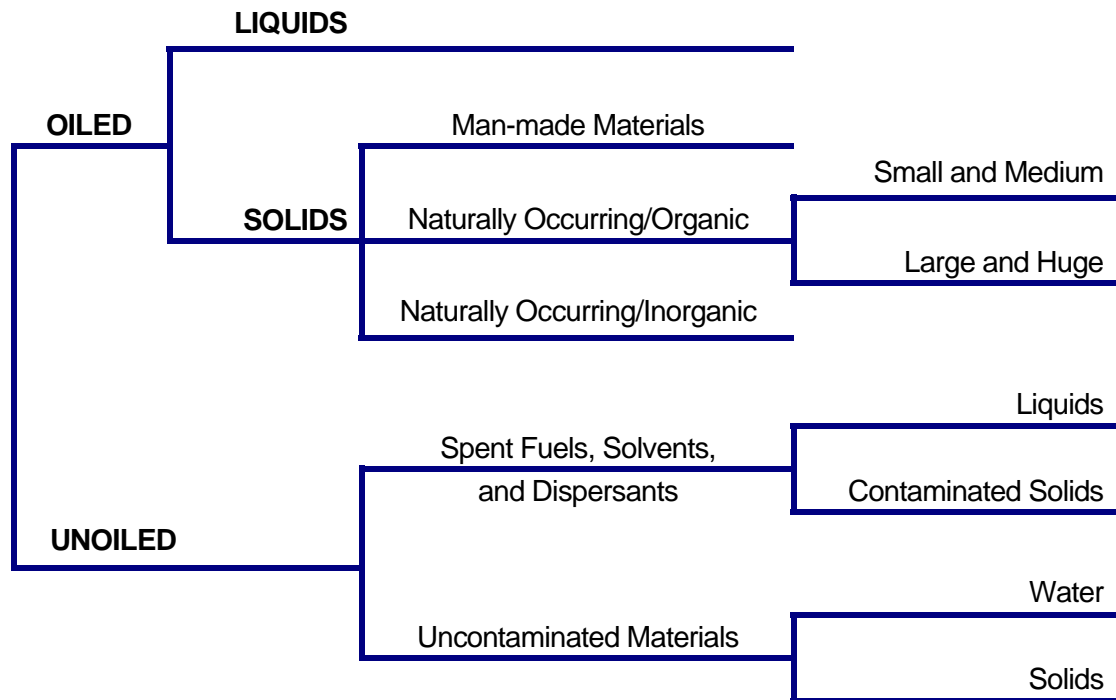
(after Marty, Owens, and Howe, 1993)

CLEANUP METHOD	WASTE GENERATION		
	AMOUNT	TYPE	
Flooding	High	Liquids	oil and oily water
Washing	High	Liquids	oil and oily water
Spot Washing	Moderate	Liquids	oil and oily water
Steam Cleaning	Moderate	Liquids	oil and oily water
Sandblasting	High	Solids	oiled sand
Manual Removal	Moderate	Solids	oiled sediment/debris, etc.
Mechanical Removal	High	Solids	oiled sediment/debris, etc.
Vacuum/Skimming	High	Liquids	oil and oily water
Off-site Treatment	Low	Liquids	oil and oily water
Vegetation Cutting	Moderate	Solids	oiled organic material
Passive Collection	Moderate/ High	Solids	oiled sorbents
Log/Debris Burning	Low	Solids	some residue from burning
Dispersants	Low	Solids	unoiled packaging material
Shoreline Cleaners	Moderate	Liquids	remobilized oil, oily water
Visco-elastic Agents/ Solidifiers	Moderate	Solids	oil/agent mixture
Bioremediation	Low	Solids	unoiled packaging material

Note: The terms "High, Moderate, and Low" are intended only as a guide to indicate relative amounts of oil and oiled wastes that can be generated directly by the operations.

7.1.2. Waste Segregation

Often the disposal method is decided after cleanup is completed; the preferred disposal strategy, in most cases, is to *segregate wastes into categories with different properties as soon as they are generated*; materials with the same disposal path can be mixed after the paths are determined.



(after Marty, Owens, and Howe, 1993)

7.1.3. Waste Handling

Each type of material generated has its own handling issues and decision criteria. As an example of the selection process that may be used to develop a waste management plan, the following summarizes appropriate options for handling *oiled sediments*.

Example: Options for Oiled Sediments —

Packaging and Temporary On-site Storage (in order – Large to Small Volumes):

Offshore

barges
dumpsters
supersacks
sealed drums

Onshore

dump trucks
dumpsters
lined earthen pits
supersacks
sealed drums

Transportation (in order – Large to Small Volumes):

Offshore

barges
dumpsters
freight boat

Onshore

dump truck/rail car
dumpsters
light truck

Temporary Off-site Storage (in order – Large to Small Volumes):

supersacks (with plastic underlays and overlays)
dumpsters
lined pits
sealed drums

Disposal and Treatment (in order – Most Preferred to Least Preferred):

On site

sediment washers
flood/wash
bioremediation
natural recovery
on-site burning

Off site

asphalt batch plants
land farming
incineration
landfill

Temporary Waste Storage Sites

Primary storage:

- < small size
- < located near the clean-up sites
- < short life

Intermediate storage:

- < larger size
- < longer life

Heavy storage:

- < potentially huge site
- < life linked to the treatment duration
(months - to years)

ERIKA Waste Management

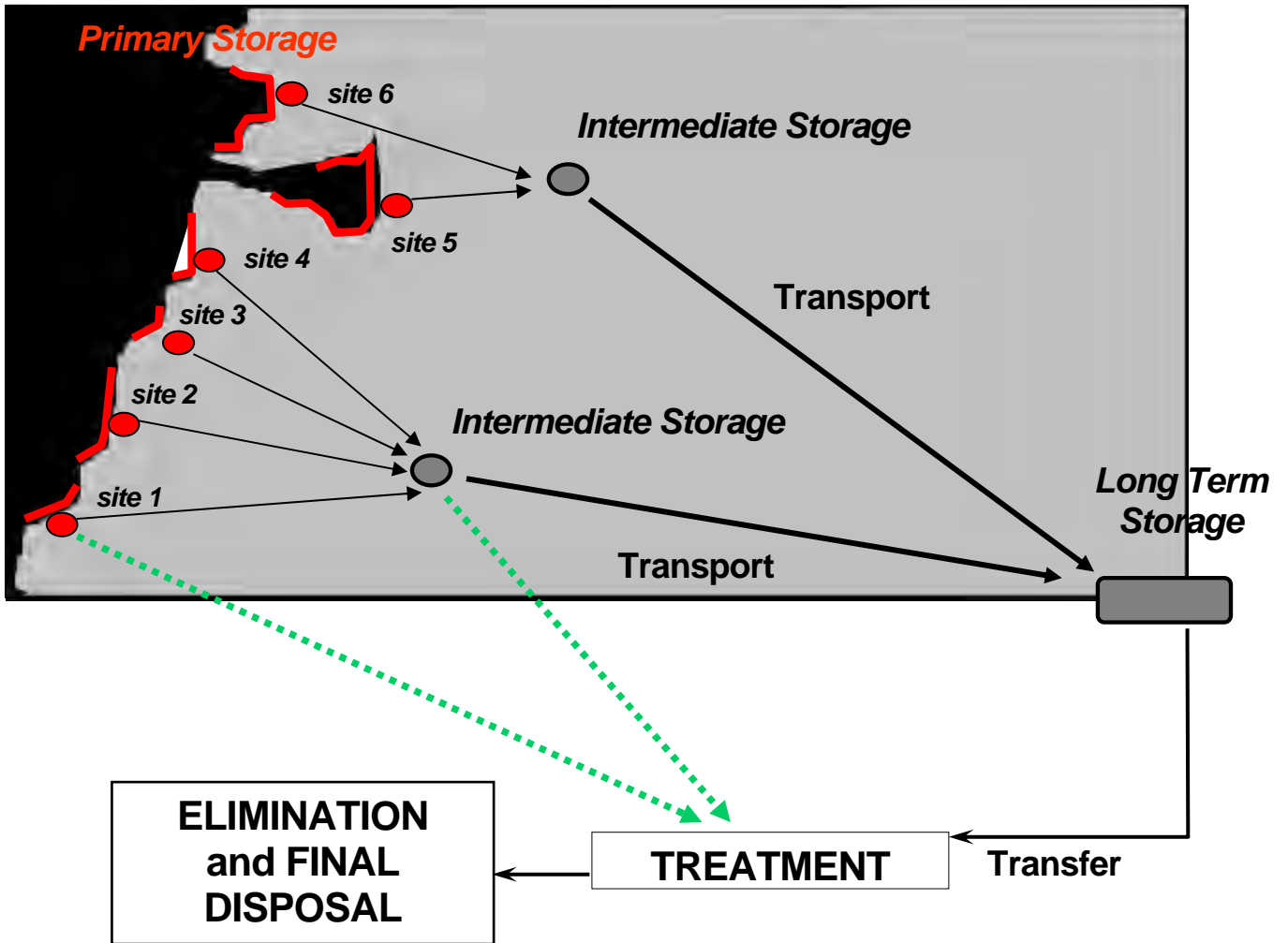
210 000 tonnes of waste collected during clean-up operations
+ 60 000 tonnes of waste storage building materials



270 000 tonnes of waste to treat

33 Intermediate storage sites
4 Heavy storage sites
Waste program began April 2001
Final Treatment completed November 2003

Coastal Recovery and Storage Schemes



7.1.4. Packaging, Storage, Transportation, and Disposal

Packaging and Storage

Techniques available for *packaging and storage* of oil spill waste materials include:

Tank Vessels
Barges
Flexible Towable Tanks/Pillow Tanks
Lined Earthen Pits
Lined Earthen Dikes
Prefabricated Kits
Sealed-Top Drums
Livestock Tanks
“Oilfield” Tanks
Unused Above-Ground Tanks
Unused Under-Ground Tanks
Dumpsters
“Supersacks”
Plastic Trash Bags

Transportation

Techniques available for *transporting* oil spill waste material include:

Freight Boats,
Tank Trucks or Railroad Cars,
Freight Trucks or Railroad Cars,
Light Trucks,
Helicopters,
Dump Trucks

Disposal

Hot Mix Asphalt Batch Plants
Cold Mix Asphalt Batch Plants
Reprocessing
Incineration
Open Pit Burning
Land farming/Bioremediation
Stabilization and Landfill
Beach Cleaners and Sediment Washers
In-situ Sediment Washing
Treatment and Discharge
Natural Recovery

- ExxonMobil (2008) and Marty *et al.* (1993) provide more detailed information on waste management procedures.

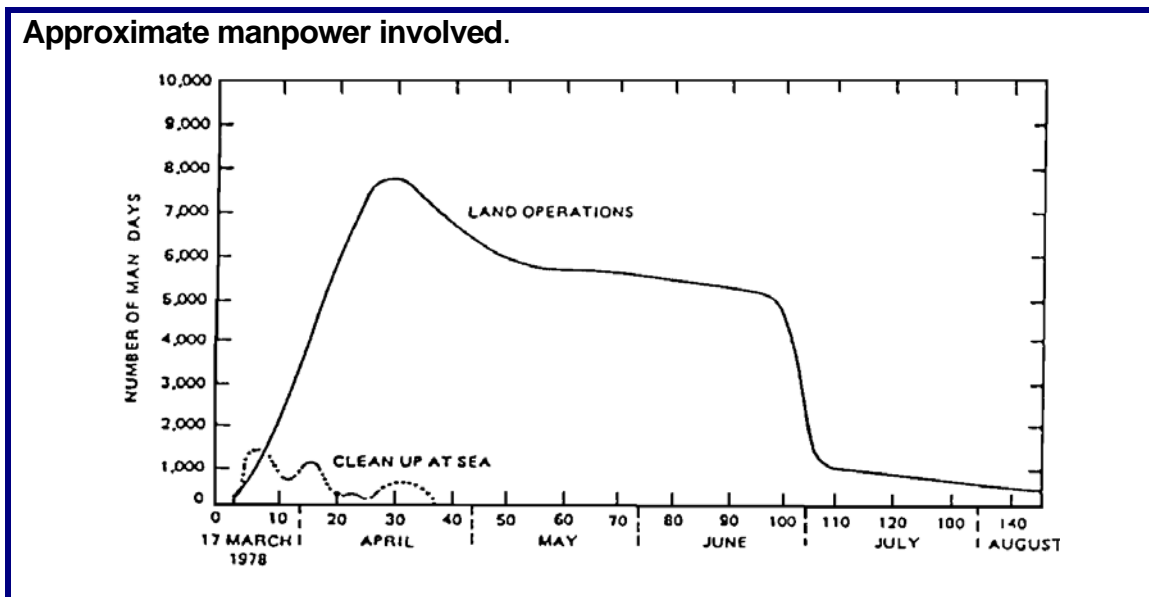
7.1.5. Waste Management “Rules of Thumb”

- ❖ Waste generation begins when the first person shows up on site; the *WASTE STREAM SHOULD* be organized before giving the go-ahead to start an activity.
- ❖ Work with Planning and Operations to try to develop accurate estimates of waste generation from the different operational activities.
- ❖ The waste stream is the most likely bottleneck for operations — *IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO STOP MECHANICAL RECOVERY, USING SKIMMERS OR FRONT-END LOADERS FOR EXAMPLE, IF THERE IS INSUFFICIENT* transfer and storage capacity.
- ❖ Segregate wastes at source and label immediately.
- ❖ In particular, separate wastes that:
 - (1) are oiled versus non-oiled;
 - (2) are liquid versus solid;
 - (3) can be incinerated;
 - (4) are biodegradable; or
 - (5) may be considered hazardous.
- ❖ Waste volumes and types will change during the life of a response

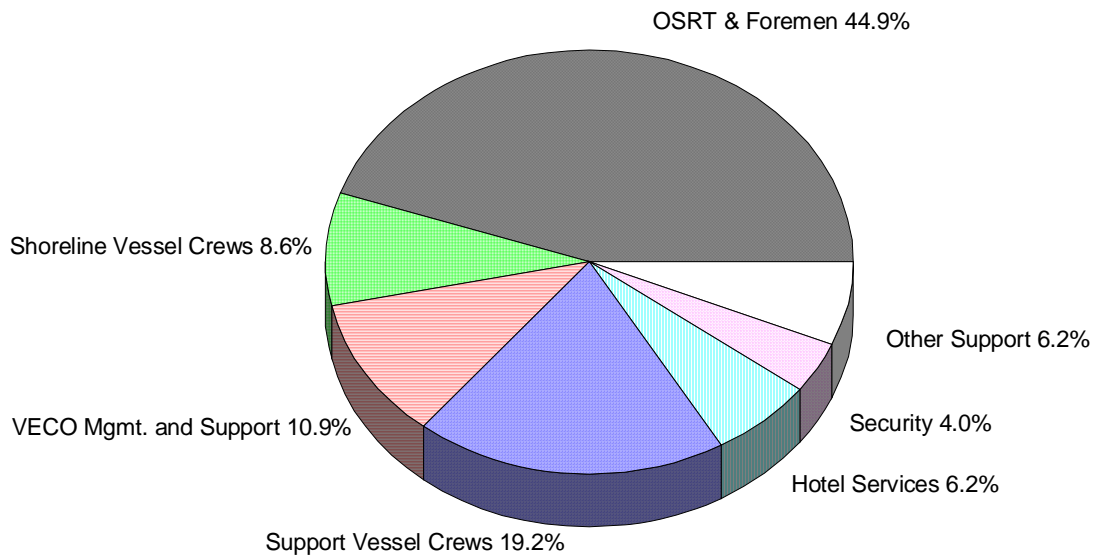
7.2. Operational Considerations

Personnel Requirements

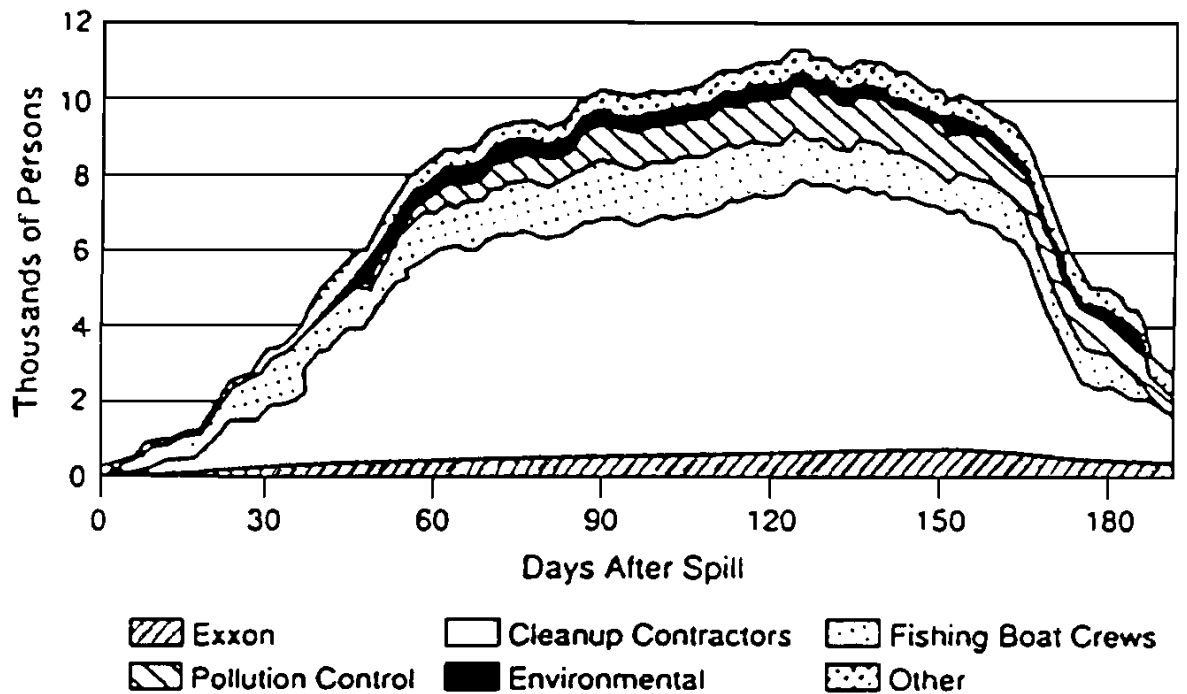
These graphs depict operational data from a large land-based cleanup of a spill (*Amoco Cadiz*).

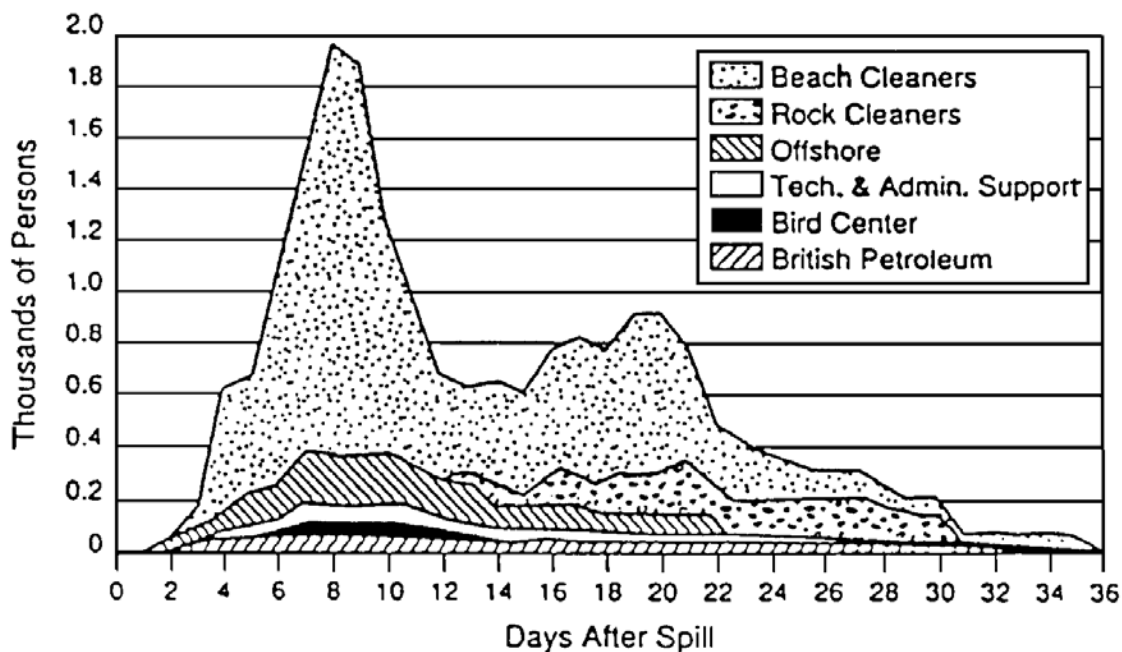


The *Exxon Valdez* response was in a remote area and the field task forces involved essentially one support person for each responder (Carpenter et al. 1991).



Personnel involved in the Exxon Valdez spill.



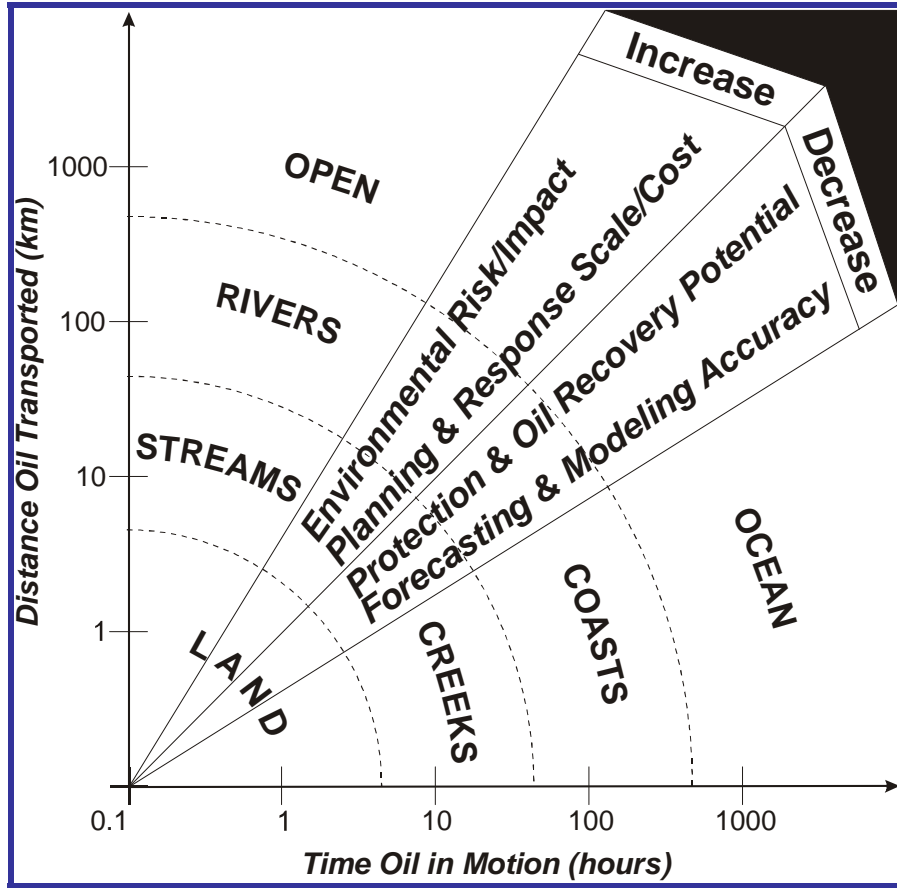
Personnel involved in the American Trader spill.**Operational/Logistics Factors****Distance from Regional Staging Area****Access**

- < Land
 - Vehicle
 - Pedestrian
- < Water
 - Large craft
 - Shallow draft only

On - Site Operational Area

- Limited room to maneuver
- Suitable for onshore operations
- Suitable for local staging area

Volume / Type of materials for disposal



Oil Spill Response Operations Zones

(after ASTM Standard F 1644-95)

COLD ZONE — Support Area

uncontaminated area
equipment storage and supply functions
food services
offices

WARM ZONE — Contamination Reduction Area

weathered oil
shoreline cleanup
waste management
decontamination

HOT ZONE — Early Response

fresh oil
containment and recovery

Oil Spill Worker Response

(after ASTM Standard F 1644-95)

COLD ZONE — Support Area

Type C workers
Uncontaminated area
No PPE

WARM ZONE — Contamination Reduction Area

Type A and B workers
Weathered oil
PPE required (“buddy system” required in USA)
Respiratory protection *NOT REQUIRED*

HOT ZONE — Early Response

Type A workers only
Fresh oil — potential exposure hazards
PPE required (“buddy system” required in USA)
Respiratory protection *POSSIBLY REQUIRED*

Oil Spill Response Worker Categories

(after ASTM Standard F1644-95)

TYPE A — HOT ZONE Personnel

Response Managers
Supervisors
Equipment Operators
 < boat operators
 < boom deployers
 < skimmer crews
 < dispersant handlers
 < barge personnel
 < tank truck operators
 < loader/bulldozer operators
 < other initial response personnel
Security personnel
Shoreline Assessment Team
Site safety and health supervisor
Field medical personnel
Vapor monitoring personnel
etc...

TYPE B — WARM ZONE Personnel

Shoreline clean-up personnel
Decontamination personnel
Wildlife coordinators
Animal handlers
Waste management/handling personnel
etc...

TYPE C — COLD ZONE Personnel

General land-based support personnel
Historians
Legal advisors
Food services personnel
Financial services personnel
Supply personnel
etc...

Recommended Health and Safety Training Matrix for Oil Spill Workers

(after ASTM Standard F 1644-95)

Training Subjects	Worker Types		
	Type A	Type B	Type C
General Awareness (regulations, response command/management structure, project and local issues, drug/alcohol policy, local hazards (e.g., earthquakes, hurricanes), etc.)	✓	✓	✓
Exposures and Chemical Hazards			
< mechanical hazards	✓	✓	
< slips, trips, and falls	✓	✓	
< explosion and fire	✓	✓	
< biological hazards	✓	✓	
< physical hazards (noise, hypothermia, heat stress, UV hazards, etc.)	✓	✓	
< water hazards	✓	✓	
< exposure routes (air, skin, ingestion)	✓		
< confined space entry	✓	✓	✓
< first aid	✓		
Safety and Health Requirements			
< industrial hygiene monitoring	✓		
< respiratory protection	✓		
< eye and ear protection	✓	✓	
< flotation devices	✓	✓	
< footwear	✓	✓	
< skin protection (gloves and PPE)	✓	✓	
< hard hats	✓	✓	
< personnel hygiene	✓	✓	
< decontamination procedures	✓	✓	

Safety

Safe =

Zero hours — Lost Time Accidents

Zero — OSHA Recordable Incidents

Economic Considerations

- ❖ Efficiency decreases and costs increase with time, particularly once the “easy to recover oil” has been removed.
- ❖ The most expensive aspects of a spill are (a) shoreline cleanup and (b) coastal zone damages; so burn, disperse, or recover at sea whenever possible.
- ❖ If oil reaches the nearshore and coastal zones: ecological damages likely will increase, NRDA damages will increase, and cleanup costs will increase.
- ❖ There is every ecological and economic incentive to keep oil out of the nearshore and coastal zones.

Operational Costs

On Water — *smaller spills (<2000 bbl)*
cost approximately 2 to 3 times more than larger spills.
 Burn costs on water are estimated to be \$500/bbl.

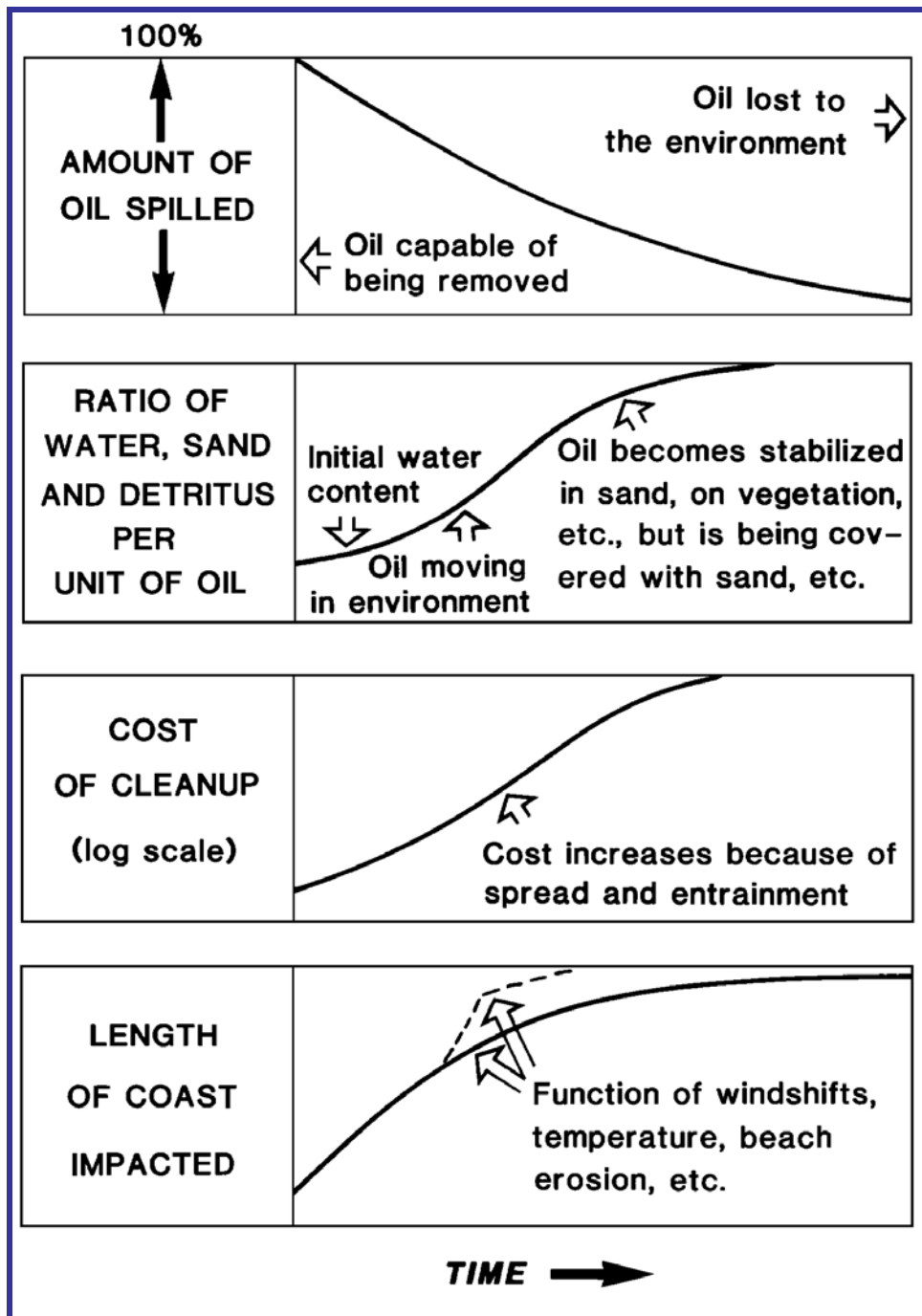
	\$ / bbl		
	Average	General Range	Extreme Range
On Water Mechanical	2,500	2,000 – 6,000	10 – 10,000
Shoreline Cleanup	8,000	5,000 – 20,000	200 – 80,000

after Harper and Allen, 1995

- ❖ NRDA costs >> cleanup costs.

Operational Changes Through Time

This set of diagrams shows how different aspects of a spill response operation change through time. This emphasizes the need to be flexible in planning and to adapt to changing requirements (Wheeler, 1978).



7.2.1. Response in Remote Areas

Remote areas are defined as locations where there exist little or no local infrastructure to support spill response operations; these areas require logistic support to stage a shoreline treatment program.

- ❖ Shoreline cleanup would have to be conducted from temporary onshore or floating offshore/nearshore staging areas that could accommodate personnel and equipment overnight.

The need for logistic support in a remote area places focus on activities that:

- € limit the need for extensive equipment and personnel resources, and
- ∉ minimize waste generation.

Λ

- ❖ With these two constraints in mind, the preferred response is —
 - < PREVENT THE OIL FROM REACHING THE SHORELINE if and when possible.
- ❖ If this is not feasible or practical, the preferred onshore option is —
 - < *TREAT THE OIL IN SITU* so that environmental recovery is accelerated without the requirements for a labor-intensive effort or waste management/ disposal.

Remote Operational Requirements

Operations in remote locations involve considerable logistic support for protection, cleanup, and disposal.

Example: These data are for **one day** for one of the Prince William Sound Task Forces from the 1989 *Exxon Valdez* cleanup.

- Each Task Force:
 - < Fuel 17,000 gallons/day
 - < Food 5 tons/day
 - < Water 11,000 gallons/day
 - < Materials 3 tons/day

There were seven such Task Forces, and the approximate total figures for the 1989 operations were:

- < 10,000 people,
- < 1,000 boats, and
- < 100 aircraft.

See diagram on page 7-17.

Part 8 References

Table of Contents

8.1. Coastal Processes, Shorelines, and Rivers	8-3
8.2. Oil: Fate, Behavior, and Effects	8-4
8.3. Spill Management — Decision Process	8-7
8.4. Response Techniques	8-10
8.5. Response Manuals or Guides	8-13
8.5.1. Inland and River Manuals or Guides	8-13
8.5.2. Coastal and Marine Manuals or Guides	8-13

NOTE:

Updated through 2009.

More recent publications, including some on DWH, and pdf files of key SCAT papers and materials can be found at:

<http://www.shorelinescat.com/>

Part 8 References and Bibliography

8.1. Coastal Processes, Shorelines, and Rivers

- Bascom, W., 1964. *Waves and Beaches*. Anchor Books, NY, 267 pp.
- Bird, E.C. and Schwartz, M.L., 1985. *The World's Coastline*. Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., NY, 1071 pp.
- Carter, R.W.G., 1988. *Coastal Environments, An Introduction to the Physical, Ecological and Cultural Systems of Coastlines*. Academic Press Ltd., London, 617 pp.
- Carter, R.W.G. and Woodroffe, C.D., eds., 1994. *Coastal Evolution*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 517 pp.
- Chorley, R.J. (ed.), 1969. *Introduction to Fluvial Processes*. Methuen, London, 218 pp.
- Davies, J.L., 1980. *Geographical Variation in Coastal Development*. Oliver and Boyd, Edinburgh, 2nd Edition, 212 pp.
- Davis, R.A. Jr., (ed.), 1978. *Coastal Sedimentary Environments*. Springer Verlag, NY, 420 pp.
- Davis, R.A. Jr. and Fox, W.T., 1972. Coastal processes and nearshore sandbars. *Journal Sedimentary Petrology*, Vol. 42, 401–412.
- Hayes, M.O., 1972. Forms of sediment accumulation in the beach zone. *In Waves and Beaches* (R.E. Meyer, ed.), Academic Press, NY, 297–356.
- Knox, G.A., 2001. *The Ecology of Seashores*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 557 pp.
- Komar, P.D., 1998. *Beach Processes and Sedimentation*. Prentice-Hall, Inc., NJ, 2nd Edition, 544 pp.
- Little, C. and Kitching, J.A., 1996. *The Biology of Rocky Shores*. Oxford Univ. Press, NY, 240 pp.
- Owens, E.H., 1983. The application of videotape recording (VTR) techniques for coastal studies. *Shore and Beach*, 51(1), 29–33.
- Petts, G. and Calow, P., (eds.), 1996. *River Flows and Channel Forms*. Blackwell Science, Cambridge, MA, 262 pp.
- Schwartz, M.L., 1982. *The Encyclopedia of Beaches and Coastal Environments*. Hutchinson Ross Publishing Co., Stroudsburg, PA, 940 pp.
- Trenhaile, A.S., 1987. *The Geomorphology of Rock Coasts*. Clarendon Press, Oxford, Oxford Research Studies in Geography, 384 pp.
- Trenhaile, A.S., 1997. *Coastal Dynamics and Landforms*. Oxford University Press, NY, 366 pp.

8.2. Oil: Fate, Behavior, and Effects

- Aurand, D., Coelho, G.M. and Steen, A., 2001. Ten years of research by the US oil industry to evaluate the ecological issues of dispersant use: An overview of the past decade. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4686B, Washington, DC, 429–434.
- Bragg, J.R. and Owens, E.H., 1995. Shoreline cleansing by interactions between oil and fine mineral particles. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 219–227.
- Brown, H., Owens, E.H. and Green, M., 1998. Submerged and sunken oil: Behaviour, response options, feasibility, and expectations. *Proc. 21st Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 135–146.
- Castle, R.W., Wehrenberg, F., Bartlett, J. and Nuckols, J., 1995. Heavy oil spills: out of sight, out of mind. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 565–571.
- Getter, C.D., Cintron, G., Dicks, B., Lewis, R.R. III and Seneca, E.D., 1984. The recovery and restoration of salt marshes and mangroves following an oil spill. *In Restoration of Habitats Impacted by Oil Spills* (J. Cairns and A.L. Buikema, eds.), Ann Arbor Science Book, Butterworth, Stoneham, MA, 65–114.
- Harper, J.R., Sergy, G.A. and Sagayama, T., 1995. Subsurface oil in coarse sediments experiments (SOCSEX II). *Proc. 18th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 867–886.
- Hayes, M.O. and Michel, J., 1999. Factors determining the long-term persistence of *Exxon Valdez* oil in gravel beaches. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* Vol. 38, No. 2, 92–101.
- IPIECA, 1991. Guidelines on Biological Impacts of Oil Pollution. IPIECA Report Series, Volume 1, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 15 pp.
- IPIECA, 1994. Biological Impacts of Oil Pollution: Salt Marshes. IPIECA Report Series, Volume 6, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 20 pp.
- IPIECA, 1995. Biological Impacts of Oil Pollution: Rocky Shores. IPIECA Report Series, Volume 7, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 20 pp.
- IPIECA, 1999. Biological Impacts of Oil Pollution: Sedimentary Shores. IPIECA Report Series, Volume 9, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 20 pp.
- Jahns, H.O., Bragg, J.R., Dash, L.C. and Owens, E.H., 1991. Natural cleaning of shorelines following the *Exxon Valdez* spill. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4529, Washington, DC, 167–176.

- Kaperick, J.A., 1997. Oil Beneath the Water Surface and Review of Currently Available Literature on Group V Oils: An Annotated Bibliography. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, HMRAD Report 95-8, 37 pp.
- Kingston, P.F., 2002. Long-term environmental impact of oil spills. *Spill Science & Technology Bulletin* 7(1-2): 53–62.
- Lee, K., Stoffyn-Egli, P., and Owens, E.H., 2001. Natural dispersion of oil in a freshwater ecosystem: Desaguadero pipeline spill, Bolivia. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No.14710, Washington, DC, 1445–1448.
- Lee, K., Stoffyn-Egli, P. and Owens, E.H., 2002. The OSSA II pipeline oil spill: natural mitigation of a riverine oil spill by oil-mineral aggregation formation. *Spill Science & Technology Bulletin* 7(3/4): 149–154.
- Little, D.I. and Scales, D.L., 1987. The persistence of oil stranded on sediment shorelines. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No 4452, Washington, DC, 433–438.
- Michel, J., and Galt, J.A., 1995. Conditions under which floating slicks can sink in marine settings. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 573–576.
- Michel, J. and Hayes, M.O., 1999. Weathering patterns of oil residues eight years after the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* Vol. 38, No. 10, 855–863.
- Michel, J., Scholz, D., Henry, C.B. and Benggio, B.L., 1995. Group V fuel oils: Source, behavior, and response issues. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No.4620, Washington, DC, 559–564.
- Murray, S.P., 1982. The effects of weather systems, currents, and coastal processes on major oil spills at sea. *In* *Pollutant Transfer and Transport in the Sea* (G. Kullenberg, ed.), CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, FL, 169–227.
- Murray, S.P. and Owens, E.H., 1988. The role of oceanic fronts in oil spill dispersion and for oil spill response planning in the coastal zone. *Proc. 11th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 1-8. (see also: *Spill Technology Newsletter*, 1988, v.13, no. 4)
- Neff, J.M., Owens, E.H., Stoker, S.W. and McCormick, D.M. 1995. Shoreline oiling conditions in Prince William Sound following the *Exxon Valdez* oil spill. *In* *Exxon Valdez Oil Spill — Fate and Effects in Alaskan Waters* (P.G. Wells, J.N. Butler, and J.S. Hughes, eds.), ASTM STP 1219, American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, 312–346.
- NRC, 2003. *Oil in the Sea III: Inputs, Fates, and Effects*. National Research Council, The National Academies Press, Washington, DC, 265 pp.
- Overstreet, R. and Galt, J.A., 1995. *Physical Processes Affecting the Movement and Spreading of Oils in Inland Waters*. NOAA, Seattle, WA, HAZMAT Report 95-7, 52 pp.

- Owens, E.H., 1978. Mechanical dispersal of oil stranded in the littoral zone. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada*, 35(5):563–572.
- Owens, E.H., 1985. Factors affecting the persistence of stranded oil on low energy coasts. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4385, Washington, DC, 359–365.
- Owens, E.H., 1991a. Shoreline conditions following the "Exxon Valdez" oil spill as of fall 1990. *Proc. 14th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 579-606 (accompanying report published by Woodward-Clyde Consultants, Seattle, WA, 49 pp.).
- Owens, E.H., 1991b. Changes in shoreline oiling conditions 1-½ years after the 1989 Prince William Sound spill. Woodward-Clyde Consultants, Seattle, WA, 52 pp.
- Owens, E.H., 1994. Canadian Coastal Environments, Shoreline Processes, and Oil Spill Cleanup. Environmental Emergency Branch, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, Report EPS 3/SP/5, 328 pp.
- Owens, E.H., Bragg, J.R. and Humphrey, B., 1994. Clay-oil flocculation as a natural cleaning process following oil spills: Part 2 — Implications of study results in understanding past spills and for future response decisions. *Proc. 17th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 25–37.
- Owens, E.H., Harper, J.R., Robson, W. and Boehm, P.D., 1987. Fate and persistence of crude oil stranded on a sheltered beach. *Arctic* 40, Supplement 1:109–123.
- Owens, E.H., Humphrey, B., and Sergy, G.A., 1994. Natural cleaning of oil on two coarse-sediment shorelines on the Arctic and Atlantic coasts of Canada. *Spill Science & Technology Bulletin*, 1(1): 37–52.
- Owens E.H. and Lee, K., 2003. Interaction of oil and mineral fines on shorelines: review and assessment. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, 47 (9–12), 397–105.
- Owens, E.H., Robson, W. and Humphrey, B., 1986. Data on the character of asphalt pavements. *Proc. 9th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 1–17.
- Owens E.H., Sergy, G.A., and Prince, R.C., 2002. The fate of stranded oil at the BIOS site twenty years after the experiment. *Proc. 25th Arctic Marine Oilspill Program (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Environment Canada, Ottawa ON, 1–11.
- Stalfort, D., (ed), 1999. Fate and Environmental Effects of Oil Spills in Freshwater Environments. American Petroleum Institute Pub. No. 4675, Washington DC, 147 pp.
- Wooley, C., 2002. The myth of the "pristine environment": Past human impacts in Prince William Sound and the northern Gulf of Alaska. *Spill Science & Technology Bulletin*, 7(1–12): 89–104.

8.3. Spill Management — Decision Process

- Allen, A.A., 1997. Oil slick classification: A system for the characterization and documentation of oil slicks. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4651, Washington, DC, 315–322.
- API, 1985. Oil spill response: Options for minimizing adverse ecological impacts. American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4398, Washington, DC, 98 pp.
- API, 1999. A decision maker's guide to dispersants: A review of the theory and operational requirements. American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4692, Washington, DC, 38 pp.
- API, 2001. Environmental Considerations for Marine Oil Spill Response. American Petroleum Institute, National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration, US Coast Guard, and US Environmental Protection Agency, API Publication No. 4706, Washington, DC. 291 pp.
- ASTM. Standard Guide for Health and Safety Training for Oil Spill Responders. Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Section 11, Water and Environmental Technology, Volume 11.04, Committee F-20 on Hazardous Substances and Oil Spill Response, Designation F 1644-95, American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, 951–953.
- ASTM. Standard Guide for Surveys to Document and Assess Oiling Conditions on Shorelines. Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Section 11, Water and Environmental Technology, Volume 11.04, Committee F-20 on Hazardous Substances and Oil Spill Response, Designation F 1686-97, American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, 960–964.
- ASTM. Standard Guide for Terminology and Indices to Describe Oiling Conditions on Shorelines. Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Section 11, Water and Environmental Technology, Volume 11.04, Committee F-20 on Hazardous Substances and Oil Spill Response, Designation F 1687-97, American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, 965–969.
- ASTM. Standard Practice for Reporting Visual Observations of Oil on Water. Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Section 11, Water and Environmental Technology, Volume 11.04, Committee F-20 on Hazardous Substances and Oil Spill Response, Designation F 1779-97, Amer. Soc. for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, 996–1000.
- Baker, J.M., 1995. Net Environmental Benefit Analysis for Oil Spill Response. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 611–614.
- Baker, J. M., 1997 Differences in risk perception: How clean is clean? *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, Technical Report IOSC-006, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4652C, Washington, DC, 52 pp.

- Darling, J.L. Corporation, 1993. Shoreline Oiling Assessment Field Book. "Rite-in-the-Rain" All Weather Field Books, Tacoma, WA, Field Notebook No. X-225, 48 pp.
- Dicks, B., Parker, H., Purnell, K. and Santner, R., 2002. Termination of shoreline cleanup - a technical perspective. Proc. Of the Technical Lessons Learnt from the Erika Incident and Other Oil Spills, CEDRE, Brest, 12 pp.
- Galt, J.A., 1995. The integration of trajectory models and analysis into spill response information systems. Proc. Second Int. Oil Spill Research and Development Forum, International Maritime Organization, London, 499–507.
- Galt, J.A. 1997. Uncertainty analysis related to oil spill modeling. Spill Science & Technology Bulletin, 4(4), 231–238.
- Haggarty, J.C., Wooley, C.B., Erlandson, J.M. and Crowell, A. 1991. The Exxon cultural resource program — site protection and maritime cultural ecology in Prince William Sound and the Gulf of Alaska. Exxon Shipping Co. and Exxon U.S.A., Anchorage, AK, 339 pp.
- IMO, 1995. IMO Manual on Oil Pollution, Section II — Contingency Planning. International Maritime Organization, London, IMO Publication No. IMO-560E, 65 pp.
- IMO-IPIECA, 1996. Sensitivity Mapping for Oil Spill Response. IMO/IPIECA Report Series, Volume 1, International Maritime Organization, London, and International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 24 pp.
- IPIECA, 2000. A Guide to Contingency Planning for Oil Spills on Water (2nd edition). IPIECA Report Series, Volume 2, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 28 pp.
- IPIECA, 2000. Choosing Spill Response Options to Minimize Damage (NEBA). IPIECA Report Series, Volume 10, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 20 pp.
- Lunel, T. and J.M. Baker, 1999. Quantification of net environmental benefit for future oil spills. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4686B, Washington, DC, 619–627.
- Michel, J. and Benggio, B., 1999. Guidelines for selecting appropriate cleanup endpoints at oil spills. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4686B, Washington, DC, 591–595.
- Mobley, C.M. and Haggarty, J.C., 1989. The Exxon Valdez cultural resource program. Proc. B.C. Oil Spill Prevention Workshop (P.H. LeBlond, ed.), Manuscript Report No. 52, Department of Oceanography, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, B.C.
- Mobley, C.M., Haggarty, J.C., Utermohle, C.J., Eldridge, J., Reanier, R.E., Crowell, A., Ream, B.A., Yesner, D.R., Erlandson, J.M. and Buck, P.E., 1990. The 1989 Exxon Valdez Cultural Resource Program. Exxon Shipping Co. and Exxon U.S.A., Anchorage, AK, 300 pp.

- NOAA, 1998. Shoreline Assessment Job Aid. Hazardous Materials Response Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, 35 pp.
- NOAA, 2000. Characteristic Coastal Habitats, A Guide for Spill Response Planning. Hazardous Materials Response Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, 84 pp.
- NOAA, 2000. Observers Guide to Sea Ice. Hazardous Materials Response Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, 27 pp.
- NOAA, 2000. Shoreline Assessment Manual. Hazardous Materials Response Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Report No. 2000-1, Seattle, WA, 54 pp. plus appendices.
- NOAA/USCG, 1998. Open Water Oil Identification Job Aid for Aerial Observation. Hazardous Materials Response Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, and U.S. Coast Guard, Marine Safety Office Puget Sound, Seattle, WA, 38 p.
- Owens, E.H., 1999. Practical Guidelines or “Rules of Thumb” for spill response activities. Proc. 22nd Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 695–704.
- Owens, E.H., 2002. Response strategies for spills on Land. Spill Science & Technology Bulletin, 7(3/4), 115–117.
- Owens, E.H. and Douglas, L., 1999. Spill response strategies for rivers in a remote deltaic environment. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute Pub. No. 4686B, Washington, DC, 453–458.
- Owens, E.H., Lamarche, A., Mauseth, G.S., Martin, C.A., and Brown, J., 2002. Tar ball frequency data and analytical results from a long-term beach-monitoring program. Marine Pollution Bulletin, 44 (8), 770-780.
- Owens, E.H. and Reimer, P.D. 1991. Aerial videotape shoreline surveys for oil spill reconnaissance, documentation, and mapping. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petr. Institute, Pub. No. 4529, Washington, D.C., 601–605.
- Owens, E.H. and Reimer P.D., 2001. Real-time aerial mapping for operations support and videotape documentation on a river spill, Rio Desaguadero, Bolivia. Proc. 24th Arctic Marine Oilspill Program (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa ON, 471–483.
- Owens E.H., Reimer, P.D., Lamarche, A., Marchant, S.O. and O’Brien, D.K., 2003. Pre-spill Shoreline Mapping in Prince William Sound, Alaska. *Proceedings 26th Arctic Marine Oilspill Program (AMOP) Technical Seminar*, Ottawa ON, 233–251.
- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 2000. The SCAT Manual — A Field Guide to the Documentation and Description of Oiled Shorelines. Environment Canada, Edmonton, AB, 2nd edition, 108 pp.

- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 2003a. Treatment criteria and end-point standards for oiled shorelines and riverbanks. Environment Canada, Technical Report EE-171, Ottawa, ON, 45 pp.
- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 2003b. The development of the SCAT process for the assessment of oiled shorelines. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, 47 (9-12), 415–422.
- Owens, E.H. and Taylor, E., 1993. A proposed standardization of terms and definitions for shoreline oiling assessment. Proc. 16th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Tech. Sem., Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, Vol. 2, 1111–1135.
- Owens, E.H. and Teal, A.R., 1990. Shoreline cleanup following the "Exxon Valdez" oil spill — field data collection within the SCAT program. Proc. 13th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 411–421.
- Purnell, K.J., 1999. Comparative costs of low technology shoreline cleaning methods. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4686B, Washington, DC, 459-465.
- Scholz, D., Michel, J., Henry, C.B. and Benggio, B. 1994. Assessment of risks associated with the shipment and transfer of Group V fuel oils. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, HAZMAT Report 94-8, 33 p.
- Sell, D., Conway, L., Clark, T., Picken, G.B., Baker, J.M., Dunnet, G.M., McIntyre, A.D. and Clark, R.B., 1995. Scientific criteria to optimize oil spill cleanup. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 595–610.
- Sienkiewicz, A.M. and Owens, E.H., 1996. Stream-bank Cleanup Assessment Team (SCAT) survey techniques on the Kolva River basin oil recovery and mitigation project. Proc. 19th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 1321–1333.
- Walker, A.H., Michel, J., Benggio, B., Scholz, D., Boyd, J. and Walker, W., 2001. Selection Guide for Oil Spill Applied Technologies: Volume 1 - Decision Making. Report prepared for EPA Region III, RRT III, RRT Region IV, and NOAA by SEA, Cape Charles, VA, 151 p.
- Wooley, C.B. and Haggarty, J.C., 1995. Archaeological site protection: An integral component of the "Exxon Valdez" shoreline cleanup. In Exxon Valdez Oil Spill — Fate and Effects in Alaskan Waters (P.G. Wells, J.N. Butler, and J.S. Hughes, eds.), ASTM STP 1219, American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA, 933–949.

8.4. Response Techniques

- Allen, A. A., 1988. Comparison of response options for offshore oil spills. Proc. Eleventh Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 289-306.

- Aurand, D., Coelho, G.M. and Steen, A., 2001. Ten years of research by the US oil industry to evaluate the ecological issues of dispersant use: An overview of the past decade. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 686B, Washington, DC, 429–434.
- Boyd, J., Kucklick, J.H., Scholz, D.K., Walker, A.H., Pond, R.G. and Bostrom, A., 2001. Effects of Oil: Chemically dispersed oil in the environment. American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4693, Washington, DC, 50 pp.
- Bragg, J.R., Prince, R.C., Harner, E.J. and Atlas, R.M., 1993. Bioremediation effectiveness following the “Exxon Valdez” spill. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4580, Washington, DC, 435–447.
- Burns, G.H., Benson, C.A., Eason, T., Michel, J., Kelly, S., Benggio, B. and Ploen, M., 1995. Recovery of submerged oil at San Juan, Puerto Rico, 1994. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 551–557.
- Hansen, K. and Coe, T.J., 2001. Oil Spill Response in Fast Currents – A Field Guide. US Coast Guard R&D Center, Report CG-D-01-02, National Technical Information Service, Springfield VA, oc. No. ADA 400660, 121 pp.
- Henshaw, A., Owens, E.H., Copeman, V. and Mianzan, A., 2001. The OSSA II pipeline spill, Bolivia - Cleanup criteria, cleanup operations, environmental monitoring, and community issues. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 14710, Washington, DC, 1455–1462.
- Hoff, R. 1992. Bioremediation: A countermeasure for marine oil spills. Spill Science & Technology Newsletter, v. 17, no. 1, 1–14.
- Naumann, S., 1991. Shoreline cleanup: Equipment and operations. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4529, Washington, DC, 141–147.
- Owens, E.H. 1998. Sediment relocation and tilling — underused and misunderstood techniques for the treatment of oiled beaches. Proc. 21st Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Tech. Seminar, Env. Canada, Ottawa, ON, 857–871.
- Owens, E.H. and Henshaw, T., 2002. The OSSA II pipeline oil spill: The distribution of oil, cleanup criteria, and cleanup operations. Spill Science & Technology Bulletin, 7 (3/4), 119–134.
- Owens, E.H., Johnston, M. and Johnston, M., 1995. Shoreline protection using geotextile barriers. Proc. 18th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 857–866.
- Owens, E.H., Reiter, G.A. and Challenger, C., 2001. Whatcom Creek stream remediation following a gasoline spill. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 14710, Washington, DC, 959–966.

- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 2004. Accelerating the Natural Removal of Oil on Shorelines: Part 2 — Mixing Techniques. Proceedings 27th Arctic Marine Oilspill Program (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa ON.
- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 2003. Accelerating the natural removal of oil on beaches: part 1 — sediment relocation. Proc. 26th Arctic Marine Oilspill Program (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa ON, 661–677.
- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 2004. Accelerating the Natural Removal of Oil on Shorelines: Part 2 — Mixing Techniques. Proceedings 27th Arctic Marine Oilspill Program (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa ON, 685-702.
- Owens E.H., Sergy, G.A., Guénette, C.C., Prince, R.C. and Lee, K., 2003. The Reduction of Stranded Oil by *In-Situ* Shoreline Treatment Options. *Spill Science and Technology Bulletin*, 8(3), 257-272.
- Owens, E.H. and Sienkiewicz, A.M., 1997. Treatment techniques and environmental trade-offs on the Komi project — a large sub-arctic inland oil spill. Proc. 20th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 389–413.
- Prince, R.C., 1993. Petroleum spill bioremediation in marine environments. *Critical Reviews in Microbiology*, 19 (4), 217–242.
- Taylor, E., and Owens, E.H., 1997. Specialized mechanical equipment for shoreline clean-up. Proc. 1997 International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4651, Washington, DC, 79–87.
- Walker, A.H., Michel, J., Canevari, G., Kucklick, J., Scholz, D., Benson, C.A., Overton, E. and Shane, B., 1993. Chemical Oil Spill Treating Agents. Marine Spill Response Corp., Washington, DC, MSRC Tech. Rept. Series 93-015, 328 pp.
- Zengel, S.A. and Michel, J., 1996. Vegetation cutting as a clean-up method for salt and brackish marshes impacted by oil spills: A review and case history of the effects of plant recovery. *Marine Pollution Bulletin*, 32(12), 876–885.

8.5. Response Manuals or Guides

8.5.1. Inland and River Manuals or Guides

- API/NOAA, 1994. Options for Minimizing Environmental Impacts of Freshwater Spill Response. Prepared by E.H. Owens (OCC Ltd.) and J. Michel (RPI) for American Petroleum Institute, Washington, DC, and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, API Pub. No. 4558, 146 pp.
- CONCAWE, 1983. A field guide to inland oil spill cleanup techniques. Report No. 10/83, Oil Spill Cleanup Technology Special Task Force No. 3, Den Haag, 104 pp.
- Hansen, K. and Coe, T.J., 2001. Oil Spill Response in Fast Currents – A Field Guide. US Coast Guard R&D Center, Report CG-D-01-02, National Technical Information Service, Springfield VA, oc. No. ADA 400660, 121 pp.
- Owens, E.H., 2002. Response strategies for spills on land. *Spill Science & Technology Bulletin*, 7 (3/4), 115-117.
- Owens, E.H. and Michel, J., 1995. Options for Minimizing Environmental Impacts of Freshwater Spill Response. American Petroleum Institute, Washington, DC, and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, API Pub. No. 4558, 135 pp.
- USCG, 2003. Oil Response in Fast Water Currents: A Decision Tool. US Coast Guard, R&D Center, Groton, CT, 26 pp.

8.5.2. Coastal and Marine Manuals or Guides

- Allen, A. A., 1988. Comparison of response options for offshore oil spills. Proc. 1th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 89–06.
- Buist, I., Ross, S., Trudel, K., Taylor, E. and others, 1994. The Science, Technology, and Effects of Controlled Burning of Oil Spills at Sea. Marine Spill Response Corp., Washington, DC, MSRC Technical Report Series # 94-0131, 387 pp.
- Castle, R.W., Wehrenberg, F., Bartlett, J. and Nuckols, J., 1995. Heavy oil spills: out of sight, out of mind. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4620, Washington, DC, 565–571.
- CCG, 1995. Marine Oil Spill Shoreline Workers' Safety Guide. Canadian Coast Guard, Ottawa, ON, 57 pp.
- CCG, 1995. Oil Spill Response Field Guide. Canadian Coast Guard, Ottawa, ON, 198 pp.
- CONCAWE, 1981. A field guide to coastal oil spill control and cleanup techniques. Oil Spill Cleanup Report No. 9/81, Technology Special Task Force No. 1, Den Haag, 112 pp.
- CONCAWE, 1981. Disposal techniques for spilt oil. Oil Spill Cleanup Report No. 9/80, Technology Special Task Force No. 1, Den Haag, 52 pp.

- DeCola, E.G., 2002. Dispersant use in oil spill response: a worldwide legislative and practical update. Aspen Publishers, Aspen, CO, 314 pp.
- ExxonMobil, 2000. Dispersant Guidelines. Unpublished report by ExxonMobil Research and Engineering Company, Florham Park, NJ, 143 pp.
- ExxonMobil, 2002. Oil Spill Response Field Manual. ExxonMobil Research and Engineering Co., Fairfax, VA, 286 pp.
- Fingas, M., 2000. The basics of oil spill cleanup. Lewis Publishers, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2nd edition, 233 pp.
- Fingas, M. and Punt, M., 2000. *In-Situ* Burning – A Cleanup Technique for Oil Spills on Water. Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 214 pp.
- Foget, C.R., Schrier, E., Cramer, M. and Castle, R.W., 1979. Manual of practice for protection and cleanup of shorelines. I: Decision guide. II: Implementation guide. Office of Research and Development, U.S. EPA, Cincinnati, OH, Report EPA_600/7/187 (a and b), two volumes, 283 pp.
- IPIECA, 2004. Guidelines for Oil Spill Waste Minimization and Management. IPIECA Report Series, Volume 12, International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 19 pp.
- IPIECA-ITOPF, 1999. The Use of International Oil Industry Spill Response Resources: Tier 3 Centres. International Petroleum Industry Environmental Conservation Association, London, 9 pp.
- ITOPF, 1987. Response to marine oil spills. International Tanker Owners Pollution Federation, London, published by Witherby & Co., London, 115 pp.
- Kerambrun, L., 1993. Evaluation des techniques de nettoyage du littoral suite à un déversement de pétrole. CEDRE, Brest, Report No. R.93.36.C, 85 pp.
- Lewis, A. and Aurand, D., 1997. Putting dispersants to work: Overcoming obstacles. *Proc. International Oil Spill Conference*, American Petroleum Institute, Technical Report IOSC-004, Washington, DC, 80 pp.
- Marty, R.C., Owens, E.H. and Howes, D.E., 1993. Waste management guidelines for marine oil spill response in British Columbia. Environmental Emergencies Branch, Ministry of Environment, Lands and Parks, Province of British Columbia, Victoria, 101 pp. (see also: 1993 AMOP Technical Seminar Proceedings, Vol. 2, 1169–1185).
- MPCU, 1994. Oil spill clean_up of the coastline — A technical manual. Marine Pollution Control Unit, Dept. of Transport, Southampton, 2nd edition, 133 pp.
- Michel, J., Christopherson, S. and Whipple, F. 1994. Mechanical Protection Guidelines. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, and US Coast Guard, Washington, DC, 87 pp.

- NOAA, 1992. Shoreline Countermeasures Manual — Temperate Coastal Environments. Hazardous Materials Response and Assessment Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA, 89 pp.
- NOAA, 1998. Spill Tools. Software package that includes an “In-Situ Burn Calculator™” developed by the Hazardous Materials Response Division, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Seattle, WA.
- Owens, E.H., 1994. Canadian coastal environments, shoreline processes and oil spill cleanup. Environmental Emergency Branch, Environ. Canada, Ottawa, Ontario; Report EPS 3/SP/5, 328.
- Owens, E.H., 1998. Field Guide for the Protection and Cleanup of Oiled Shorelines. Environment Canada, Atlantic Region, Environmental Emergencies Section, Dartmouth, NS, 2nd edition, 201 pp.
- Owens, E.H., 1999. Practical guidelines or “rules of thumb” for spill response activities. Proc. 22nd Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 695-704.
- Owens, E.H., Cramer, M.A. and Howes, D.E., 1992. British Columbia Marine Oil Spill Shoreline Protection and Cleanup Manual. B.C. Ministry of Environment, Victoria, BC, 104 pp. plus appendices.
- Owens, E.H., Roberts, H.H., Murray, S.P. and Foget, C.R., 1985. Containment strategies for marine oil spills in nearshore waters. Proc. International Oil Spill Conference, American Petroleum Institute, Pub. No. 4385, Washington, DC, 113-120.
- Owens, E.H. and Sergy, G.A., 1996. Oil on shorelines and shoreline treatment — A state-of-knowledge review. Proc. 19th Arctic and Marine Oilspill Programme (AMOP) Technical Seminar, Environment Canada, Ottawa, ON, 1105–1116.
- SEA (eds.), 1995. The Use of Chemical Countermeasures Product Data for Oil Spill Planning and Response – Workshop Proceedings, American Petroleum Institute, Washington, DC, 83 pp.
- Walker, A.H., Michel, J., Benggio, B., Scholz, D., Boyd, J. and Walker W., 1999. Job Aids for Spill Countermeasures Technologies. US EPA Region III, 2 volumes.
- Walker, A.H., Michel, J., Benggio, B., Scholz, D., Boyd, J. and Walker W., 2001. Selection guide for oil spill applied technologies: Volume 1 — Decision Making. Report for EPA Region III, RRT III, RRT Region IV, and NOAA by SEA, Cape Charles, VA, 151 pp.
- Walker, A.H., Michel, J., Canevari, G., Kucklick, J., Scholz, D., Benson, C.A., Overton, E. and B. Shane. Chemical Oil Spill Treating Agents. Marine Spill Response Corporation, Washington, D.C. MSRC Technical Report Series 93-015, 328 pp.
- Warren Spring Laboratory, 1982. Oil Spill Cleanup of the Coastline — A Technical Manual. Dept. of Industry, Stevenage, U.K., 72 pp.

8.6. *Additional Resources*

SCAT — Copies of the NOAA Shoreline Assessment Manual, NOAA SCAT forms and other Job Aids can be downloaded from:

http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/shor_aid/shor_aid.html

SCAT Forms — the most up-to-date versions of the SCAT SOS forms (2013) can be downloaded from:

<http://www.shorelinescat.com/>

NOAA spill tools web site:

<http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/>

Other sources of information on SCAT surveys include:

CEDRE

<http://www.cedre.fr/en/publication/operational-guide/surveying/surveying.php>

REMPEC

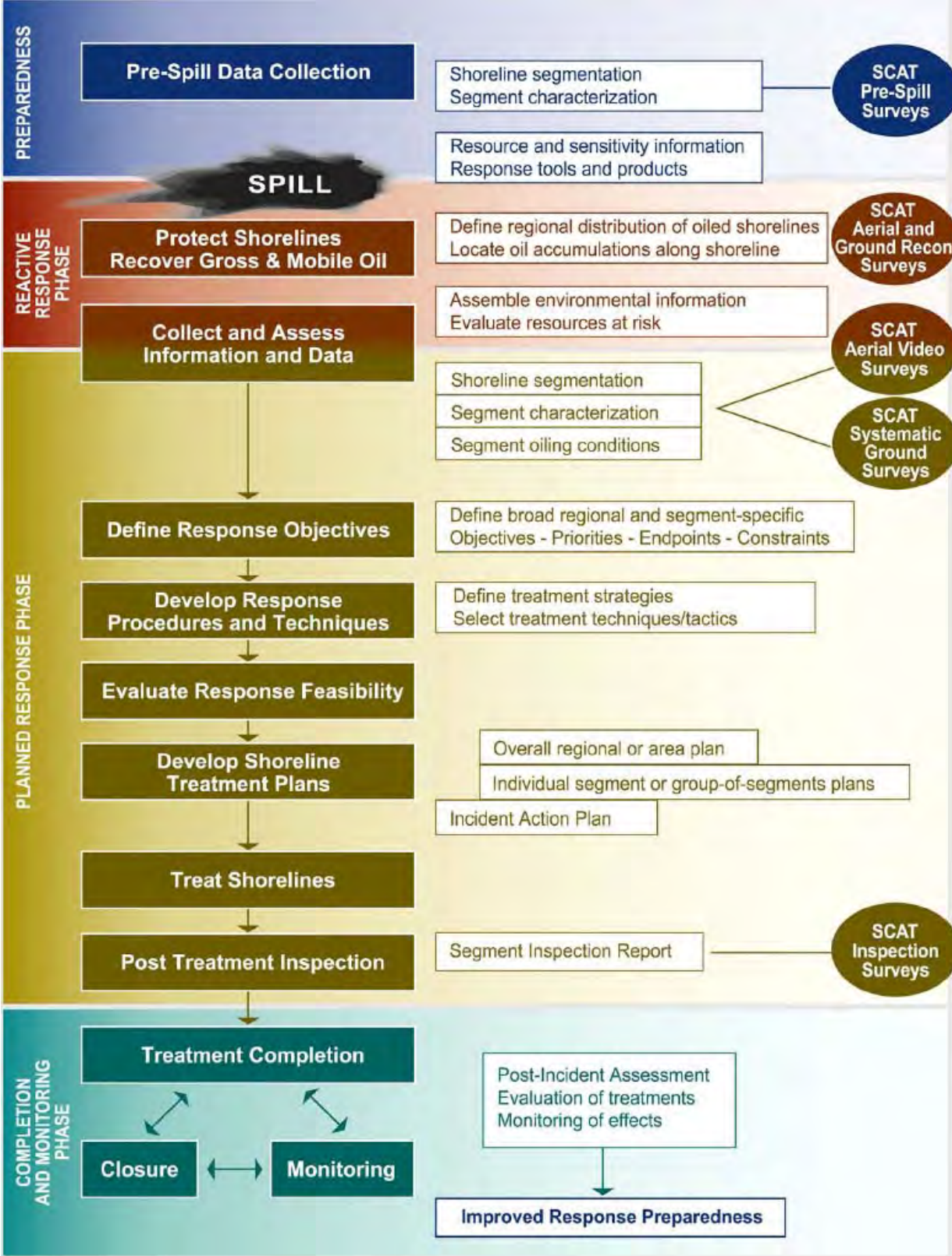
<http://www.posow.org/documentation/manual/shorelineassessmentwebversion.pdf>

UK MCA

<http://www.dft.gov.uk/mca/corp119ext.pdf>

ATTACHMENT A

SCAT ACTIVITY FLOW DIAGRAM



Attachment B

ICS and the Environmental Unit

B.1	Environmental Unit Organization	3
B.2	Environmental Unit Responsibilities	4
B.3	Technical Specialists	6

B.1 Environmental Unit Organization

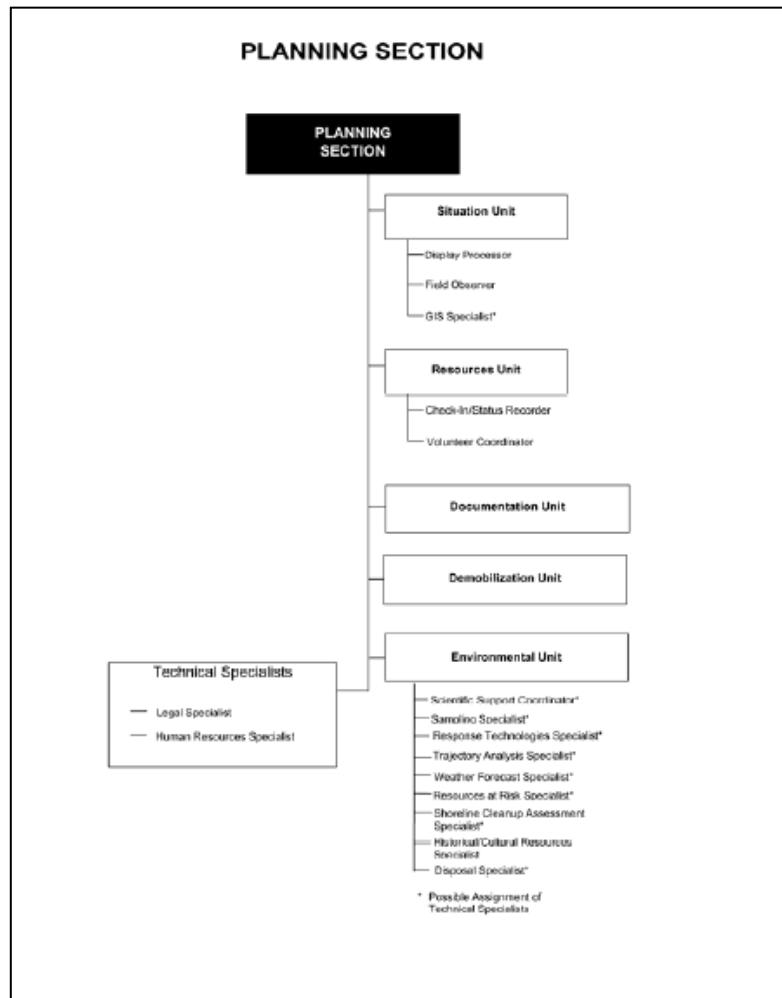
The Environmental Unit is within the Planning Section:



(after USCG IMH, 2006)

Environmental Unit:

- A key function of the Planning Section
- Goal is to support OPS
 1. Characterize and predict environmental conditions and oil movement/behavior
 2. Priorities for protection and cleanup; Endpoints.
 3. Coordinate environmental stakeholder issues.
- After Safety and Health of the public and spill responders, environmental protection and mitigation is the highest priority of response (usually before socio-economic concerns).



(after USCG IMH, 2006)

B.2 Environmental Unit Responsibilities

Environmental matters of the response:

- Strategic Assessment – Operations Support
- Surveillance of Oil Movement and Environmental Conditions
- Predictions (modeling) of oil transport and behavior, and Environmental Conditions
- Monitoring environmental effects:

Permitting: Cleanup, disposal/waste management, protection and treatment techniques, access, decanting, etc.

ENVIRONMENTAL UNIT RESPONSIBILITIES

Prepare Environmental Data for Situation Unit, Unified Command, Operations Section, Planning Section Chief, Joint Information Center, Regional Response Team, Trustee Agencies, Tribes and other Stakeholders:

- Current and Predicted Conditions
- Weather, Tides, Oil Movement and Fate

ENVIRONMENTAL UNIT PRIORITIES

- Identify sensitive areas and recommend response priorities.
- Consult Natural Resource Trustees and provide input on wildlife protection strategies.
- Determine extent, fate, effects of oiling.
- Weather forecasts (tides, sunset)
- Monitor environmental consequences of response actions
- Develop shoreline cleanup and assessment plans.
- ID and initiate permitting/consultation requirements (ESA, MMPA, decanting,...)
- FOSC's Historical/Cultural Resources Technical Specialist
- Develop plan to protect affected resources, including OPS CONSTRAINTS
- Evaluate Alternative Response Tech.
- Develop Waste Management, Disposal Plans – WA DOE credit
- Develop Sampling plan – where, how many, why, who, chain of custody.
- Maintain Unit Log (214).

B.3 Technical Specialists

The Environmental Unit Leader is responsible for managing the unit and its resources, which include a Deputy Environmental Unit Leader and a number of Technical Specialists. A response may include any number of the Technical Specialists and these roles may be filled by a group or one individual may fill more than one Technical Specialist role.

- ❖ Scientific Support Coordinator (NOAA SSC)
- ❖ Resources at Risk Specialist
- ❖ Response Technologies Specialist
- ❖ Trajectory Analysis Specialist
- ❖ Weather Specialist
- ❖ Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Specialist
- ❖ Historical/Cultural Resources Specialist
- ❖ Disposal/Waste Management Specialist
- ❖ Sampling Specialist

<p>SCIENTIFIC SUPPORT COORDINATOR</p> <p>The Scientific Support Coordinator (SSC) is a technical specialist and is defined in the NCP as the principal advisor to the FOSC for scientific issues.</p> <p>The SSC is responsible for providing expertise on chemical hazards, field observations, trajectory analysis, resources at risk, environmental tradeoffs of countermeasures and cleanup methods, and information management.</p> <p>The SSC is also charged with gaining consensus on scientific issues affecting the response, but also ensuring that differing opinions within the scientific community are communicated to the incident command.</p> <p>Additionally, the SSC is responsible for providing data on weather, tides, currents, and other applicable environmental conditions. The SSC can serve as the Environmental Unit Leader.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. Attend planning meetings. Determine resource needs. Provide overflight maps and trajectory analysis, including the actual location of oil, to the Situation Unit. Provide weather, tidal and current information. Obtain consensus on scientific issues affecting the response. In conjunction with Natural Resource Trustee Representatives and the FOSC’s Historical/Cultural Resources Specialist, develop a prioritized list of resources at risk, including threatened and endangered species. Provide information on chemical hazards. Evaluate environmental tradeoffs of countermeasures and cleanup methods, and response endpoints. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG) 	<p>TRAJECTORY ANALYSIS TECHNICAL SPECIALIST</p> <p>The Trajectory Analysis Technical Specialist is responsible for providing to the UC, projections and estimates of the movement and behavior of the spill.</p> <p>The specialist will combine visual observations, remote sensing information, and computer modeling, as well as observed and predicted tidal, current, and weather data to form these analyses.</p> <p>Additionally, the specialist is responsible for interfacing with local experts (weather service, academia, researchers, etc.) in formulating these analyses. Trajectory maps, over-flight maps, tides and current data, and weather forecasts will be supplied by the specialist to the Situation Unit for dissemination throughout the ICP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. Schedule and conduct spill observations/overflights, as needed. Gather pertinent information on tides, currents and weather from all available sources. Provide a trajectory and over-flight maps, weather forecasts, and tidal and current information. Provide briefing on observations and analyses to the proper personnel. Demobilize in accordance with the Incident Demobilization Plan. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG).
<p>RESPONSE TECHNOLOGIES SPECIALIST</p> <p>The Response Technologies Specialist is responsible for evaluating the opportunities to use various response technologies, including mechanical containment and recovery, dispersant or other chemical countermeasures, in-situ burning, and bioremediation.</p> <p>The specialist will conduct the consultation and planning required by deploying a specific response technology, and by articulating the environmental tradeoffs of using or not using a specific response technique.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. Participate in planning meetings, as required. 	<p>SAMPLING TECHNICAL SPECIALIST</p> <p>The Sampling Technical Specialist is responsible for providing a sampling plan for the coordinated collection, documentation, storage, transportation, and submittal to appropriate laboratories for analysis or storage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Review Common Responsibilities. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. Determine resource needs. Participate in planning meetings as required. Identify and alert appropriate laboratories. Meet with team to develop an initial sampling plan and strategy, and review sampling and labeling procedures.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Determine resource needs. e. Gather data pertaining to the spill, including spill location, type and amount of petroleum spilled, physical and chemical properties, weather and sea conditions, and resources at risk. f. Identify the available response technologies (RT) that may be effective on the specific spilled petroleum. g. Make initial notification to all agencies that have authority over the use of RT. h. Keep the PSC advised of RT issues. i. Provide status reports to appropriate requesters. j. Establish communications with the RRT to coordinate RT activities. k. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Set up site map to monitor the location of samples collected and coordinate with GIS staff. Coordinate sampling activities with the NRDAR Representative, Investigation Team, and legal advisors. h. Provide status reports to appropriate requesters. i. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG).
<p>WEATHER FORECAST TECHNICAL SPECIALIST The Weather Forecast Technical Specialist is responsible for acquiring and reporting incident-specific weather forecasts. The specialist will interpret and analyze data from NOAA’s National Weather Service and other sources. This person will be available to answer specific weather related response questions and coordinate with the Scientific Support Coordinator and Trajectory Analysis Specialist as needed. The specialist will provide weather forecasts to the Situation Unit for dissemination throughout the ICP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. b. Gather pertinent weather information from all appropriate sources. c. Provide incident-specific weather forecasts on an assigned schedule. d. Provide briefings on weather observations and forecasts to the proper personnel. e. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG). 	<p>RESOURCES AT RISK (RAR) TECHNICAL SPECIALIST The Resources at Risk (RAR) Technical Specialist is responsible for the identification of resources thought to be at risk from exposure to the spilled oil through the analysis of known and anticipated oil movement, and the location of natural, economic resources, and historic properties. The RAR Technical Specialist considers the relative importance of the resources and the relative risk to develop a priority list for protection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. b. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. c. Participate in planning meetings as required. d. Determine resource needs. e. Obtain current and forecasted status information from the Situation Unit. f. Following consultation with Natural Resource Trustee Representatives, identify natural RAR, including threatened and endangered species, and their critical habitat. g. Following consultation with the FOSC’s Historical/Cultural Resources Specialist, identify historic properties at risk. h. Identify socio-economic resources at risk. i. In consultation with Natural Resource Trustee Representatives, Land Management Agency Representatives, and the FOSC’s Historical/Cultural Resources Specialist, develop a prioritized list of the resources at risk for use by the Planning Section. j. Provide status reports to appropriate requesters. k. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG).
<p>SHORELINE CLEANUP ASSESSMENT TECHNICAL SPECIALIST The Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technical Specialist is responsible for providing appropriate cleanup recommendations as to the types of the various shorelines and the degree to which they</p>	<p>HISTORICAL/CULTURAL RESOURCES TECHNICAL SPECIALIST The Historical/Cultural Resources Technical Specialist is responsible for identifying and resolving issues related to any historical or cultural sites that are threatened or impacted</p>

<p>have been impacted. This technical specialist will recommend the need for, and the numbers of, Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Teams (SCATs) and will be responsible for making cleanup recommendations to the Environmental Unit Leader. Additionally, this specialist will recommend cleanup endpoints that address the question of “How clean is clean?”</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. b. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. c. Obtain a briefing and special instructions from the Environmental Unit Leader. d. Participate in Planning Section meetings. e. Recommend the need for and number of SCATs. f. Describe shoreline types and oiling conditions. g. Identify sensitive resources (ecological, recreational, historical properties, economic). h. Recommend the need for cleanup. In consultation with Natural Resource Trustee Representatives, Land Management Agency Representatives, and the FOSC’s Historical/Cultural Resources Specialist. i. Recommend cleanup priorities. In consultation with Natural Resource Trustee Representatives, Land Management Agency Representatives, and the FOSC’s Historical/Cultural Resources Specialist. j. Monitor cleanup effectiveness. k. Recommend shoreline cleanup methods and endpoints l. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG). 	<p>during an incident. The Specialist must understand and be able to implement a “Programmatic Agreement on Protection of Historic Properties” (Consult NRT’s document “Programmatic Agreement on the Protection of Historic Properties During Emergency Response under the NCP” for guidance) as well as consulting with State Historic Preservation Officers (SHPO), land management agencies, appropriate native tribes and organizations, and other concerned parties. The technical specialist must identify historical/cultural sites and develop strategies for protection and cleanup of those sites in order to minimize damage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. b. Review Agency Representative Responsibilities in Chapter 6. c. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. d. Implement the Programmatic Agreement (PA) for the FOSC. e. If a PA is not used, coordinate Section 106 consultations with the SHPO. f. Consult and reach consensus with the concerned parties on affected historical/cultural sites. g. Identify and prioritize threatened or impacted historical/cultural sites. h. Develop response strategies to protect historical/cultural sites. i. Participate in the testing and evaluation of cleanup techniques used on historical/cultural sites. j. Ensure compliance with applicable Federal/State regulations. k. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG).
<p>DISPOSAL (WASTE MANAGEMENT) TECHNICAL SPECIALIST</p> <p>The Disposal (Waste Management) Technical Specialist is responsible for providing the OSC with a Disposal Plan that details the collection, sampling, monitoring, temporary storage, transportation, recycling, and disposal of all anticipated response wastes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Review Common Responsibilities in Chapter 2. b. Review Technical Specialist Job Aid. c. Determine resource needs. d. Participate in planning meetings as required. e. Develop a Pre-Cleanup Plan and monitor recleanup operations, if appropriate. f. Develop a detailed Waste Management Plan. g. Calculate and verify the volume of petroleum recovered, including petroleum collected with sediment/sand, etc. h. Provide status reports to appropriate requesters. i. Maintain Unit Log (ICS 214-CG). 	

(from USCG IMH, 2006)

Attachment C

SCAT Management, Planning and Tracking Forms

SHORELINE OILING ASSESSMENT SURVEY (SCAT) PROGRAM MANAGEMENT, PLANNING AND TRACKING FORMS

SUMMARY

SCAT management forms generally fall into three categories based on their functionality and purpose:

1. Long-range strategy and survey planning table,
 2. Short-term rolling mission planner, and
 3. Daily field team tasking and logistics plan.
-

A. MANAGEMENT, PLANNING AND TRACKING FORMS

No “official” ICS forms exist for the management of a Shoreline Oiling Assessment Survey, or SCAT, program as part of an overall response within ICS, but a number of forms have evolved and become standard practice over many spill response operations, and are available from various agencies in the U.S., Canada, Great Britain and from other nations and organizations. These “standard practice” forms provide managers and coordinators with a process to develop and track long-range (weeks to months), short-term (days to weeks), and daily strategies and tactics.

At a minimum, three types of forms should be distributed widely each day (or as often as produced) to key members of the Incident Management Team (IMT), that is, within the Incident Command Post (ICP). Those on the distribution list include: participating agencies, other Environmental Unit (EU) teams, Planning, Operations, Logistics, and Safety, as well as the Situation Unit, Air Operations, Documentation and other IMT members as appropriate.

1. LONG-RANGE SURVEY STRATEGY

A “**SCAT Strategy and Tracking Table**” provides a long-range survey strategy plan for a period of a month or longer (Figure 1).

- The survey strategy is developed by the SCAT Coordinator in consultation with the Environmental Unit Leader (EUL).
- The table is created by the SCAT Logistics Coordinator and enables planning for long-term staffing and logistics support, taking into account factors such as survey priorities, low-tide windows, environmental constraints (e.g. bird or turtle nesting site timing), etc.
- This same table tracks each mission and activity that has been completed and provides a program history.

2. SHORT-TERM ROLLING MISSION PLAN

Planning field activities for the several days to ensure appropriate data, logistics and safety support, requires a continuous updating process that is based on survey priorities and on work that has been completed.

- This process is accomplished with a “**SCAT Mission Planner**” that is generated by the SCAT Logistics Coordinator in consultation with the SCAT Coordinator and the EUL.
- This Mission Planner is updated and reissued daily by the SCAT Logistics Coordinator based on the completion of scheduled prior missions and provides a rolling 7-day (or 10- or 14-day) plan to accomplish the priorities set by the EUL (Figure 2).
- Input to the Mission Planner also is provided by Operations (or SCAT Ops Liaison) who indicate when treatment in a segment or zone is nearing target end points, or has been completed, so that appropriate surveys (Post-Treatment Assessment – PTA) or inspections (Shoreline Inspection Report - SIR) can be scheduled.
- This rolling plan is based on the long-range survey strategy as developed in the “SCAT Strategy and Tracking Table”

3. DAILY TEAM TASKING

A key form which links the management of the SCAT program to the ICS process and the planning cycle is the “**SCAT Team Daily Tasking and Logistics Plan**” which describes the planned activities for the following day, i.e. Next Operational Period (Figure 3).

- The “SCAT Team Daily Tasking and Logistics Plan” is prepared by the SCAT Logistics Coordinator and provided to the SCAT Coordinator, who passes this on to the EUL to be discussed during preparation for the Tactics Work Period and Tactics Meeting during each Planning Cycle.
- The field activities outlined in this daily tasking plan are part of the package of EU field assignments and activities reviewed in the Tactics Meeting to ultimately aid the development of the Work Assignments that are captured on the ICS 204 forms (*Assignment List*) for the Next Operating Period. These field assignments are then included in the Incident Action Plan (IAP).
- An example of an ICS 204 form can be found at:
<https://nrm.dfg.ca.gov/FileHandler.ashx?DocumentVersionID=80572>

Templates for each of these three forms are provided on the following pages. The “SCAT Strategy and Tracking Table” (Figure 1) is populated with fictitious information: with the yellow rows tracking completed missions and activities and the white rows indicating the planned strategy and missions. Typically this table or a similar planning table would be used by the SCAT Coordinator to plan forward up to 30 days or even longer.

B. FIELD AND PROCESS FORMS

In addition to these management and planning forms, the other, more commonly known set of field forms that are part of a Shoreline Oiling Assessment, or SCAT, survey program are those used during a response both in the field to document shoreline oiling and as part of the process to manage the information and recommendations coming from the field. These SCAT process forms have evolved over many years of responses in different countries and are available from a range of response agencies in countries and organizations around the world.

This suite of field and process forms includes:

- **Shoreline Oiling Survey (SOS)** forms to capture the field teams’ observations; these SOS forms include variations for marine and lake shores, river and stream banks, and for temperate and winter/arctic environments.
- **Shoreline Treatment Recommendation (STR)** forms that provide recommendations for each oiled segment and provide an opportunity for review and input on each set of treatment recommendations by each key member of the IMT (e.g. EUL, Planning Section Chief, Operations Section Chief, State Historical Preservation Officer, and any other consultation reviews as required); once approved, the STR effectively is a Work Permit for Operations.
- **Post-Treatment Assessment (PTA)** survey forms that document the status of a segment that is ready for, or close to, a sign off inspection; and
- **Shoreline/Segment Inspection Report (SIR)** forms that document that end point criteria have been met for a segment and that agreement has been reached that No Further Treatment (NFT) is required. SIRs may be required for different stages of a multi-phase response.

Copies of the SOS forms for coasts, lakes, rivers, and streams and templates for the STR and SIR forms are available under “Forms” at <http://shorelineSCAT.com>.

Additional tables and spreadsheets for program management can be created to track specific activities, such as the status and progress of STRs and of the inspection (PTA) and sign-off (SIR) surveys. One example of a summary table that records completed Daily Field Activities is provided in Figure 4. This “SCAT Daily Field Activities” table simply records how many teams were deployed each day and the category of missions that were completed or attempted.

Figure 1 SCAT Program Strategy and Tracking Table

	SCAT TEAM # 1	SCAT TEAM # 2	SCAT TEAM # 3
Sunday, January 02, 2000	Travel Day TL = Team Lead	Travel Day TL	Travel Day TL
Monday, January 03, 2000	N Duck Bay MON PL01-029 & PL01-036-10 - both passed	Cancelled due to access issues (Wind) West Nags Head SIR TB04-004-10	Kiawah BP
	TL	TL	TL
Tuesday, January 04, 2000	Cancelled Due to Small Craft Advisory Night Before Fencil Isle SIR SB05-017-10	Cancelled Due to Small Craft Advisory Night Before Callope Island MON LF01-044-30	Kiawah BP
	TL	TL	TL
Wednesday, January 05, 2000	N Duck SIR PL01-036-10 - passed	N Duck Bay PTA PL01-034-30 - failed MON PL01-053-30 - passed MON PL01-053-70 - did not get to	Office - profile data reduction
	TL	TL	TL
Thursday, January 06, 2000	Cancelled Due to Access Issues West Kiawah PTA LF01-036-20	Cancelled Due to Fog Duck Bay - partial MON SB05-002-10 Crab Isle SIR SB05-017-10	Rodondo Beach SIR PL01-008-10 - passed
	TL	TL	TL
Friday, January 07, 2000	Kiawah Beach PTA LF02-007-10 - passed	N Drum PTA PL01-053-20 - passed	Callope Island MON LF01-044-30 - failed
	TL	TL	TL
Saturday, January 08, 2000	N Duck Bay SIR PL01-029-10 - failed	Riverboat Pass SIR SB05-014-20 - passed due to ALARP	N Duck Bay MON PL01-053-70 - passed due to NEE
	TL	TL	TL
Sunday, January 09, 2000	N Drum Bay SIR PL01-027-10 w/OPS	Canon Beach Augering	Canon Beach Augering
	TL	TL	TL
Monday, January 10, 2000	N Duck PTA PL01-034-10	N Duck Bay SIR PL01-053-20 - if has passed PTA	Rodondo Beach Beach Profiles 1-5 for March and PM site #25
	TL	TL	TL
Tuesday, January 11, 2000	Pit Survey check-up at all areas	Canon Beach Augering	Rodondo Beach Augering
	TL	TL	TL
Wednesday, January 12, 2000	Riverboat Pass SIR SB05-015-10 w/ OPS - will need 3 crewboats	Canon Beach Pit Survey	Rodondo Beach Pit Survey
	TL	TL	TL
Thursday, January 13, 2000	Kiawah BP	Little Kiawah BP	N Duck Bay SIR PL01-053-70 - if has passed PTA
	TL	TL	TL

Figure 2 SCAT Mission Planner

DATE	SCAT TEAM # 1	SCAT TEAM # 2	SCAT TEAM # 3	SCAT TEAM # 4
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission(s) Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead
DD Month YYYY	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead	Location Mission Team Lead

This template is a rolling planning table that is updated DAILY
Provides a 7-day plan for upcoming missions

MISSION

SOS Shoreline Oiling Assessment Survey
PTA Post-Treatment Assessment Survey
SIR Shoreline Inspection Report Survey

OLS Operations Liaison Support
BP Beach Profiling
MON Monitoring
PM Photo Monitoring

Figure 3 SCAT Team Daily Tasking and Logistics Plan

SCAT TEAM LOGISTICS for DD Month YYYY				Issued : Date	Time	
Team	Staff		Survey Area	Mission	Logistical Arrangements	Time
SCAT #1	Team Lead	Name	<u>County/Parish</u>			
		Cell Phone	<u>Place Name</u>			
	FED		Segment Number(s)			
	STATE					
	Safety					
SCAT #2	Team Lead	Name	<u>County/Parish</u>			
		Cell Phone	<u>Place Name</u>			
	FED		Segment Number(s)			
	STATE					
	Safety					
SCAT #3	Team Lead	Name	<u>County/Parish</u>			
		Cell Phone	<u>Place Name</u>			
	FED		Segment Number(s)			
	STATE					
	Safety					
SCAT #4	Team Lead	Name	<u>County/Parish</u>			
		Cell Phone	<u>Place Name</u>			
	FED		Segment Number(s)			
	STATE					
	Safety					

Mission Codes

SOS = Shoreline Oiling Assessment Survey

PTA = Post-Treatment Assessment Survey

SIR = Segment Inspection Report Survey

OLS = OPS Liaison Support

BP = Beach Profiling Survey

MON = Monitoring

PM = Photo-Monitoring

Time

Enter scheduled time for each logistics action

OCC 30 March 2013

Figure 4 SCAT Daily Field Activities

updated through 31 Jan 2000

DATE	# of teams planned	WX or Safety	Logistics (Boat/UTV)	Other (see notes at right)	SOS	PTA	SIR	BP	PM	OPERATIONS SUPPORT (OLS)	MON	
01/01/00	0											New Year's Day - Holiday
01/02/00	0											Travel Day
01/03/00	3	3										*safety- safety stand-down ICP
01/04/00	6			2						4		*other- office / *ICP- auguring meeting
01/05/00	6	1								4	1	
01/06/00	6	2								4		
01/07/00	6	2								4		
01/08/00	6			1	1	1		1		2		*other- office due to small craft advison
01/09/00	6	2						1		3		
01/10/00	6	2						1		3		
01/11/00	5					1			1	3		
01/12/00	6					1	1		1	3		
01/13/00	6			6								*other- auguring meeting ICP
01/14/00	6	1			1					4		
01/15/00	9	2			1	1	1			6		
01/16/00	9	3								6		
01/17/00	9				2	1				6		
01/18/00	9			1	1		1			6	0.5	*office -profile data
01/19/00	9	2			1	1				6		
01/20/00	6		1		1.5	1.5	1.5				2	
01/21/00	10				3					6	1	
01/22/00	9					2	2			6	1	
01/23/00	9				1	1	1		2	4		
01/24/00	9		1		2				2	4		
01/25/00	5				2	1		2				
01/26/00	5				1	1	1	1		2		*OLS - Waikiki for final data collection
01/27/00	4			3		1						*other- safety training at ICF
01/28/00	11	11										all teams canceled due to Wa
01/29/00	10	10										all teams canceled due to Wa
01/30/00	10	10										all teams canceled due to Wa
01/31/00	10				2	2	2			5		
JANUARY	211	51	2	13	19.5	15.5	10.5	6	6	91	6.5	

Attachment D

Establishing a Shoreline Assessment (SCAT) Program

Checklists from the NW Area Contingency Plan- DRAFT
(March 2013) available at:

<http://private.rrt10nwac.com/Files/WorkGroup/130315055901.pdf>

ESTABLISHING A SHORELINE ASSESSMENT PROGRAM

Our shorelines are the source of environmental, cultural, and economic vitality. Physically removing oil from the shoreline must be done with great care, using trained workers, to avoid additional harm to environmental or cultural resources, or injuries to workers. Strategies for removing oil from impacted shorelines should strike a balance between environmental impact and benefit. Decisions on how - or even if - to remove oil from shorelines are made using information that is gathered through a systematic and scientific process. This process is called Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique (SCAT).

1
2 The purpose of a SCAT Program is to:

- 3
4
- 5 • Systematically survey and document the area affected by oil to provide rapid and accurate geographic descriptions of the shoreline oiling conditions and real-time issues or clean up constraints;
 - 6
 - 7 • Recommend treatment or cleanup of oiled shorelines to OPS and UC;
 - 8 • Recommend shoreline cleanup endpoint standards to OPS and UC;
 - 9 • Monitor and evaluate shoreline treatment;
 - 10 • Provide inspection teams for segment sign off; and,
 - 11 • Manage data collected from shoreline surveys.
- 12

13 This "Establishing a Shoreline Assessment Program" document was prepared by the Northwest Area Committee (NWAC) to provide guidelines for setting up a Shoreline Assessment (i.e. SCAT) Program during an oil spill incident and is designed to assist spill response managers establish a SCAT program, from "pre-SCAT" activities through the treatment endpoints and sign off process.

14
15
16
17
18

19 The information provided within this document is NOT intended to be prescriptive and may be modified as appropriate with subsequent updates to the Northwest Area Contingency Plan. The document is designed to be generic and generalized, and it is expected that spill response managers will modify as appropriate to the conditions of each incident.

20
21
22
23

24
25 This document includes:

- 26
- 27 • An organizational chart with color-coded descriptions of the roles and responsibilities of positions working in support of a SCAT function.
 - 28
 - 29
 - 30 • A work flow/timing diagram highlighting the major milestones in a SCAT program (which also serves as a short-form SCAT Coordinator checklist) and a depiction of key SCAT tasks as they relate to the ICS planning "P."
 - 31
 - 32
 - 33

ESTABLISHING A SHORELINE ASSESSMENT PROGRAM

- 34 • A data flow diagram depicting information flow from the field to decision makers
35 through each SCAT step.
36
- 37 • A long-form SCAT Coordinator Checklist that is designed to aid users in
38 establishing a SCAT program at an oil spill that has or will likely impact shorelines.
39 The checklist is divided into three sections (Pre-SCAT, Active SCAT, and Sign-Off)
40 to reflect the major phases in the SCAT process. The checklist is further organized
41 by position-specific responsibilities and includes Best Practices where applicable.
42
- 43 • A list of select SCAT resources available for download that can provide further
44 information for responders.
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52

DRAFT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

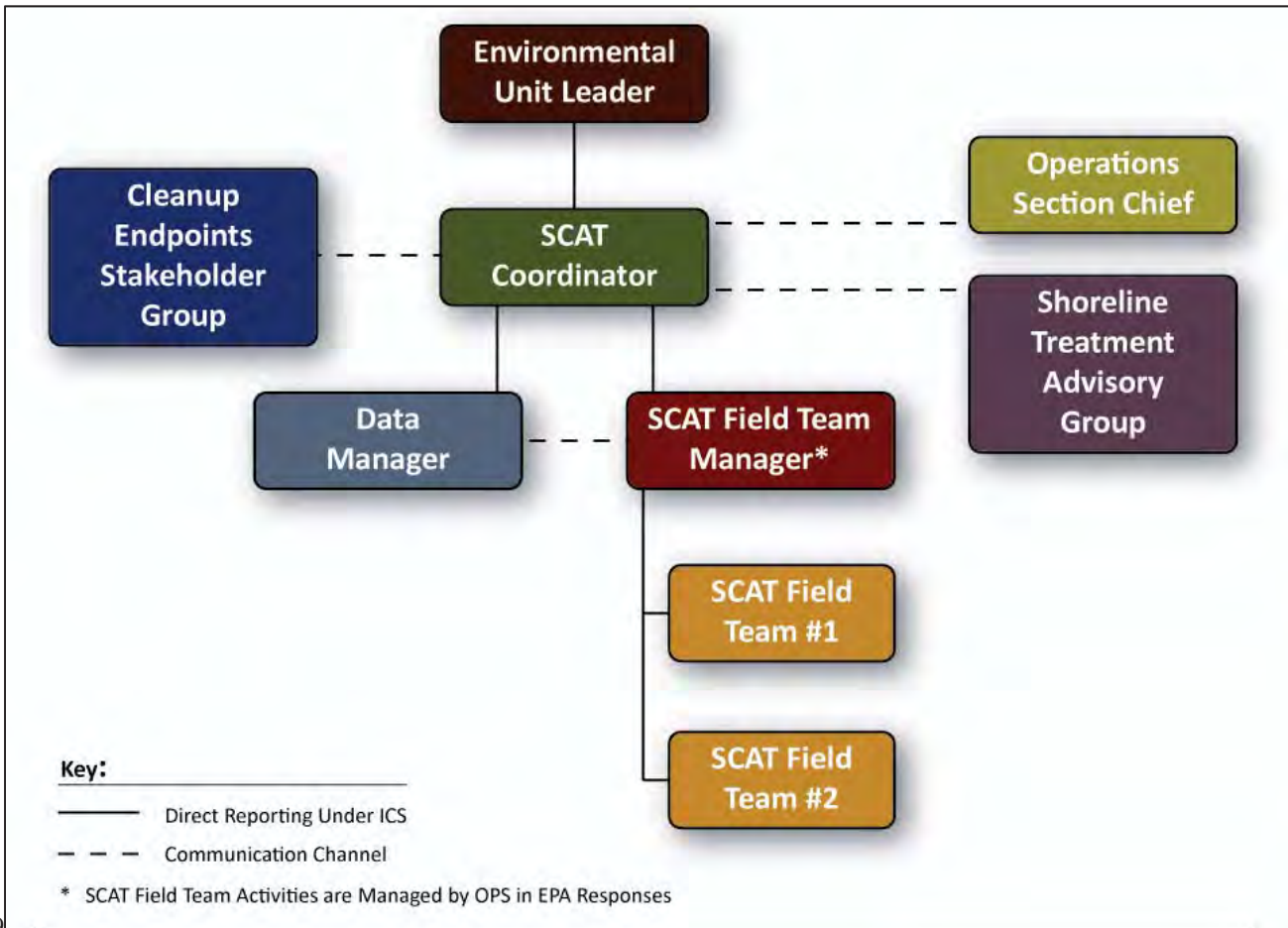
SECTION	PAGE
Organizational Chart.....	5
EPA Organizational Chart.....	6
Roles & Responsibilities.....	7
Workflow & Milestones	9
SCAT in the Planning "P"	10
Data Flow	11
SCAT Program Implementation Checklist.....	12
Pre-SCAT Phase	13
Active SCAT Phase	22
Sign-Off Phase.....	29
Select SCAT Resources	32

ABBREVIATIONS & ACRONYMS

53	Abbreviation	Definition
54	EPA	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
55	ESA	Endangered Species Act
56	EU	Environmental Unit
57	EUL	Environmental Unit Leader
58	FOSC	Federal On-Scene Coordinator
59	FTP	file transfer protocol
60	HAZWOPER	hazardous waste operations and emergency response
61	GIS	geographic information system
62	GPS	global positioning system
63	IAP	incident action plan
64	ICS	Incident Command System
65	IMT	Incident Management Team
66	NEB	net environmental benefit
67	NFT	no further treatment
68	NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
69	NOO	no oil observed
70	NRDA	Natural Resource Damage Assessment
71	NWAC	Northwest Area Committee
72	OP	operational period
73	OPS	Operation Section
74	PDA	personal digital assistant
75	PPE	personal protective equipment
76	PSC	Planning Section Chief
77	QA/QC	quality assurance/quality control
78	RP	responsible party
79	RPIC	Responsible Party Incident Commander
80	RRT	Regional Response Team
81	SCAT	shoreline cleanup assessment technique
82	SIR	shoreline inspection report
83	SOSC	State On-Scene Coordinator
84	STAG	Shoreline Treatment Advisory Group
85	STR	shoreline treatment recommendation
86	SU	Situation Unit
87	UC	Unified Command
88	USCG	United States Coast Guard
89	USGS	United States Geological Survey

ORGANIZATIONAL CHART

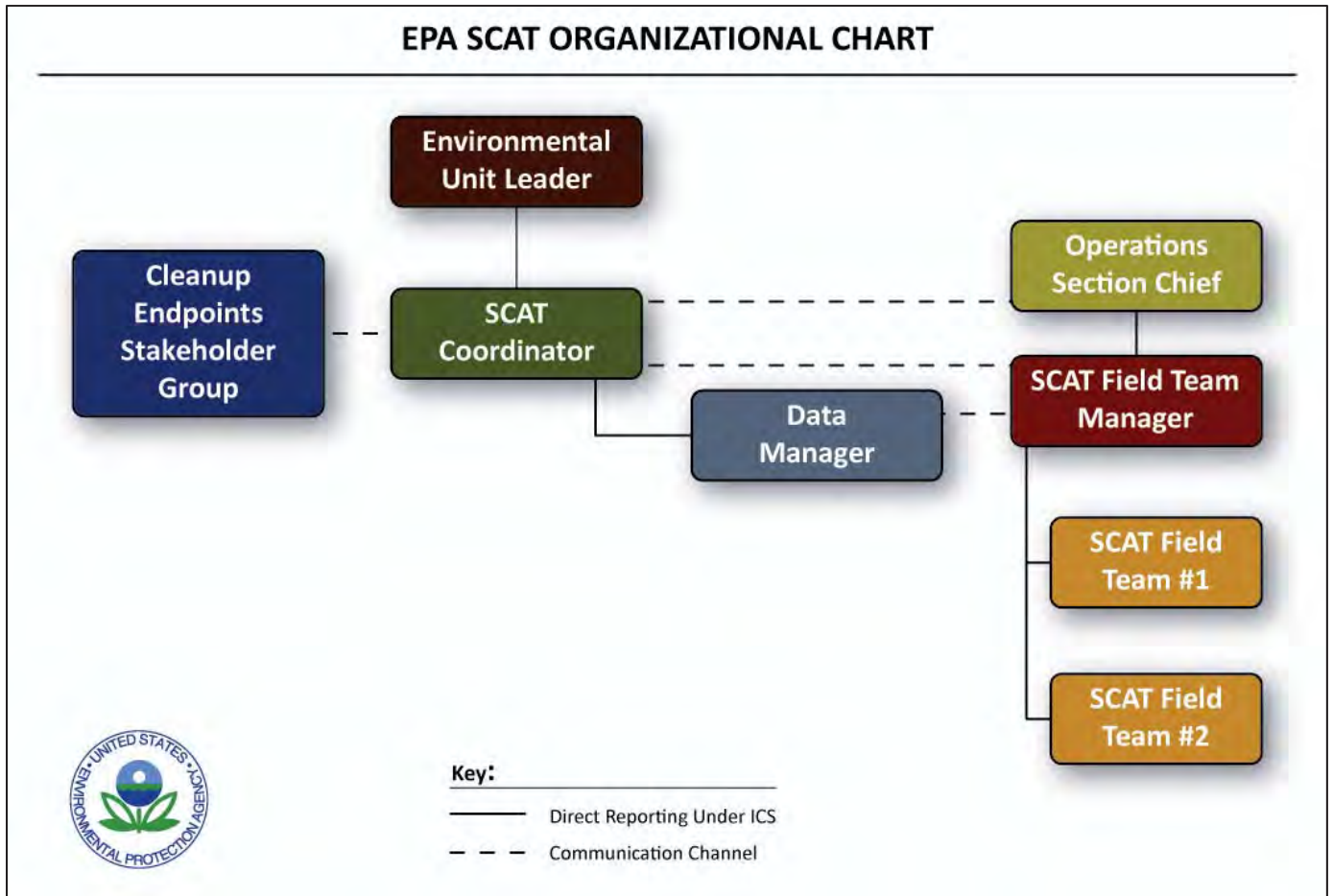
90
91



92

93 **Figure 1: Organizational Chart.** Please refer to pages 7 and 8 of this document for a
94 description of the responsibilities associated with each position.

ORGANIZATIONAL CHART



96 **Figure 2: EPA SCAT Organizational Chart.** Under EPA-led responses, SCAT teams will report
97 directly to the Operations Section. Please refer to pages 7 and 8 of this document for a
98 description of the responsibilities associated with each position.

ROLES & RESPONSIBILITIES

Environmental Unit Leader

- Communicates Command objectives to SCAT Coordinator
- Communicates SCAT progress and challenges to PSC
- May provide SCAT recommendations into IAP process

99

SCAT Coordinator

- Conducts reconnaissance to determine scope of shoreline oiling issues
- Develops a survey and reporting schedule to produce survey results in time for incorporation into the Incident Action Plans
- Sets SCAT field objectives
- Serves as the primary point of contact for all SCAT activities
- Coordinates development of treatment recommendations and cleanup endpoints for Command approval, possibly with the assistance of a Shoreline Treatment Advisory Group (see below) Leads the evaluation of treatment methods and cleanup endpoints and modifies them as necessary
- Works with Operations Section on implementation of cleanup method recommendations
- Attends tactics meetings as appropriate to help provide SCAT input into IAP development
- Briefs the response management team on issues raised by the SCAT, particularly where cleanup methods must be modified to increase effectiveness or decrease impacts
- Coordinates with other members of the response effort with concerns on shoreline assessment to optimize data sharing, including NRDA team
- Integrates cleanup concerns of the various resource agencies and managers into the decision-making process, possibly through a Cleanup Endpoint Stakeholder Group.

100

Deputy SCAT Coordinator (optional position or may be fulfilled by the SCAT Coordinator)

- An optional, early phase position primarily responsible for establishing and maintaining communication for mutual understanding and cooperation between SCAT program and Division leaders in OPS
- May conduct work in the command post and/or out in the field facilitating the implementation of early cleanup recommendations
- This position may function as a SCAT/Ops Liaison

101

SCAT Field Team Manager (May be combined with SCAT Coordinator)

- Serves as the primary point of contact for all SCAT field-based activities
- Develops daily assignments for each team
- Assigns SCAT teams to meet SCAT field objectives
- Ensures that teams use proper terminology and apply guidelines uniformly
- Ensures that all teams have the necessary representation and all members have the necessary training, equipment and transportation.
- Helps the team reach consensus and reports dissenting opinions when consensus is not reached to SCAT Coordinator
- Conducts briefings with SCAT team members as needed
- Ensures adequate data is collected and communicated
- Communicates physical location of SCAT teams to OPS, SO & others
- Verify that all SCAT field teams return at the end of the day
- Receives reports from field teams and synthesizes them into a daily summary for SCAT Coordinator.

102

103

ROLES & RESPONSIBILITIES

Data Manager

- Ensures dataflow meets OPS and Planning needs
- Provides SCAT data entry forms and field manuals to field teams
- Reviews daily SCAT forms for completeness and consistency
- Enters or supervises the entry of daily SCAT data
- Conducts data QA/QC; identify common data problems and train SCAT members how to prevent future problems
- Generates daily summary reports, maps, and data summaries
- Maintains an archive of all SCAT data, forms, photographs, GPS data, etc.

104

SCAT Field Team

- Surveys shorelines as assigned by the SCAT Field Manager to evaluate oiling conditions, identify sensitive resources, determine cleanup needs, and recommend oil treatment/cleanup methods.
- Attends SCAT briefings as required

105

Operations Section Chief (or Designee)

- Coordinates on the development of treatment recommendations (may be done via STAG participation)
- Directs and oversees shoreline cleanup activities
- Coordinates specific information needs with SCAT Coordinator
- Requests SCAT cleanup verification once shoreline has been cleaned to designated endpoint

106

Shoreline Treatment Advisory Group (STAG)

- Workgroup typically comprised of staff from OPS and Planning Sections.
- Develops treatment recommendations and cleanup endpoints for Command approval
- Facilitated by SCAT Coordinator

107

Cleanup Endpoints Stakeholder Group

- A stakeholder group external to the ICS whose input and comments are sought by the SCAT Coordinator regarding the general treatment recommendations and cleanup endpoints for Command approval
- Coordinated by Liaison with assistance from the SCAT Coordinator.
- The group may be comprised of Federal, Tribal, State, Local, non-governmental organizations (such as an environmental advocacy group), or other interested parties

108

109

WORKFLOW & MILESTONES

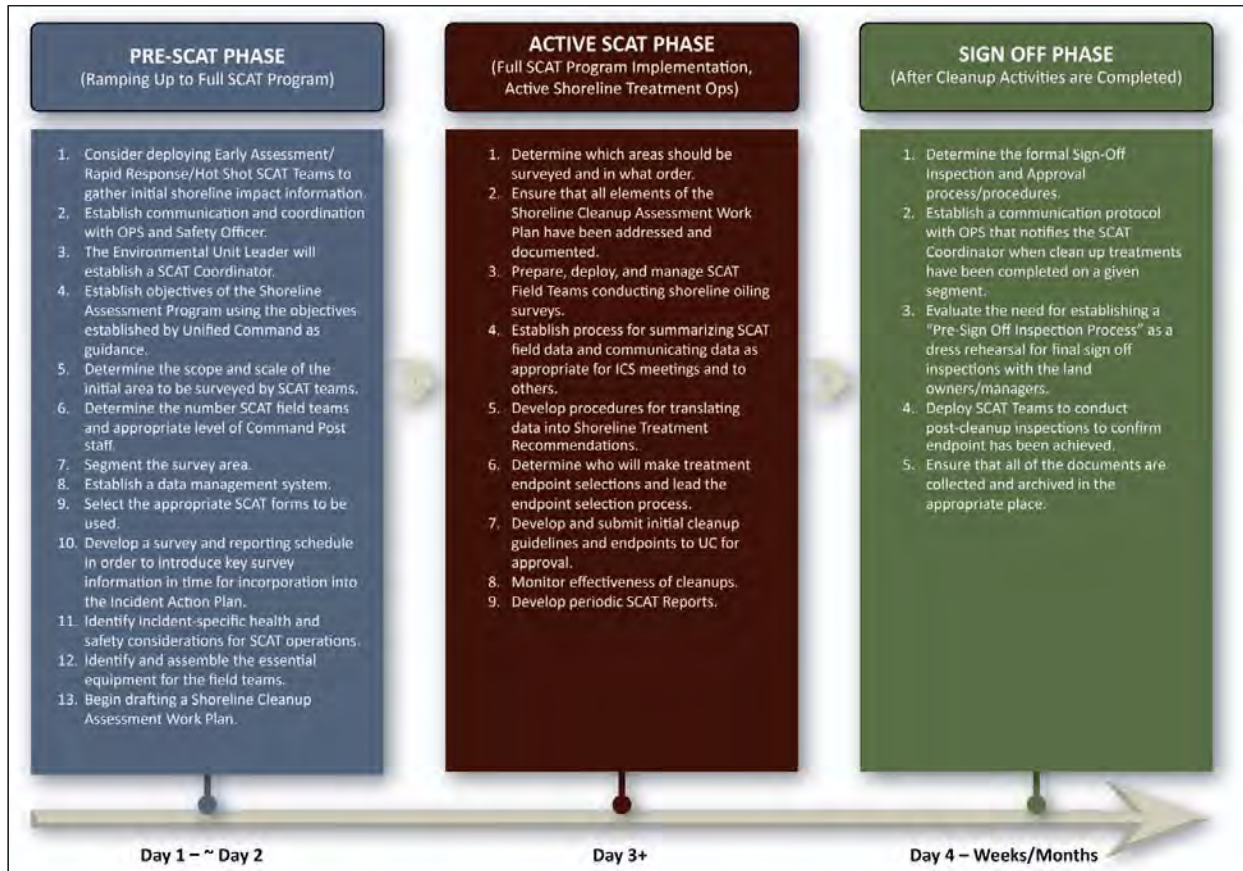


Figure 2: SCAT Workflow and Milestones (Short SCAT Coordinator Checklist). For more detailed information please see SCAT Program Implementation Checklist.

SCAT IN THE PLANNING "P"

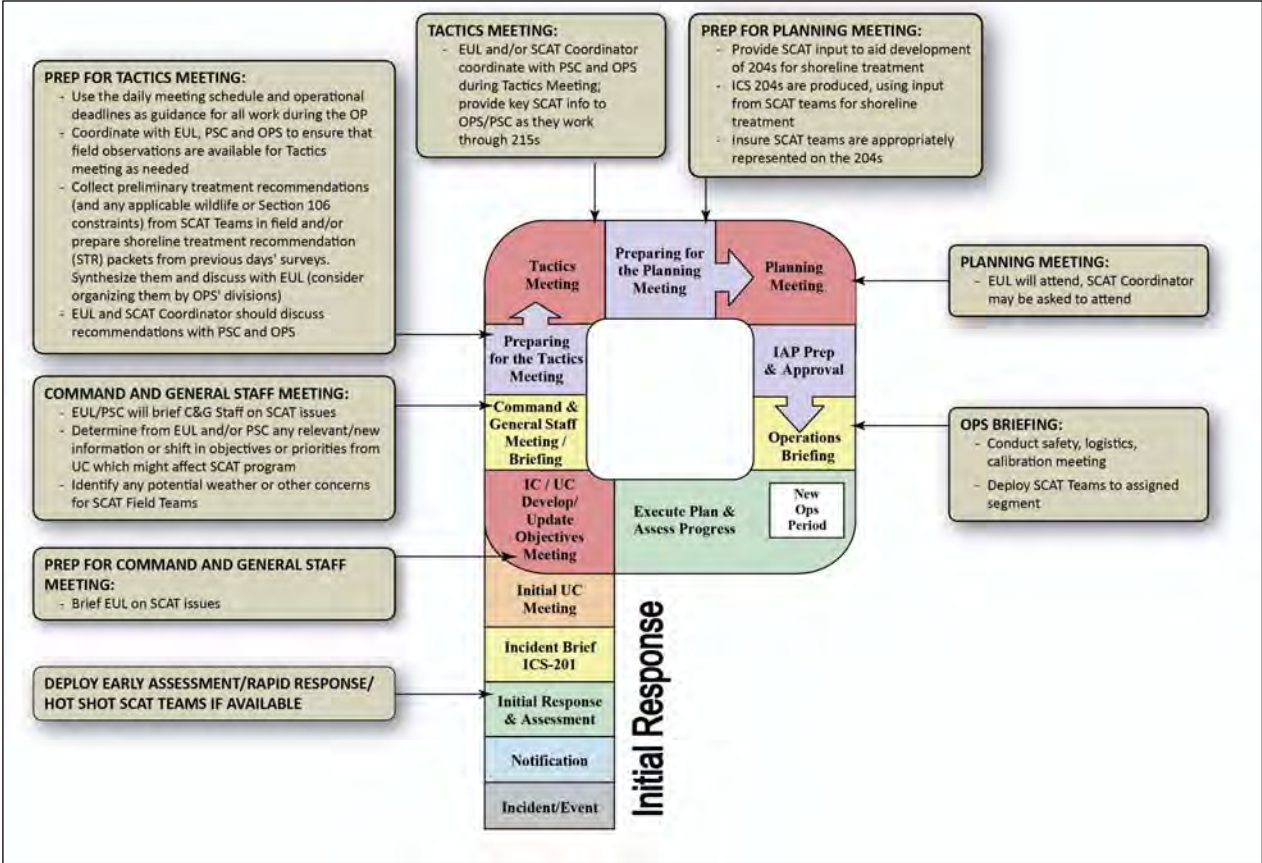


Figure 3. SCAT in the Planning "P."

115
116

DATA FLOW

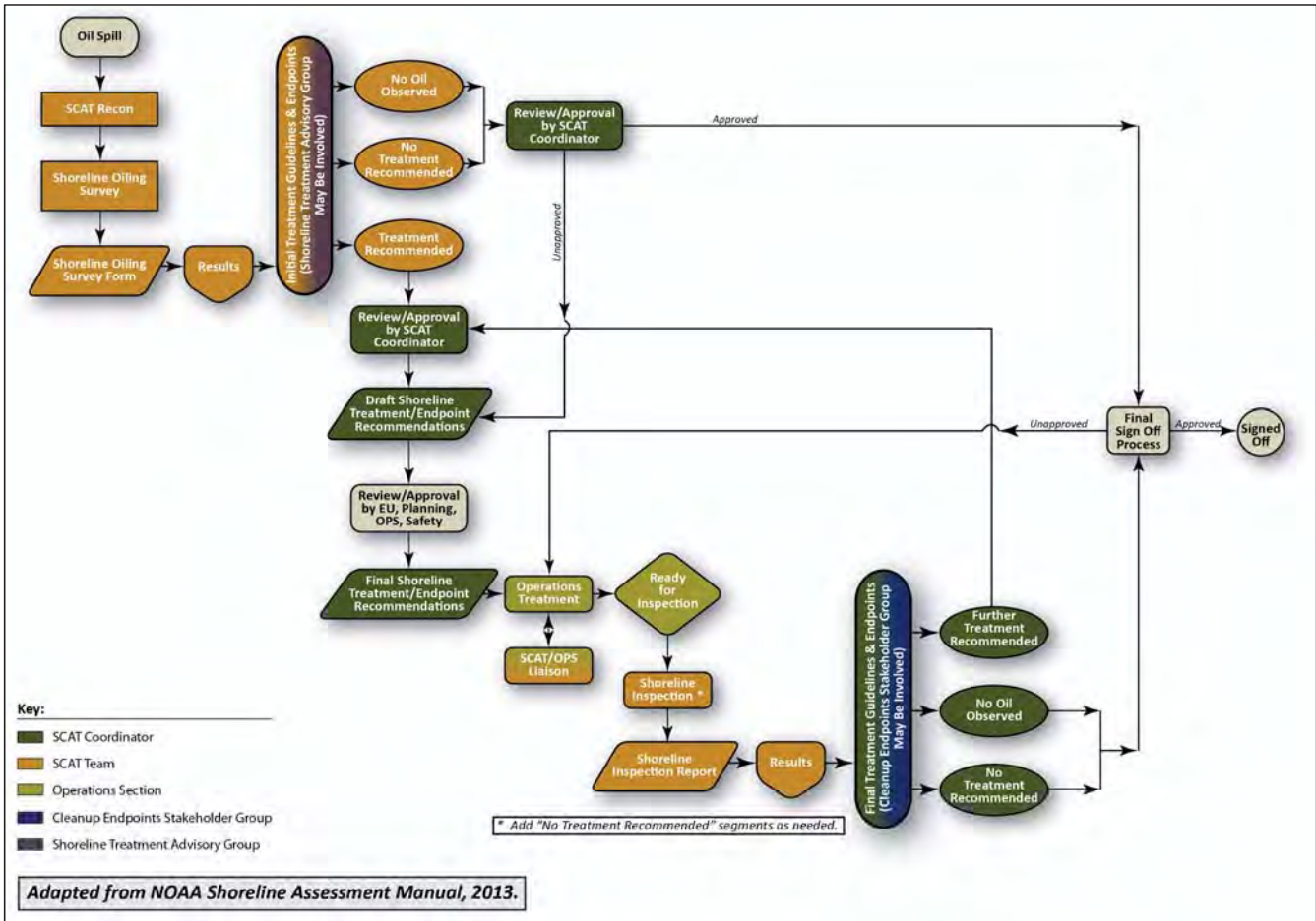


Figure 4. SCAT Data Flow.

117
118
119

SCAT PROGRAM IMPLEMENTATION CHECKLIST

120 The following program implementation checklist is designed to aid users in establishing
121 a SCAT program at an oil spill that has or will likely impact shorelines. The checklist is
122 divided into three sections (Pre-SCAT, Active SCAT, and Sign-Off) to reflect the major
123 phases in the SCAT process. The checklist is furthered organized by position-specific
124 responsibilities and includes Best Practices where applicable.

125
126
127
128
129
130

DRAFT

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

The Pre-SCAT phase begins when initial responders first receive notification that a spill has occurred. This phase typically lasts no more than a few days after the incident is reported and is comprised of planning and preparation for the Active SCAT Phase.

ENVIRONMENTAL UNIT LEADER

- 131
- 132
- 133 Consider deploying early assessment/rapid response/"hot shot" SCAT teams to
- 134 gather initial shoreline impact information, if available.
- 135

- 136
 - 137 ○ The goal is to obtain a general snapshot of the impacted areas or areas that
 - 138 may be impacted. These teams can provide valuable information that will
 - 139 support planning activities for the formal SCAT process as well as near-real
 - 140 time information to OPS. Any assessment conducted by these teams should
 - 141 be broad in scope and scale.

142 **BEST PRACTICE:** Start aerial reconnaissance started as early as possible in the

143 response.

144 **BEST PRACTICE:** Consider the use of "hot shot" cleanup crews as well, particularly

145 those that are able to implement passive and other low-impact methods to

146 prevent re-oiling.

147

- 148
- 149 Establish communication and coordination with OPS and Safety Officer.
- 150

- 151
 - 152 ○ Determine the most appropriate point of contact in OPS. This may be the
 - 153 OPS Section Chief or the Shoreline Cleanup Supervisor.

- 154 The Environmental Unit Leader will establish a SCAT Coordinator.
- 155

- 156
 - 157 ○ This position may be filled by a government, agency, trustee agency, RP
 - 158 representative, or other representative.

- 159
 - 160
 - 161 ■ Considerations for SCAT Coordinator Selection:

- 162
 - 163
 - 164 • Level of training and experience with SCAT implementation
 - 165 and/or coordination.
 - 166 • Ability to maintain consistent participation throughout duration
 - 167 of response.
 - 168 • Ability to coordinate effectively and appropriately with NRDA.
 - 169 • Perception of government oversight and leadership.

- 170
 - If warranted by SCAT coordination workload, consider employing Deputy or
 - Co-Coordinators to assist with various SCAT coordination functions. The
 - decision to add a deputy or co-coordinator may be based on incident
 - specific circumstances such as the scale of the incident or the anticipated
 - workload.

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186

- o The SCAT Coordinator will establish and maintain the SCAT Program for a response. The SCAT Coordinator must be trained in SCAT and must have experience in implementing SCAT methodologies during a spill. The SCAT Coordinator also needs to be familiar with the ICS process and structure. This person needs to understand the role that SCAT recommendations from the field play in the planning cycle and the need for coordinating this information with the timing of the development of the IAP and the 204s for shoreline treatment.

BEST PRACTICE: When selecting SCAT Coordinators (or other SCAT positions), consider the need to swap individuals on a 2-3 week rotational calendar. Maintaining continuity of personnel is an important goal as SCAT is typically one of the longest lasting activities in a response.

DRAFT

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

SCAT COORDINATOR (or DEPUTY) /FIELD TEAM MANAGER

- 187
- 188
- 189
- 190 Establish objectives of the Shoreline Assessment Program using the objectives
- 191 established by Unified Command as guidance.
- 192

- 193
 - 194 o Sample SCAT Program Objectives (see the [shoreline cleanup assessment](#)
 - 195 [work plan](#) for more info):
 - 196
 - 197 • Collect comprehensive information on shoreline oiling conditions using
 - 198 standard protocols and mechanisms;
 - 199 • Utilize shoreline oiling data to enhance and expedite shoreline
 - 200 treatment planning, decision-making, and response activities; and
 - 201 • Assure that a “net environmental benefit” (NEB) for an oiled shoreline
 - 202 can be achieved by shoreline treatment.
 - 203 o Ensure cultural and tribal resources are adequately addressed in your
 - 204 objectives

205 **BEST PRACTICE:** Be clear about the objectives of the SCAT program to avoid

206 mission creep – avoid assigning SCAT extra duties beyond the established

207 objectives (e.g. sampling, NRDA).

- 208
- 209 Determine the scope and scale of the initial area to be surveyed by SCAT teams.
- 210

- 211
 - 212 o Conduct reconnaissance and use trajectory models, tides, winds, river flow,
 - 213 and other relevant environmental conditions to establish the boundaries of
 - 214 the initial survey area.

215 **BEST PRACTICE:** The total survey area should extend somewhat beyond the

216 extent of the oiled areas.

217

218

219 **BEST PRACTICE:** Conducting reconnaissance via aircraft will greatly aid in the

220 initial SCAT planning. Try to reserve a spot on an aircraft as soon as possible.

- 221
- 222
 - 223 o Select the appropriate initial survey method(s). Surveys may be conducted
 - 224 by different methods and at different scales depending upon the size of the
 - 225 affected area, character of the shoreline type, and level of detail that is
 - 226 required. Select a survey method which meets incident objectives and is
 - 227 achievable with the resources available.

- 228 Determine the initial number SCAT field teams and appropriate level of Command
- 229 Post staff.
- 230

- 231
 - 232 o Determine the initial positions that need to be filled (SCAT Field Manager,
 - 233 Data Manager, SCAT Teams, other SCAT Support staff, etc.) and by whom.

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

233 The exact number of roles and individuals to fill those roles can vary widely
234 from spill to spill and during a spill as conditions change.

235
236 **BEST PRACTICE:** Conduct early outreach to organizations that may be asked to
237 provide SCAT personnel.

238
239 **BEST PRACTICE:** Consider engaging an oil geomorphologist to assist in the
240 Command Post as well as in the field.

- 241
242 ○ SCAT personnel should have, at minimum:
- 243 ● Received 40 hour HAZWOPER training (field staff)
 - 244 ● Familiarity/experience with oil spill response
 - 245 ● Basic ICS training
 - 246 ● Basic SCAT training
- 247
- 248 ○ At minimum, the field SCAT teams should consist of an:
- 249 ● RP Representative
 - 250 ● State government representative
 - 251 ● Federal On Scene Coordinator representative or designee
- 252
- 253 ○ Other field SCAT team members may include:
- 254 ● Tribal government representative
 - 255 ● Landowner or manager
 - 256 ● Local government
 - 257 ● Technical specialists
- 258
- 259 ○ A variety of technical specialist can support SCAT operations. Depending on
260 the circumstance of the spill, individuals with the following skills should be
261 considered:
- 262 ● Oil Geomorphologist: A specialist experienced in identifying the
263 physical processes affecting oil on a shoreline.
 - 264 ● Ecologist/Biologist: A specialist capable of identifying biological
265 concerns/constraints and providing input on treatment options and
266 endpoints.
 - 267 ● Archeologist or Cultural Resource Specialist: An individual who can
268 advise on precautions and constraints to protect cultural resources, if
269 needed.
 - 270 ● Oil Spill Response Cleanup Expert: An individual well-versed in oil
271 removal and remediation techniques. May be an Operations Section
272 representative.

273
274 **BEST PRACTICE:** Keep SCAT teams as small as practicable (e.g. 3-5) for safety
275 and logistical reasons. Where possible, try to use individuals who can fill multiple
276 specialty roles.

277

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324

BEST PRACTICE: The SCAT Team Leader generally should be the person on the team with the most SCAT field experience, independent of their team specialty.

- Be sure to consider biological and/or cultural/historical constraints. Review the ICS 232 form(s). Determine the need to have a wildlife biologist and/or a cultural resources specialist join the SCAT Field Teams during surveys on shoreline segments that have been identified as having potential ESA or Cultural concerns.
- Consider including tribal representative(s) on SCAT teams as appropriate (must meet same health & safety training requirements as other team members).
- Maintain continuity of staff to the extent possible, throughout the duration of the SCAT program. Develop a staffing calendar with 2-3 week rotations for team.

BEST PRACTICE: Consider the long-term staffing needs for SCAT early. Continuity in assigning teams is a good practice. Avoid calibration drift (staff assigned months into the incident can have a different perspective). Consider developing training/guidance document for staff rotation during long-term responses. Training could include visits to oiled shorelines or photo history of a segment.

□ Segment the survey area.

- An essential first step of a SCAT survey is to divide the coastline into working units called segments, within which the shoreline character is relatively homogeneous in terms of physical features and sediment type.
- Each segment is assigned a unique location identifier. Segment boundaries are established on the basis of prominent geological features (such as a headland), changes in shoreline or substrate type, a change in oiling conditions, or establishment of the boundary of an operations area.
- In general, most segments in oiled areas would be in the range of 0.2 – 2.0 km in length but this will be determined largely by the nature of a given shoreline. Segment lengths should be small enough to obtain adequate resolution and detail on the distribution of oil, but not so small that too much data is replicated (i.e. if multiple adjacent segments are of the same shoreline type, then it would be useful to create larger segments to facilitate quickly assessing them).
- If applicable to the response, identify shoreline access points, restricted areas, and hazards that affect SCAT activities and ensure this information is communicated to SCAT Field Team Manager or SCAT Coordinator.

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371

BEST PRACTICE: Check to see if the survey area has been pre-segmented (e.g. in an Area Plan or by local industry).

BEST PRACTICE: When determining segment boundaries, coordinate with OPS on their shoreline Division Boundaries. To minimize confusion during planning, avoid creating segments that span multiple divisions whenever possible. If an area has been pre-segmented recommend that OPS select division boundaries that coincide with segment endpoints.

Reference: The following documents contain additional guidance on developing segment boundaries that may be useful:

- Shoreline Assessment Manual – 3rd Addition. NOAA August 2000
http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/manual_shore_assess_aug2000.pdf
- The UK SCAT Manual: A field guide to the documentation of oiled shorelines in the UK. John Moore, April 2007. Sec. 1.3.1
www.dft.gov.uk/mca/corp119ext.pdf

□ Establish a data management system.

- Consider appointing a SCAT Data Manager or refer to the Pre-SCAT Phase Data Management checklist for steps to accomplish this task.
- Considerations for determining best data management organization:
 - Which system best meets the response needs and/or scale?
 - Electronic vs. paper-based?
 - Is it readily available?
 - Existing policies?

□ Select the appropriate SCAT forms to be used.

- Use forms appropriate for the conditions of the spill (marine, river, winter, tarball, etc.).
- Links to commonly used SCAT Forms are available below:
 - NOAA: <http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/shoreline-cleanup-and-assessment-technique-scat.html>
 - Environment Canada:
http://www.etccte.ec.gc.ca/estd_west/estdwest_scat_e.html#04
 - Polaris Applied Sciences. Inc. (includes links to more rarely used forms):
<http://www.polarisappliedsciences.com/welcome.html>

BEST PRACTICE: Ensure SCAT forms and associated data collection documents/tools are available and appropriate.

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

372 Develop a survey and reporting schedule as appropriate to provide key survey
373 information as needed for incorporation into the Incident Action Plan.

374
375 o Consider the established meeting schedule and the data needs for ICS
376 meetings.

377
378 **BEST PRACTICE:** Work with EUL to coordinate with IAP development and relay
379 time-critical information as appropriate within the Command Post.

380
381 Identify incident specific health and safety considerations for SCAT operations.

382
383 Identify and assemble the essential equipment for the Field Teams.

384
385 **BEST PRACTICE:** *Try to ensure to that the same make/model of equipment*
386 *(Cameras, GPS, Phones, etc.) is used across the field teams to ensure for data /*
387 *logistical consistency.*

388
389 Begin drafting a [shoreline cleanup assessment work plan](#). When complete, the work
390 plan should describe, at minimum:

- 391
392 o The purpose of the SCAT program including objectives and guiding
393 principles
394
395 o Health, safety, and environmental considerations specific to the SCAT
396 operations
397
398 o Organization, staffing, and schedules
399
400 o Survey methods to be employed
401
402 o Field documentation and data management processes, and
403
404 o Cleanup endpoint standards (these will be preliminary).

405
406 **BEST PRACTICE:** A variety of permits (e.g. for shoreline access) may be required
407 during the survey process. Coordinate with the EU to identify applicable permits
408 and constraints and include them in the work plan as appropriate.

409

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

DATA MANAGEMENT

- 410
- 411
- 412
- 413
- 414 **Establish general expectations, procedures, and accountability for SCAT data**
- 415 **management tasks. Depending on the scale of the response, these responsibilities**
- 416 **may be handled by SCAT Coordinator or a delegated Data Manager.**
- 417
- 418
 - 419 ○ Address data sharing protocols and data access issues between stakeholders
 - 420 (i.e. Fed/State/RP) when making these determinations.
 - 421
 - 422 ○ Each agency/organization representative working on SCAT data should be
 - 423 familiar with their own organization's data policy and be able to discuss any
 - 424 critical issues including public disclosure requirements.
- 425
- 426
- 427
- 428
- 429 **Ensure that the appropriate SCAT forms and associated data collection**
- 430 **documents/tools are available, based on the stated needs and objectives of the**
- 431 **SCAT program.**
- 432
- 433
 - 434 ○ Define the specific types of data SCAT teams will and will not collect (e.g.
 - 435 Photos, Pits/Trenches, Samples, Oiled wildlife observations, etc.).
 - 436
 - 437 ○ Modify the forms to meet incident specific needs as appropriate.
 - 438
 - 439 ○ Ensure SCAT teams/forms are using standardized location naming
 - 440 conventions (e.g. shoreline segment identification numbers) that can be
 - 441 integrated into geodatabases/GIS systems being developed.
- 442 **Evaluate equipment requirements/standards for data collection and management**
- 443
- 444
 - 445 ○ Coordinate this review with the SCAT Program Field Team Manager or
 - 446 Coordinator as appropriate.
 - 447
 - 448 ○ Common data collection equipment may include: Digital cameras, hand-
 - 449 held GPS units, Forms, PDAs, Tablet Computers, etc.

BEST PRACTICE: Ensure that any equipment being used meets or exceeds accepted data quality standards.

BEST PRACTICE: Ensure that any devices deployed accurately reflect the local time. If possible, cameras should have the date and time set to match that of the associated team's issued GPS. It is a good practice to take a picture of the

PRE-SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

456 team GPS time screen with the digital camera prior to (and after) each
457 deployment. This can then be used to post-process pictures if necessary.
458

459 **Develop an electronic document management system/database.**

460
461 o Establish file directory structure and file naming conventions for managing
462 documents, data, and photos.

463
464 o Establish both on-site backup and an off-site, secure repository for all data
465 and documentation.

466
467 o Determine/establish appropriate permissions for database access and
468 editing.

469
470 **As appropriate, identify predetermined standards for data verification, analysis, and**
471 **reporting.**

472
473 o Identify and put in place verification SOPs & checklists such as standard
474 query language verification queries (auditing of data) and reporting SOPs &
475 procedures and requirements.

476
477 **Obtain and manage geospatial information.**

478
479 o Coordinate data and map transfers with the SU and EU (e.g., base maps,
480 overflight maps, etc.) as appropriate.

481
482 Acquire the spatial data and maps necessary to meet the data needs of the SCAT
483 Program and (in particular) the field teams.

484 o Create base maps for field planning and use, including laminated or other
485 weather-resistant versions.

486
487 **BEST PRACTICE:** Consider the need to have a dedicated SCAT mapping capability
488 (separate from the SU) as part of SCAT data management.

489
490 **Develop and maintain contact list for SCAT Team members.**

491
492
493

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

The Active SCAT Phase may begin between one and several days into the response, depending on spill-specific conditions. This phase involves field surveys, data collection/analysis, treatment/cleanup endpoint recommendations, as well as shoreline treatment monitoring.

SCAT COORDINATOR (or DEPUTY)/FIELD TEAM MANAGER

494
495
496
497 **Determine which areas should be surveyed and in what order.**

- 498
499 o Coordinate with the Operations Section.

500
501 **BEST PRACTICE:** Stay at least a day ahead of cleanup crews if possible.

- 502
503 o Continue to re-assess the scope and scale of the survey areas and adjust as
504 needed.

505
506 **BEST PRACTICE:** Daily surveys should be prioritized based on shoreline oiling
507 conditions noted during aerial reconnaissance flights. Segments where heavy oiling
508 has been observed or which are of specific ecological importance should be
509 prioritized for surveys first.

510
511 **BEST PRACTICE:** Ideally, surveys should be conducted during daylight hours and at
512 low tide (if applicable).

513
514 **Ensure that all elements of the [shoreline cleanup assessment work plan](#) have been**
515 **completed.**

516
517 **Prepare, deploy, and manage SCAT Field Teams conducting shoreline oiling surveys.**
518 **(may be managed by SCAT Field Team Manager)**

- 519
520 o Assemble SCAT teams to meet SCAT field objectives and ensure that all
521 teams have the necessary representation, training and equipment.
522
523 o Ensure that team assignments are made daily or as appropriate. Be sure the
524 assignments are reflected in the 204s and passed on to the teams.
525
526 o Identify and ensure field team safety and logistical needs (transportation via
527 helicopter or boat? PPE issues? Communication via radios, mobile or satellite
528 phones? Lunch? Etc.) are met daily.
529

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

- 530 ○ Obtain weather, tidal charts and/or river flow data from credible sources
- 531 such as NOAA (weather and/or tides) or USGS (river flow data) and distribute
- 532 to team leaders.
- 533
- 534 ○ Conduct SCAT Meetings at the beginning of shifts (as appropriate):
- 535
 - 536 ● This meeting should include those staff in the EU who are involved in
 - 537 the SCAT program or who might have some associated interest
 - 538 (OPS, Wildlife Liaison, etc.). Topics may include: daily assignments,
 - 539 logistics, alterations to the work plan, safety updates, general
 - 540 updates, etc.
 - 541 ● Review any special considerations that may exist for each team
 - 542 such as: site access, (e.g. need for vehicle, boat, or aircraft),
 - 543 problematic terrain (streams, cliffs), special safety considerations,
 - 544 communications, limitations, etc.

BEST PRACTICE: Conduct safety briefings and calibration training with SCAT field team members on a daily basis, or as appropriate, before sending teams in to the field. Ensure that teams use proper terminology and apply guidelines uniformly.

- 548
- 549 ○ Conduct debriefings with SCAT team members at the end of shifts.
- 550 Debriefings may include the following topics:
- 551
 - 552 ● The need for consensus among team members. If consensus is not
 - 553 reached in the field, make sure that conflicting opinions are
 - 554 documented.
 - 555 ● Ensure that documentation and equipment for SCAT teams (maps,
 - 556 photography equipment, gear, communications, etc.) are adequate
 - 557 prior to next deployment.
 - 558 ● Solicit observations from the field team regarding cleanup processes,
 - 559 successes, failures, etc.
- 560 ○ Ensure that data is being collected and recorded appropriately.
- 561
- 562 **□ Establish process for summarizing SCAT field data and communicating data as**
- 563 **appropriate for ICS meetings, others.**
- 564
- 565 ○ Command And General Staff Meeting:
- 566
 - 567 ● Determine from EUL and/or PSC any relevant/new information or shift
 - 568 in objectives or priorities from UC which might affect SCAT program.
 - 569 ● Identify any potential weather or other concerns for SCAT Field Teams.
- 570 ○ Pre-Tactics and Tactics Meeting
- 571
 - 572 ● Coordinate with EUL, PSC and OPS to ensure that field observations are
 - 573 available for Tactics meeting as needed.
 - 574 ● Collect preliminary treatment recommendations (and any applicable
 - 575 wildlife or Section 106 constraints) from SCAT Teams in field and/or

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

575 prepare [shoreline treatment recommendation \(STR\)](#) packets from the
576 previous days' surveys.
577 • Synthesize them and discuss with EUL (consider organizing them by
578 OPS' divisions).
579 • EUL and/or SCAT Coordinator coordinate with PSC and OPS during
580 Tactics Meeting; provide key SCAT info to OPS/PSC to help develop
581 204s (treatment recommendations, safety constraints, etc.).
582

- 583 ○ Planning Meeting
 - 584 • 204s for shoreline treatment are produced, using input from SCAT
 - 585 teams.
 - 586 • 204s for continued SCAT team deployments are produced.
 - 587 • EUL typically attends, SCAT Coordinator may be asked to attend.
 - 588

589 **BEST PRACTICE:** Coordinate with the EUL to ensure that there is a process for SCAT
590 data to get to OPS for consideration in the IAP process.

- 591 ○ OPS Briefing
 - 592 • Conduct safety, logistics, calibration meeting
 - 593 • Deploy the SCAT Teams to assigned segments
 - 594
 - 595

596 **BEST PRACTICE:** Assist EUL in developing data sharing opportunities with NRDA and
597 others.
598

599 **Develop procedures for translating data into [shoreline treatment recommendations](#)**
600 **[\(STRs\)](#).**

- 601 ○ Confirm (or establish if necessary) the incident-specific process for
602 developing STRs.
603
604

605 **BEST PRACTICE:** Typically the process would be for the SCAT Coordinator to develop
606 STRs for each segment, organized them by Division, and route them through the
607 appropriate parts of the ICS for signatures (Safety Officer, PSC, OPS, Sect 7, Sect 106,
608 UC, etc.). The STRs would then be presented during the Prep for Tactics Work Period
609 and at the Tactics Meetings.

- 610 ○ Ensure that above process is synchronized with IAP development.
611
612

613 **BEST PRACTICE:** Use [shoreline treatment recommendation forms](#). Once approved
614 they will also serve as work orders or permits to implement the cleanup
615 recommendations.
616

617 **Establish the “Shoreline Treatment Advisory Group” (STAG) and lead the effort to**
618 **develop initial shoreline treatment guidelines for UC review. Later in the cleanup**
619 **process, the STAG will also contribute to the development of cleanup endpoints.**
620

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

621 **BEST PRACTICE:** Assemble a STAG comprised of staff from OPS and Planning to
622 develop treatment recommendations and cleanup endpoints for Command
623 approval.

624
625 **BEST PRACTICE:** If any chemical countermeasures or in-situ burn are being
626 considered by a SCAT Team, work with EUL and PSC to seek RRT approval.

627
628 **Coordinate with Liaison to establish the “Cleanup Endpoint Stakeholder Group” and**
629 **lead the effort to review shoreline treatment and cleanup endpoint**
630 **recommendations prior to UC review.**

- 631
- 632 ○ Determine which agencies/organizations must be involved in treatment and
633 endpoint selection process.
 - 634
 - 635 ○ Integrate cleanup concerns of the various resource agencies and managers
636 into the process of developing treatment and endpoint recommendations.
 - 637

638 **BEST PRACTICE:** Endpoints are typically selected by shoreline type but some
639 segments may have specific sensitivities which require segment-specific endpoints.

640
641 **References:**

- 642 ○ Guidelines for Selecting Shoreline Treatment Endpoints for Oil Spill
643 Response. Environment Canada, 2007.
644 [http://publications.gc.ca/collections/collection_2011/ec/En4-84-](http://publications.gc.ca/collections/collection_2011/ec/En4-84-2008-eng.pdf)
645 [2008-eng.pdf](http://publications.gc.ca/collections/collection_2011/ec/En4-84-2008-eng.pdf)
- 646
- 647 ○ Shoreline Assessment Manual – 3rd Addition. NOAA. 2000.
648 [http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/manual_shore](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/manual_shore_assess_aug2000.pdf)
649 [_assess_aug2000.pdf](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/manual_shore_assess_aug2000.pdf)
- 650
- 651 ○ Shoreline Assessment Job Aid, NOAA. 2007.
652 [http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/jobaid_shore](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/jobaid_shore_assess_aug2007.pdf)
653 [_assess_aug2007.pdf](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/jobaid_shore_assess_aug2007.pdf)
- 654

655 **Monitor effectiveness of cleanups.**

- 656
- 657 ○ Coordinate with the EUL and OPS liaison on any issues raised by SCAT team
658 observations, particularly where cleanup methods must be modified to
659 increase effectiveness or decrease impacts.
 - 660
 - 661 ○ Develop a process to ensure that the treatment recommendations on the
662 204s for shoreline treatment crews are being properly implemented and are
663 effective. This may be achieved by using SCAT Team members, SCAT-OPS
664 liaisons, or other trained oversight personnel.

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

- 665 • These personnel are field-based and will work alongside Shoreline
666 Operations/Cleanup to ensure SCAT instructions are understood,
667 applied properly, and are effective. They are the eyes/ears in the field
668 supporting the SCAT Coordinator.
669

670 **BEST PRACTICE:** Establish a feedback loop during the day to report when field
671 monitors observe ineffective cleanup or when an adverse impact is resulting from an
672 agreed upon treatment technique.

- 673
- 674 **Develop periodic SCAT Reports. The frequency will be determined by the EUL.**
675

676 **BEST PRACTICE:** Document the highlights of each day for historical and training
677 purposes.
678

679 DATA MANAGEMENT

- 682 **Implement protocols for the data handling, processing, quality assurance/quality
683 control (QA/QC), outputs, and archiving of the shoreline oiling data collected during
684 the incident.**
685
- 686 **Closely coordinate with OPS/PSC to provide SCAT information to the IAP process.**
687
 - 688 ○ Data collected in the field should be transmitted to OPS for inclusion in 204s
689
 - 690 ○ Identify the Pre-tactics needs and develop a process for meeting those
691 needs.
692
- 693 **Closely coordinate with SU to ensure that maps and other outputs are up to date and
694 accurate.**
695
- 696 **As needed, meet with SCAT Teams prior to field mobilizations to instruct/review field
697 documentation protocols and data forms.**
698
- 699 **Ensure that approved SCAT data are made available for internal use by response
700 agencies and to support public affairs products and events.**
701
- 702 **Retrieve data (in all formats) from the Field Teams or Field Team Manager as soon as
703 possible after collection.**
704
 - 705 ○ Log incoming SCAT field forms, sketches, and other information (films,
706 videotapes, etc.) and review the field information. The review should involve
707 checking to ensure that all sections of the forms have been completed and
708 that the information appears reasonable and consistent.
709

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

BEST PRACTICE: GPS units and digital cameras should be surrendered to the Data Manager immediately upon return to the Command Post. GPS track lines and photos should be deleted from the units once they have been saved in a secure repository. Photos should be labeled as soon as possible.

710
711
712
713
714
715 **Provide quality control/quality assurance of field-collected data for use in the Incident Command Post.**

- 716
717
718 o Manage and QA/QC SCAT Team GPS data capture and waypoints. Ensure
719 GPS tracklogs, data capture, waypoints and digital photos/videos are
720 accounted for, complete, and stored appropriately.
721
722 o Manage and upload digital photos for spatial display as needed by the IMT.
723

724 **Collect supplemental observations from other sources.**

- 725
726 o Other sources such as field observers, OPS, the public, and others may
727 provide useful information on shoreline oiling for consideration and
728 dissemination. This might require a separate system for data storage than that
729 used by SCAT. Consider using a GIS Specialist in the Situation Unit to collect
730 non-SCAT observations. Liaison will also be a resource for collecting
731 supplemental information.
732

733 **Produce SCAT outputs that may include:**

- 734
735 o Maps of shoreline types
736
737 o Segment oiling conditions
738
739 o Surface oil volumes on the shoreline, changes in volume through time
740
741 o SCAT field survey status
742
743 o Treatment recommendations
744
745 o Cleanup treatment status
746
747 o Lengths of oiled shoreline (by oil rating and/or shoreline type)
748
749 o Lengths treated (by oil rating and/or treatment method)
750

751 **BEST PRACTICE:** Coordinate data needs with the EUL to ensure that there is sufficient
752 time for data input and processing prior to the Tactics Meetings and Pre-Tactics Work
753 Period.
754

ACTIVE SCAT PHASE CHECKLIST

- 755 o Produce daily status reports and maps showing current SCAT deployments
756 and assessment activities.
- 757 • Archive copies for distribution and reference; produce other reports as
758 needed.
- 759 • Confirm with SCAT Coordinator on future field map development
760 needs or SCAT survey targets.
- 761
- 762 o Ensure production of SCAT maps and make them available in all appropriate
763 formats, including hard copies, PDFs, Google Earth kml/kmz files, and web
764 mapping services.
- 765

BEST PRACTICE: Develop and use map templates to standardize the layout elements, file path, reference of site location, map layers and naming conventions for mapping products.

- 766
- 767
- 768
- 769
- 770 **With SCAT Coordinator, review data management performance after first SCAT field**
771 **activities and modify forms and protocols as necessary. Continue coordinating with**
772 **SCAT Coordinator and SCAT Teams; provide and receive feedback on data**
773 **management performance at SCAT and Unified Command briefings.**
- 774
- 775 **Maintain and ensure the data integrity/availability of the SCAT databases system**
776 **and it's standardization with other spatial and reporting databases as appropriate.**
- 777
- 778 **Implement data archival strategy (e.g. offsite external drives/FTP/server, used for**
779 **ongoing reference and long-term documentation). Ensure that a documented**
780 **process exists for maintaining data consistency across the various repositories.**
- 781
- 782 **Periodically review data requirements with the SCAT Coordinator.**

SIGN-OFF PHASE CHECKLIST

The Sign-Off Phase begins when OPS has completed cleanup of affected shoreline segments and requests confirmation inspections by SCAT Teams and land owner/managers.

SCAT COORDINATOR (or DEPUTY)/FIELD TEAM MANAGER

- 783
784
785
786 Establish a communication protocol with OPS that notifies the (EUL and/or SCAT
787 Coordinator) when clean up treatments have been completed on a given segment.
788
- 789 Evaluate the need for establishing a “pre-sign off inspection process” (i.e. “PEST” surveys)
790 as a dress rehearsal for final sign off inspections with the land owners/managers and
791 develop as necessary. A pre-sign off inspection is a particularly valuable practice
792 during larger spills.
793
- 794 Determine the formal sign-off inspection and approval process/procedures.
795
 - 796 ○ Determine which team members have signatory authority and which can only
797 provide comments. One FOSC representative, one SOSC representative, and one
798 RP representative typically sign shoreline inspection report to indicate no further
799 treatment (NFT) or no oil observed (NOO) for a segment. Landowners can
800 comment but will not necessarily be signatories on the shoreline inspection report.
801
 - 802 ○ Depending on the conditions of the spill, the signatory authority of the team
803 could be limited to simply making the “official” recommendations to UC for their
804 signature or, if appropriate, the team could have the authority to represent the
805 UC and serve as the “final” sign-off authority for a segment.
 - 806
 - 807 ○ Identify or develop an appropriate [sign-off report \(SIR\)](#) Form to use with input from
808 EUL/PSC/UC.
 - 809
 - 810 ○ Determine composition of the sign-off team(s). If possible use the original SCAT
811 team plus any additional representatives (e.g. land owner/manager)
 - 812
 - 813 ○ After the Operations Division Supervisor or Shoreline Supervisor considers that
814 cleanup in a segment has been completed, the segment is inspected by a SCAT
815 team.

BEST PRACTICE: The SCAT Team that conducted the original survey is a good group to conduct the survey as they will have perspective on the original oiling conditions for a given segment.

SIGN-OFF PHASE CHECKLIST

821 **Deploy Sign-Off Teams to conduct post-cleanup inspections to confirm endpoint has**
822 **been achieved.**

823

824 o If segment meets endpoints cleanup criteria, then recommend for sign-
825 off/approval by indicating:

826

827

828

829 o If segment does not meet endpoint cleanup criteria, then recommend

830

831

832

833

834

835

o Document the results of the inspection.

836

837 **BEST PRACTICE:** Use a Segment Inspection form. Link this form to the original shoreline
838 oiling summary. The Data Manager should be consulted to help determine form type
and content.

839

840

841

842

**Ensure that all of the completed inspection/recommendation documents are collected
and archived appropriately.**

843

SIGN-OFF PHASE CHECKLIST

DATA MANAGEMENT

844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866

- Continue collecting segment-specific forms and other documentation recording when/if cleanup standards have been achieved.
- Determine the need for additional deliverables of SCAT data that may be needed for "maintenance and monitoring" efforts.
- Ensure that ongoing monitoring efforts adhere to data standards.
- Confirm final archival storage for all SCAT data from field teams, deliverables of maps, photos, GPS data and GIS outputs. Coordinate with all on data distribution list for final delivery of data and analysis.
- Close out all data and GIS deliverables for SCAT mapping and analysis.
- Identify, evaluate, and report all known gaps, delays, or interruptions of all data deliverables to strengthen future performances in the management and implementation of SCAT data.

SELECT SCAT RESOURCES

867

868

Some useful documents for marine & freshwater spills and where to find them are provided below. Please review the documents prior to using them to ensure that they are consistent with current policy.

869

870

871

872

Characteristic Coastal Habitats: Choosing Spill Response Alternatives. (NOAA, 2010)

873

[http://archive.orr.noaa.gov/topic_subtopic_entry.php?RECORD_KEY%28entry_subtopic_topic%29=entry_id,subtopic_id,topic_id&entry_id\(entry_subtopic_topic\)=349&subtopic_id\(entry_subtopic_topic\)=8&topic_id\(entry_subtopic_topic\)=1](http://archive.orr.noaa.gov/topic_subtopic_entry.php?RECORD_KEY%28entry_subtopic_topic%29=entry_id,subtopic_id,topic_id&entry_id(entry_subtopic_topic)=349&subtopic_id(entry_subtopic_topic)=8&topic_id(entry_subtopic_topic)=1)

874

875

876

877

Fate and Environmental Effects of Oil Spills in Freshwater Environments. (API publication No. 4675, 1999)

878

879

<http://www.api.org/Publications/>

880

881

An FOSC's Guide to NOAA Scientific Support. (NOAA, 2010)

882

<http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/foscguide>

883

884

Physical Processes Affecting the Movement and Spreading of Oils in Inland Waters. (NOAA, 1995)

885

886

http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/book_shelf/960_inland.pdf

887

888

Shoreline Assessment Job Aid. (NOAA, 2007)

889

http://archive.orr.noaa.gov/book_shelf/71_jobaid_shore_assess.pdf

890

891

Shoreline Assessment Manual. (NOAA, 2000)

892

http://archive.orr.noaa.gov/book_shelf/72_manual_shore_assess.pdf

893

894

The SCAT Manual – A Field Guide to the Documentation and Description of Oiled Shorelines. (Environment Canada, 2007)

895

896

http://publications.gc.ca/collections/collection_2011/ec/En4-84-2008-eng.pdf?

897

898

The UK SCAT Manual: A field guide to the documentation of oiled shorelines in the UK.

899

(Environment Canada, 2007)

900

www.dft.gov.uk/mca/corp119ext.pdf

901

902

Characteristics of Response Strategies: A Guide for Spill Response Planning in Marine Environments (NOAA, 2010)

903

904

[http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/characteristics-response-strategies.html)

905

[spills/resources/characteristics-response-strategies.html](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/characteristics-response-strategies.html)

906

907

Introduction to Coastal Habitats and Biological Resources for Spill Response

908

[http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/coastal-](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/coastal-habitats-biological-resources-job-aid.html)

909

[habitats-biological-resources-job-aid.html](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/oil-and-chemical-spills/oil-spills/resources/coastal-habitats-biological-resources-job-aid.html)

910

911

912

913

914

Shoreline Countermeasures Manuals (NOAA)

SELECT SCAT RESOURCES

- 915 Alaska:
916 http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/shoreline_countermeasures_alaska.pdf
917
918
919 Freshwater:
920 http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/shoreline_countermeasures_freshwater.pdf
921
922
923 Temperate:
924 http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/sites/default/files/shoreline_countermeasures_temperate.pdf
925
926
927 Shoreline Assessment Forms (NOAA)
928 http://archive.orr.noaa.gov/topic_subtopic_entry.php?RECORD_KEY%28entry_subtopic_topic%29=entry_id,subtopic_id,topic_id&entry_id%28entry_subtopic_topic%29=277&subtopic_id%28entry_subtopic_topic%29=8&topic_id%28entry_subtopic_topic%29=1
929
930

WORK PLAN TEMPLATE

The following Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Work Plan template is one of many examples of such plans. The template is not intended to be prescriptive, but to highlight the key components of a SCAT work plan. Responders should modify the plan to best fit the needs of the incident to which they are responding.

931
932

933 **NOTE TO REVIEWER: The work plan template and appendices, once**
934 **finalized, will become a standalone document to supplement the**
935 **“Establishing a SCAT Program” document. The two documents are**
936 **presented in a single document format to facilitate the review process.**

937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953

954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964

SHORELINE CLEANUP ASSESSMENT TEAM WORK PLAN

(Insert Incident Name)

This incident-specific SCAT plan is approved:

FOSC

Date

SOSC

Date

RPIC

Date

cc: Operations Section, Shoreline Cleanup Supervisor
Operations Section Chief
National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration, SSC
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
U.S. Department of Interior, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
State Historic Preservation Officer
State Agencies

965 **1. SCAT PLAN PURPOSE AND OBJECTIVES**

966

967 **a. Purpose**

968

969 This work plan has been developed to describe the process for initiating and
970 implementing Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique ("SCAT") actions for shorelines
971 impacted by the XXX *Spill/Drill*.

972

973 The SCAT process for this incident is intended to:

- 974 1. Systematically survey and document the area affected by oil to provide rapid
975 and accurate geographic description of the shoreline oiling conditions and real-
976 time issues or constraints;
- 977 2. Recommend treatment or cleanup of oiled shorelines to OPS and UC;
- 978 3. Recommend shoreline cleanup endpoint standards to OPS and UC;
- 979 4. Monitor and evaluate shoreline treatment;
- 980 5. Provide inspection teams for segment sign off, and
- 981 6. Manage data collected from shoreline surveys.

982

983 **b. Objectives**

984

985 The objectives of the SCAT process for this incident are to:

- 986 1. Quickly collect data on shoreline oiling conditions using standard protocols and
987 mechanisms;
- 988 2. Utilize shoreline oiling data to enhance and expedite shoreline treatment
989 planning, decision-making, and response activities; and
- 990 3. Assure that a "net environmental benefit" (NEB) for an oiled shoreline is achieved
991 by shoreline cleanup.

992

993 **c. Fundamental Principles:**

994

995 The fundamental principles of the shoreline assessment surveys include:

- 996 1. A systematic assessment of all (oiled and non-oiled) shorelines in the affected
997 area;
- 998 2. A division of shorelines into homogeneous geographic units or "segments";
- 999 3. The use of a standard set of terms and definitions for documentation;
- 1000 4. A survey team that is objective and trained; and
- 1001 5. The timely provision of data and information for decision making and planning.

1002

1003 **2. Health and Safety**

1004

1005 The Site Safety Officer prepares a Site Safety Plan addressing safety issues related to the
1006 incident. The Site Safety Plan addresses the principal safety and health hazards from
1007 boat and water operations and shoreline assessment and cleanup operations. The site
1008 safety plan covers training; equipment safety; protective clothing and equipment;

1009 decontamination; and first aid and medical evacuation procedures to be used during
1010 the response.

1011

1012 Specific safety considerations for SCAT operations include the following:

1013

1014 • Follow the Site Safety Plan.

1015 • Attend daily safety meetings regarding SCAT work.

1016 • Wear personal protective equipment.

1017 • Use personal flotation devices when transiting across water.

1018 • Observe careful personal hygiene during the workday.

1019 • Watch for slips, trips, and falls.

1020 • Wearing hearing protection when designated.

1021 • Watch for heat and cold stress.

1022 • Avoid interaction with wildlife.

1023 • Protect hands.

1024 • Operate equipment according to instructions.

1025 • Practice good housekeeping in work areas.

1026

1027 **3. Organization, Staffing, and Schedule**

1028

1029 **Organization**

1030 The SCAT Coordinator is in charge of the Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique
1031 operations. The SCAT Coordinator reports directly to the Environment Unit Leader, but
1032 must maintain a close working relationship with the Operations Section, resource
1033 agencies, and other affected parties. In the field, SCAT teams will receive priorities and
1034 technical directions from the SCAT Coordinator via the SCAT Field Team Manager.

1035

1036 **Staffing**

1037 The field SCAT teams will consist of up to 6 members (plus vessel/aircraft operators as
1038 needed); ideally with the following representation (one or more roles may be
1039 combined):

1040

1041 • Geomorphologist or individuals with oil spill experience and SCAT training who
1042 can identify and document oil on the shore

1043 • Ecologist/Biologist who can document the impacts of oil and recommend
1044 priorities, cleanup endpoints, and ecological constraints

1045 • Archeologist or cultural resource specialist who can advise on precautions
1046 and constraints to protect cultural resources, if needed

1047 • State government representative

1048 • Federal government representative

1049 • Tribal government representative

1050 • Land owner/manager

1051 • Local government and/or oversight organization

1052

1053 A total of SCAT teams have been assembled and deployed for the initial stages of this
1054 incident, including aerial survey teams and teams for ground surveys.

1055

1056 Field SCAT Team participants will be selected from representatives for industry; tribal
1057 state and federal agencies; and/or landowners to provide the primary expertise
1058 described above. SCAT Field Team Leaders will be assigned for each team. A listing of
1059 the current organization (command & field) is outlined below.

1060 The SCAT Data Manager is responsible for the maintenance of the SCAT data base and
1061 for the production of maps and tables as needed. The SCAT Data Manager may
1062 request the assignment of a SCAT Documentation specialist if the workload demands it.
1063

1064 Command Post

- 1065 - **SCAT Coordinator (and Deputy or Co-Coordinator, if needed)**
- 1066 - **SCAT Field Team Manager**
- 1067 - **SCAT Data Manager**
 - 1068 o **SCAT Documentation**
- 1069 - **Shoreline Treatment Advisory Group**

1070

1071 Aerial Reconnaissance Team

- 1072 - **Team Lead**
- 1073 - **State**
- 1074 - **Federal**

1075

1076 Aerial Video Team

- 1077 - **Team Lead**

1078

1079 Ground Team 1 – SCAT ST1

- 1080 - **Federal**
- 1081 - **State**
- 1082 - **RP**
- 1083 - **Landowner/manager**
- 1084 - **Archeologist/Cultural Specialist (If needed)**
- 1085 - **Wildlife Biologist/Ecologist (if needed)**
- 1086 - **Tribal/Local Gov't reps (if needed)**

1087

1088 Ground Team 2 – SCAT ST2 Team Lead:

1089

1090 Ground Team 3 – SCAT ST3 Team Lead:

1091

1092 Ground Team 4 – SCAT ST4 Team Lead:

1093

1094 Efforts will be made to minimize personnel substitutions and select team members who
1095 can stay with the SCAT operations, or to have a systematic schedule of alternates:
1096 people who see conditions change through time have a better frame of reference for
1097 assessing the success of cleanup operations..

1098

1099 Team Priority – Areas where heavy oiling has been noted or which are of specific
1100 ecological importance will be prioritized to maximize recovery opportunities and to
1101 reduce overall impacts.

1102

1103 **Schedule**

1104 Initial and subsequently new field team members will be “calibrated” by having them
1105 visit shorelines of differing morphology to review the agreed-upon shoreline descriptors
1106 and to confirm how oil impacts will be described throughout the response process.
1107 Currently deployed SCATs have been calibrated.

1108

1109 (General description of next OP activity) *(NOTE: all following example text in this section*
1110 *should be deleted after inserting actual incident-specific information)*

1111
 1112 **Example:** SCATs teams were redirected, following the XXX X/XX/XX aerial over flight, at
 1113 approximately 0630 hrs in Operational Period X. Some surveys, in the locations outlined
 1114 in the Operational Period X SCAT Plan, may have been completed prior to transfers,
 1115 and this will be confirmed and data captured by beginning of Operational Period X.

1116
 1117 Operational Period X survey locations are outlined in the table below. Surveys will be
 1118 completed exclusively at low tide and during daylight hours.
 1119

Operational Period <u>X</u> - SCAT Survey Schedule					
SCAT Team	No. Staff	Survey Type	Location/Shoreline Segment	Start Day & Time	Status
0	3	Aerial Recon	Ediz Hook to Cp. Flattery	xx/xx/xxxx 0700	
1	4	Ground Survey - Systematic	Port Angeles Harbor 14301, 14302, 14303	xx/xx/xxxx 0700	
2	4	Ground Survey - Systematic			
3	4	Ground Survey - Systematic			
4	4	Ground Survey - Systematic			
Total Staff	19				

1120
 1121 Beginning with Operational Period X, teams will be assigned specific geographical
 1122 areas outlined in the table below. Specific survey locations will be outlined on a daily
 1123 basis in applicable 204s. Daily surveys will be prioritized based on shoreline oiling
 1124 conditions noted during aerial reconnaissance flights. Areas where heavy oiling has
 1125 been noted will be prioritized to maximize recovery opportunities as will sensitive areas
 1126 identified on the ICS-232.

1127
 1128 Surveys will be completed exclusively at low tide and during daylight hours. Personnel
 1129 may be relocated to address the additional oil volume released during Operational
 1130 Period X.
 1131

Beginning Period x - SCAT Geographical Locations			
SCAT Team	No. Staff	Survey Type	Geographical Areas
0	3	Aerial Recon	
0	2 ¹	Aerial Video	
1	4	Ground Survey - Systematic	
2	4	Ground Survey - Systematic	
3	4	Ground Survey - Systematic	
4	4	Ground Survey - Systematic	
Total	20		

1132
1133
1134
1135
1136
1137
1138
1139
1140

4. SCAT Survey Methods

Shoreline surveys will be conducted for this incident by different methods and at different scales depending upon the size of the affected area, character of the shoreline type, and level of detail that is required. The following table presents a summary of the survey methods that will be used for this incident, key objectives of the survey methods, and the purpose of each survey method.

Table 2 Summary of SCAT Survey Methods		
Survey Method	Key Objectives	Purpose
Aerial Reconnaissance	Define the overall incident scale to develop regional objectives. Mapping or documentation not required.	Make specific observations, but not to map or document the oiling conditions, so that relatively large areas can be covered in a relatively short time period.
Aerial Survey	Systematically document or map to (i) create segments, (ii) develop regional strategies and plans, and (iii) define lengths of oiled shorelines.	Prepare a map or maps that show the locations of stranded oil and the distribution and character of that oil by flying low altitude (<100 feet) in a helicopter using a videotape camera linked to (1) an audio system for a detailed commentary, (2) a real time, moving map display, and (3) a Geographical Positioning System (GPS).
Systematic Ground Survey	Systematically document shoreline oiling conditions in all segments within the affected area.	Systematically document shoreline oiling conditions in all segments within the affected area and to complete shoreline oiling summary ("SOS") forms, generate sketch maps for each oiled segment and complete Shoreline Treatment Recommendations ("STRs").
Spot Ground Survey	Systematically document shoreline oiling conditions for selected segments within the affected area.	Systematically document oiling conditions for selected segments within the affected area and to complete SOS forms, generate sketch maps for each oiled segment and complete Shoreline Treatment Recommendations ("STRT").

Inspection Survey	Evaluate effectiveness of treatment methods employed by Operations in meeting shoreline treatment standards.	Systematically document shoreline conditions after treatment and cleanup of segments within the affected area against the applicable treatment standards and complete shoreline oiling summary forms and generate sketch maps for those segments. Make recommendations for closure or further cleanup actions and complete Shoreline Inspection Reports ("SIRs") for each segment for which "No Future Treatment" is being recommended.
-------------------	--	---

1141
1142 Reference pre-segmentation scheme being used if being used or how segmentation
1143 will be determined by reference.
1144
1145 **Example:** *No pre-designated segments exist within the impacted areas associated with*
1146 *this incident. Shoreline segments will be established using methods outlined in The UK*
1147 *SCAT manual: Shoreline Cleanup Assessment Technique - a Field Guide to the*
1148 *Documentation of Oiled Shorelines in the UK. The SCAT Coordinator will work with*
1149 *various members of the IMT to identify and characterize shoreline segments.*

1150
1151 **5. Field Documentation**

1152
1153 Field documentation will consist, where possible, exclusively of standardized forms.
1154 Examples include the SOS and STRT forms found in Appendices A and B, respectively.

1155
1156 **Aerial Surveys**

1157 Completed field documents (notes, sketches, videos and photos) from aerial
1158 reconnaissance teams are to be provided by the team leader and inspected at the
1159 Command Post for QA/QC the same day to ensure that any necessary revisions are
1160 made prior to the surveys of the next day.

1161
1162 **Ground Surveys**

1163 The SCAT Field Team Manager and each Field Team Leader is responsible for ensuring
1164 that the following tasks and field documentation is completed.

- 1165 • Complete SOS Form
- 1166 • Complete STR Form
- 1167 • Sketch(es) of the segment if oil is observed
- 1168 • GPS coordinates of segment endpoints and specific features
- 1169 • Digital photographs and log date/time/location if oil is observed
- 1170 • Dig pits/trenches if subsurface oil is suspected

1171
1172 SCAT forms appropriate to the spill conditions (inland, tarball, winter, etc) will be
1173 selected.

1174
1175 The completed field documentation (SOSs, STRs, sketches and photos) from the ground
1176 survey teams are to be provided to the Field Team Manager (or Data Manger) by the
1177 Team Leader. This documentation shall be inspected at the command post for QA/QC

1178 on the same day as the survey to ensure that any necessary revisions are made prior to
1179 the surveys of the next day.

1180
1181 All GPS units and digital cameras will be surrendered to SCAT Data Manger immediately
1182 upon return to the Command Post for downloading. The Data Manager will ensure that
1183 device times are synchronized and that all waypoints, tracklogs, and digital pictures are
1184 erased from each device prior to being redeployed with Field Teams.

1185
1186 In order to facilitate planning, the Team Leader will notify the SCAT Field Team Manager
1187 on a daily basis if any segments are identified that will require Operations mobilization.

1188 1189 **6. Command Post Data Management and Results**

1190 1191 **Data QA/QC**

1192 Data from SCAT field surveys is used to plan cleanup activities for the subsequent
1193 shoreline cleanup operations.

1194
1195 The SCAT Data Manager receives and logs incoming SCAT field forms, sketches, and
1196 other information (films, videotapes, etc.) and reviews the field information. The review
1197 involves a quick check to make sure that all sections of the forms have been
1198 completed and that the information appears reasonable and consistent. Any
1199 questions regarding missing information or apparent inconsistencies are discussed with
1200 the field team leaders before the next field assignment. After the quality control is
1201 complete, forms are copied and distributed as needed and key information is
1202 transferred to tables or computer data files.

1203 1204 **Data Outputs**

1205 In general, the types of data, graphics, and tables that will be generated from the SCAT
1206 database may include:

- 1207
1208
- 1209 • Maps of shoreline segments and soil/sediment types
 - 1210 • Oiling conditions
 - 1211 • Surface oil volumes, changes in volume through time
 - 1212 • SCAT field survey status
 - 1213 • Treatment recommendations
 - 1214 • Cleanup treatment status
 - 1215 • Lengths of oiled shoreline (by oil rating and/or shoreline type)
 - 1216 • Lengths treated (by oil rating and/or treatment method)

1217 1218 **Record Keeping**

1219 Original SCAT field forms, sketches, and other information (photos, videotapes, etc.)
1220 and data, graphics, and tables generated during the incident will be provided by the
1221 SCAT Data Manager to the Documentation Section for retention. Only copies of these
1222 records will be distributed for use by stakeholders (i.e. RP, USCG, EPA, state agencies,
1223 etc.).

1224 1225 **7. Spill Cleanup Endpoints Standards**

1226 All spills have a point at which active cleanup and removal gives way to the natural
1227 degradation of the oil. In most cases, this termination point is developed as through a
1228 process lead by the SCAT Coordinator (Cleanup Endpoint Advisory Group) and

1229 formalized by the Unified Command. In most cases, the endpoint will be assumed to
1230 have been reached when worker safety would be compromised or the remaining oil
1231 presents less of a risk to the community or the resources than the treatment methods
1232 available.

1233
1234 After the Operations Division Supervisor or Shoreline Supervisor considers that cleanup in
1235 a segment has been completed, the segment will be inspected by a Sign-Off team,
1236 that will (a) determine whether the cleanup criteria have been met and (b) make a
1237 recommendation to the Unified Command regarding that segment. The team will use
1238 the criteria outlined in Appendix F to make this determination. At the time of the
1239 inspection, the Land Manager or representative will accompany the team and an SIR
1240 form will be completed. The Land Manager or representative may add notes in the
1241 "COMMENTS" text block on the SIR.

1242
1243 If the SCAT team (in consultation with the land manager) determines that no oil is
1244 present in the segment or that the cleanup has met the end-point criteria, then the
1245 members of the SCAT team representing the UC will sign the SIR and forward a No
1246 Further Action recommendation to the UC for approval. Note that a determination
1247 that cleanup endpoints have been reached does not indicate that the segment is
1248 necessarily recovered or restored under the definition of the NRDA process.

1249
1250 If the SCAT team determines that a segment fails to meet the cleanup criteria the team
1251 will indicate this on the SIR. They will specify where work is still required in order for the
1252 segment to pass inspection and will forward the form to the Operations Section Chief
1253 via the SCAT Coordinator viand the EUL.

1254
1255 The SCAT signoff process is intended to be a consensus-based team assessment. If,
1256 however, the team members are not in agreement regarding whether or not the end
1257 point criteria are met, then a sheet listing the reasons for disagreement is attached to
1258 the SIR and forwarded to the UC for resolution.

1259

1260

1261
1262
1263
1264
1265
1266
1267
1268
1269
1270

**SCAT Work Plan Appendix A -
SHORELINE OILING SUMMARY FORM**

DRAFT

1271

1272

1273

1274

1275

1276

1277

1278

1279

1280

**PLACEHOLDER FOR NOAA
Shoreline Oiling Summary
Form**

DRAFT

1281
1282
1283
1284
1285
1286
1287
1288
1289
1290
1291
1292
1293

**SCAT Work Plan Appendix B –
SHORELINE TREATMENT RECOMMENDATION FORM**

DRAFT

Incident Name: _____
Shoreline Treatment Recommendation
Operational Permit to Work

STR #: _____

Segment: (allow entry of local name)

Survey Date:

Start Lat:

End Lat:

Start Long:

End Long:

Length (m):

Shoreline Type:

Primary:

Secondary:

Oiled Areas for Treatment (EU):

Cleanup/Treatment Recommendations (EU):

Recommendations/Staging and/or Logistics Constraints/Waste Issues (OPS):

Ecological Concerns:

Cultural / Historical Concerns (SHPO):

Safety Concerns (EU/OPS/SSO):

1294

Attachments:

Segment Map

Sketch

SCAT Form

Fact Sheet

Other

1295

Prepared by: _____

Date Prepared: _____

Date
Time

To SOSC

To Land Mgr

To SHPO

To EU Leader

To:

Final
Approval

Submitted
to OPS

State OSC Rep

Federal OSC Rep

EU Leader

1296

1297

** When Treatment is completed, send a Segment Completion Report to SCAT **

1298
1299
1300
1301
1302
1303
1304
1305
1306
1307
1308
1309
1310
1311
1312
1313
1314
1315
1316
1317
1318
1319
1320
1321
1322

**SCAT Work Plan Appendix C –
SEGMENT INSPECTION REPORT FORM**

DRAFT

Segment Inspection Report

Incident Name: _____

Segment ID

SCAT Team () Members
If no further treatment is required, each UC rep sign below

Date of Survey
Time of Survey
Tide Stage
Weather

Name		Signature
<input type="text"/>	FOSC rep	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	SOSC rep	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	RP rep	<input type="text"/>

Inspection Completed Along Entire Segment? YES/NO

Treatment Endpoint Criteria: _____

Is treatment or further treatment required? (circle one)

YES – defined below specific treatment action (s) and specific locations within the segment where required. Provide sketches, maps, GPS coordinates to OPS.

NO – each UC rep sign appropriate signature box above.

Comments: _____

FOSC _____ SOSC _____ RP _____

1324
1325
1326
1327
1328
1329
1330
1331
1332
1333

**SCAT Work Plan Appendix D –
PHOTO CONTENT/LOG**

DRAFT

SCAT PHOTO LOG FORMAT

These standards should be reviewed and confirmed during each incident by the Data Manager.

Item	Format	Example
Date	Date	dd mmm yyyy
Time	Time	24 hour
Team	Team	N or L
Location Name *	Location Name *	text
Segment Number	Segment Number	LLL-NN
Ops Division *	Ops Division *	N or L
Latitude	Latitude	dd.ddddd
Longitude	Longitude	ddd.ddddd
Waypoint *	Waypoint *	NNN
Subject	Subject	text

* optional

NOTES:

1. Ensure the GPS is on with the "trackline" active. For aerial tracks, use a 5-second fix, for ground/walking use about a 30-second fix. **DO NOT SAVE THE TRACKLINE TO THE GPS** – download tracks to a computer file each day; if you save to the GPS then the track fixes are averaged and so we lose the ability to sync the times of the track fixes to the photos with OziExplorer
2. Ensure GPS and camera times are in sync
3. Take photo of GPS time at least twice a day
4. **The purpose of the photographs is to document the character of any oil observed within a segment.** Do not take too many photos of the oiled zone or location as one or two good photos only are necessary for documentation.
5. If there is **no oil** found within in segment then only take one or two photos. Preferably take a photo alongshore approximately at the High Water Level to record the general character of the segment.
6. Photography would be required if any cultural resources are identified (see Appendix H).
7. **WAYPOINTS:** Not necessary to take a waypoint at every photo location, but is valuable for specific items of interest that are photographed (such as the start and/or end of an oiled area or a pit in which oil is found).
8. **SCALE:** For distant or panorama shots always try to have a person in the middle distance for scale. For close-up shots always use a scale (the back of the field note book scale is preferred rather than a pencil or a coin!!)

1367

SCAT PHOTO LOG

INCIDENT NAME:

Time	Date	Team	Location	Segment	Ops Div	Lat	Long	Waypoint	Subject



1368

1369

1370

1371

1372

1373

1374

1375

1376

1377

1378

SCAT Work Plan Appendix E – POTENTIAL TREATMENT TECHNIQUES

The following table was developed for shoreline treatment advisory group discussions with the intent to provide guidance on the treatment methods that would be appropriate for the areas affected by the oil. This list is not intended to be exhaustive or exclusive and additional treatment and cleanup methods may be considered. Some of the techniques included in this table as options may not be appropriate techniques for a given response. They are presented as an example.

Segment	Character	Oiling Conditions	Possible Treatment Strategy-Tactics
Various	Mixed-sediment (sand-pebble-cobble) beaches	Heavy surface oiling: Continuous or discontinuous thick band in upper ½ of intertidal zone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual removal • Vacuum pooled oil • Deluge – With pressure and higher than ambient temperature water • Following gross oil removal – consider tilling and material removal
Various	Mixed-sediment (sand-pebble-cobble) beaches	Heavy sub-surface oiling: Continuous or discontinuous thick buried oil band in upper ½ of the intertidal and the supratidal zones	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual removal • Vacuum pooled oil • Deluge – With pressure and higher than ambient temperature water • Following gross oil removal – consider tilling and material removal
Various	Mixed- sediment beaches	Moderate-Light-Very Light Oiling: Stain or coat on pebbles and cobbles	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deluge – With pressure and higher than ambient temperature water • Tilling and material removal
Various	Mixed-sediment beaches with backshore vegetation	Oiled edge vegetation with occasional patches of oil on top of the beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual removal • Deluge – Low pressure deluge with ambient temperature water • Following gross oil removal – consider tilling and material removal in non-vegetation areas

Various	Salt Marsh	Predominately march fringe oiled vegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual removal • Deluge – Low pressure deluge with ambient temperature water
Various	Fine-sediment beaches		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual removal • Vacuum pooled oil • Deluge – Low pressure and higher than ambient temperature water • Following gross oil removal – consider tilling and material removal
Various	Boulder/Bedrock		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual removal • Deluge – With pressure and higher than ambient temperature water

1379
1380
1381
1382

DRAFT

SCAT Work Plan Appendix F – SELECT TREATMENT END POINTS

The following are EXAMPLES ONLY of endpoints. Incident specific endpoints should be inserted here to replace these when developed.

VEGETATED SHORELINES

Surface Oil (light patchy)

- Tarballs, tar patties and tar mats removed Oiled sand and gravel removed or cleaned to a light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat (CT)
- Oiled cobbles and boulders removed or cleaned to light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat (CT)
- Oiled vegetation removed, to a light patchy (<10%) coverage of coat (CT)

Subsurface Oil

- Subsurface oiling is unlikely given the density and stability of sediments common to these shorelines types, nevertheless, subsurface oil, if discovered, will be evaluated by SCAT and Unified Command to determine if cleanup should occur.

Constraints

- Avoid damage to unoiled roots of vegetation
- Limited foot traffic in the vegetation
- No mechanical equipment in vegetation
- Avoid destabilization of bank

MIXED SEDIMENT/GRAVEL/COBBLE – STEEP CLIFF BACKSHORE

Surface Oil

- Tarballs greater than 2cm in diameter and all tar patties and tar mats removed
- Oiled sediment and gravel removed or cleaned to a light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat
- Oiled cobbles and boulders removed or cleaned to patchy (<20%) coverage of coat
- Oiled vegetation removed, to a light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat

Subsurface Oil

- Tar patties and tar balls greater than 5cm in diameter removed
- Buried tar mats or oiled lens removed or cleaned to light (20%) partially filled pore spaces

Constraints

- Avoid damage to unoiled roots of vegetation
- Avoid destabilization of backshore
- Probably foot traffic only

MIXED SEDIMENT/GRAVEL/COBBLE – LOW BACKSHORE

Surface Oil

- Tarballs greater than 2cm in diameter and all tar patties and tar mats removed

- 1429 • Oiled sediment and gravel removed or cleaned to a light patchy (<10%)
1430 coverage of coat
- 1431 • Oiled cobbles and boulders removed or cleaned to light patchy (<10%) coverage
1432 of coat
- 1433 • Oiled vegetation removed, to a light patchy (<10%) coverage of coat
1434

1435 **Subsurface Oil**

- 1436 • Tar patties and tar balls greater than 5cm in diameter removed
- 1437 • Buried tar mats or oiled lens removed or cleaned to light (<20%) partially filled pore
1438 spaces

1439 **Constraints**

- 1441 • Avoid damage to unoiled roots of vegetation
- 1442 • Avoid destabilization of backshore
1443

1444 **FINE SEDIMENTS/SAND/GRAVEL**

1445 **Surface Oil**

- 1446 • Tarballs greater than 1cm in diameter and all tar patties and tar mats removed
- 1447 • Oiled sand and gravel removed or cleaned to a patchy (<20%) coverage of coat
- 1448 • Oiled vegetation removed, to a light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat
1449

1450 **Subsurface Oil**

- 1451 • Tar patties and tar balls greater than 2cm in diameter removed
- 1452 • Buried tar mats or oiled lens removed or cleaned to light (<20%) partially filled pore
1453 spaces

1454 **Constraints**

- 1455 • Avoid damage to unoiled roots of vegetation
1456
1457

1458 **BOULDER/BEDROCK**

1459 **Surface Oil**

- 1460 • Oiled boulders removed or cleaned to light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat
- 1461 • Oiled vegetation removed, to a light patchy (<20%) coverage of coat
1462

1463 **Constraints**

- 1464 • Minimize damage to unoiled roots of vegetation
1465

1466 **OILED SHORELINE DEBRIS**

- 1467 • Small trash and oiled debris, such as containers and plastics, with greater than 10%
1468 coverage of oil, will be removed
- 1469 • Large oiled debris, such as fishing equipment, with greater than 10% coverage of
1470 coat will be cleaned or removed
- 1471 • Oiled seaweed and marine vegetation will be removed to a light patchy (20%)
1472 coverage of coat
- 1473 • Oiled logs and woody debris will be cleaned or removed to a light patchy (20%)
1474 coverage of coat. Oiled sections may be removed from unoiled sections
1475

1476 **Constraints**

1477

- Minimize damage to unholed vegetation and roots and large woody debris.

DRAFT

1478 **SCAT Work Plan Appendix G –**
1479 **PERMIT SUMMARY**

1480

1481 Various permits are required for SCAT operations. SCAT personnel have
1482 collaborated with Permits personnel in the Environmental Unit to procure the
1483 following permits:

1484

1485 *INSERT PERMITS HERE*

1486

1487

1488

1489

1490

1491

1492 All necessary permits, for the current phase of operation, have been procured.

DRAFT